DRAFT 3-31-24

2023 ILLINOIS COMMERCIAL STRETCH ENERGY CODE

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2024 IECC

(PCD2 with approved proposals from the CAR)

CHAPTER 1 [CE] SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 1 *establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced.* ***Chapter 1*** *is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement.* ***Section C101,*** *identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.*

The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of ***Chapter 1*** *establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.*

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION C101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

C101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the 2023 Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy ~~Conservation~~ Code ~~of **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**,~~ and shall mean:~~be cited as such. It is referred to herein as "this code."~~

With respect to the State facilities covered by 71 Ill. Adm. Code 600.Subpart B:

This Part, all additional requirements incorporated within Subpart B (including the *2024 International Energy Conservation Code Final Draft* Commercial Provisions, including all published errata but excluding published supplements that encompass ASHRAE 90.1-2022), and any statutorily authorized adaptations to the incorporated standards adopted by CDB are effective 7/1/24.

With respect to the privately funded commercial facilities covered by 71 Ill. Adm. Code 600.Subpart C:

This Part, all additional requirements incorporated within Subpart C (including the *2024 International Energy Conservation Code Final Draft* Commercial Provisions, including all published errata and excluding published supplements that encompass ASHRAE 90.1-2022), and any statutorily authorized adaptations to the incorporated standards adopted by CDB is effective upon adoption by a Municipality and takes the place of the Illinois Energy Conservation Code with respect to commercial buildings.

No unit of local government, including any home rule unit, may regulate energy efficient building standards for commercial buildings in a manner that is less stringent than the standards established pursuant to this Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code.

C101.1.1 Adoption. The Board shall adopt amendments to this Code and include site energy index standards as established in the Energy Efficient Building Act [20 ILCS 3125/55] as follows:

By June 30, 2024 with a site energy index no greater than .60 of the 2006 IECC;
By December 31, 2025 with a site energy index no greater than .50 of the 2006 IECC;
By December 31, 2028 with a site energy index no greater than .44 of the 2006 IECC;
By December 31, 2031 with a site energy index no greater than .39 of the 2006 IECC.

C101.2 Scope. This code applies to the design and construction of buildings not covered by the scope of the IECC – Residential Provisions.

C101.2.1 Appendices Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

C101.3 Intent. The International Energy Conservation Code - Commercial Provisions provide market-driven, enforceable requirements for the design and construction of commercial buildings, providing minimum efficiency requirements for buildings that result in the maximum level of energy efficiency that is safe, technologically feasible, and life cycle cost effective, considering economic feasibility, including potential costs and savings for consumers and building owners, and return on investment. Additionally, the code provides jurisdictions with supplemental requirements, including ASHRAE 90.1, and optional requirements that lead to achievement of zero energy buildings, presently, and through glidepaths that achieve zero energy buildings by 2030 and on additional timelines sought by governments, and achievement of additional policy goals as identified by the Energy and Carbon Advisory Council and approved by the Board of Directors. Requirements contained in the code will include, but not be limited to, prescriptive- and performance-based pathways. The code may include non-mandatory appendices incorporating additional energy efficiency and greenhouse gas reduction resources developed by the Code Council and others. The code will aim to simplify code requirements to facilitate the code's use and compliance rate. The code is updated on a three-year cycle with each subsequent edition providing increased energy savings over the prior edition. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this intent. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

C101.4 Compliance. ~~*Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC – Residential Provisions.~~ *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of ~~IECC – Commercial Provisions.~~ the *Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code* covered by 71 Ill. Adm. Code 600 Subpart C. The local authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall establish its own procedures for enforcement of the Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code. Minimum compliance shall be demonstrated by submission of:

C101.4.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code~~.~~;or

C101.4.2 Professional Seals. The seal of the architect/engineer as required by Section 14 of the Illinois Architectural Practice Act [225 ILCS 305], Section 12 of the Structural Engineering Licensing Act [225 ILCS 340] and Section 14 of the Illinois Professional Engineering Practice Act [225 ILCS 325].

SECTION C102
APPLICABILITY

C102.1 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

C102.1.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a *building* includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code or the Illinois Residential Stretch Energy Code.~~IECC – Commercial Provisions or IECC – Residential Provisions.~~

C102.2 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

C102.3 Applications of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

C102.4 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in **Chapter 6**, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C102.4.1 and C102.4.2.

C102.4.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

C102.4.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

C102.5 Partial invalidity. If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT
SECTION C103
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

C103.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. The *code official* shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the *owner* or the *owner*'s authorized agent. The *code official* shall first find that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was *approved* or was not *approved*.

C103.1.1 Above code programs. ~~The code official or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program as exceeding the energy efficiency required by this code.~~ Buildings certified in compliance with Passive House Institute (PHI) or Passive House Institute U.S. (PHIUS) programs, or buildings that comply with Appendix CC, shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this code where such buildings also meet the ~~Buildings approved in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The~~ requirements identified in Table C407.2(1). ~~shall be met.~~

SECTION C104
CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

C104.1 Creation of enforcement agency. The [INSERT NAME OF DEPARTMENT] is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ). The function of the agency shall be the implementation, administration and enforcement of the provisions of this code.

C104.2 Appointment. The authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

C104.3 Deputies. In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall have the authority to appoint a deputy authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), other related technical officers, inspectors and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

SECTION C105
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

C105.2.2 Electrification system. The construction documents shall provide details for additional electric infrastructure, including branch circuits, conduit, pre-wiring, panel capacity, and electrical service capacity, as well as interior and exterior spaces designated for future electric equipment, in compliance with the provisions of this code.

SECTION C107
INSPECTIONS

C107.2.5 Electrical system. Inspection shall verify lighting system controls, components, ~~and~~ meters, and electric infrastructure as required by the code, approved plans and specifications. Where an electrical energy storage system area is required, inspections shall verify space availability and pathways to electrical service.

SECTION C202

GENERAL DEFINITIONS

2024 INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE FINAL DRAFT. The draft version of the 2024 IECC which includes changes from Public Comment Draft #2 and approved proposals from the Committee Action Report.

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCE. Appliances used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food. For the purpose of this definition, a commercial food service establishment is where food is regularly prepared for sale or is prepared on a scale that is by volume and frequency not representative of domestic household cooking.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE (EV CAPABLE SPACE). An automobile parking space provided with electrical infrastructure~~, such as, but not limited to,~~ including raceway or cable assemblies, ~~cables,~~ electrical capacity, and electrical distribution equipment space, necessary for connection to an EVSE.

REPLACEMENT COST. The cost to construct or replace an entire *building* with equal quality, construction type, and square footage, at current construction market labor and material rates.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. Any *repair*, reconstruction, rehabilitation, *alteration*, *addition* or other improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or is more than 50 percent of the market value *replacement cost* of the structure before the improvement or repair is started. Where the structure has sustained *substantial damage*, as defined in the International Building Code, any repairs are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual *repair* work performed. Substantial improvement does not include the following:

1. Improvement of a *building* ordered by the code official to correct health, sanitary or safety code violations and that are the minimum necessary to assure safe living conditions.
2. *Alteration* of a *historic building* where the *alteration* will not affect the designation as a historic structure.

SECTION C401
GENERAL

C401.2 Application. Commercial buildings shall comply with Section C401.2.1 or C401.2.2.

C401.2.1 Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:

1. Prescriptive Compliance. The Prescriptive Compliance option requires compliance with Sections C402 through C406 and Section C408. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 buildings shall be deemed to be in compliance with this chapter, provided that they comply with Section R406.
2. Simulated Building Performance. The Simulated Building Performance option requires compliance with Section C407.

Exception: Additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with Chapter 5.

C401.2.2 ASHRAE 90.1. Commercial buildings shall comply with the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Appendix CI, and the requirements of the sections indicated within Table C401.2.2

TABLE C401.2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR ASHRAE 90.1 COMPLIANCE

SECTION[a]	TITLE
New Construction	
C405.4	Horticultural lighting
C405.14	Electric Vehicle Power Transfer Infrastructure
C405.16	Electrical energy storage system
C405.18	Electric infrastructure
Additions and Alterations	
C502.3.7	Additional energy efficiency credits
C503.3.4	Mechanical system acceptance testing
C503.3.5	Duct testing
C503.3.6	Controls
C503.3.7	System sizing
C503.6	Additional energy efficiency credits
C505.1.3	Additional energy efficiency for changes of occupancy

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections as indicated in the table.

C402.5.1.3 Fenestration Orientation.

The vertical fenestration shall comply with either equation (a) or (b):

a. $AW \leq (AT)/4$ and $AE \leq (AT)/4$

b. $AW \times SHGCW \leq (AT \times SHGCC)/5$ and $AE \times SHGCE \leq (AT \times SHGCC)/5$

where:

AW = West-oriented vertical fenestration area (oriented within 45 degrees of true west to the south and within 22.5 degrees of true west to the north in the Northern Hemisphere)

AE = East-oriented vertical fenestration area (oriented within 45 degrees of true east to the south and within 22.5 degrees of true east to the north in the Northern Hemisphere)

AT = Total vertical fenestration area

SHGCC = SHGC criteria in Table C402.5

SHGCE = SHGC for east-oriented fenestration

SHGCW = SHGC for west-oriented fenestration

Exceptions:

1. *Buildings* with shade on 75% of the *east- oriented* and *west-oriented vertical fenestration areas* from permanent projections, *existing buildings*, existing permanent infrastructure, or topography at 9 a.m. and 3 p.m., respectively, on the summer solstice (June 21).

2. *Alterations* and additions with no increase in *vertical fenestration area*.

3. *Buildings* where the *east-oriented* and *west-oriented vertical fenestration area* does not exceed 20% of the *gross wall area* for each of those façades, and *SHGC* on those facades is no greater than 90% of the criteria in Table C402.5.

SECTION C405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

C405.4 Horticultural lighting. Permanently installed luminaires shall have a *photosynthetic photon efficacy* of not less than 1.7 µmol/J for horticultural lighting in greenhouses and not less than ~~1.9~~ 2.2 µmol/J for all other horticultural lighting. Luminaires for horticultural lighting in greenhouses shall be controlled by a device that automatically turns off the luminaire when sufficient daylight is available. Luminaires for horticultural lighting shall be controlled by a device that automatically turns off the luminaire at specific programmed times.

Exception: Cannabis facilities subject to 410 ILCS 705/10-45, the Cannabis Regulation and Tax Act.

C405.14.2 EV Capable Spaces. Each EV capable space used to meet the requirements of Section C405.14.1 shall comply with the following:

1. A continuous raceway or cable assembly shall be installed between an enclosure or outlet located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the EV capable space and electrical distribution equipment.
2. Installed raceway or cable assembly shall be sized and rated to supply a minimum circuit ~~capactiy~~ capacity in accordance with C405.14.5.
3. The electrical distribution equipment to which the raceway or cable assembly connects shall have dedicated overcurrent protection device space and electrical capacity to supply a calculated load in accordance with Section C405.14.5.
4. The enclosure or outlet and the electrical distribution equipment directory shall be marked: "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

C405.14.6 EVSE Installation. EVSE shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2202 or UL 2594. EVSE shall be accessible in accordance with the 2024 edition of the International Building Code Section 1107.

C405.16 Electrical energy storage system. Buildings shall comply with Section C405.16.1 or Section C405.16.2. Buildings shall comply with Section C405.16.3.

C405.16.1 Electrical energy storage system (ESS) capacity. Each building shall have one or more ESS with a total rated energy capacity and rated power capacity as follows:

1. ESS rated energy capacity (kWh)≥1.0 x Installed On-site Renewable Electric Energy System Rated Power (kWDC)

2. ESS rated power capacity (kW)≥0.25 x Installed On-Site Renewable Electric Energy System Rated Power (kWDC).

Where installed, DC coupled battery systems shall meet the requirements for rated energy capacity alone.

C405.16.2 Electrical energy storage system ready. Each building shall have one or more reserved ESS-ready areas to accommodate future electrical storage~~ in accordance with Sections C405.16.2 through C405.16.2.4~~.

C405.16.3 Electrical energy storage installed or ready area. Areas where ESS is installed and ESS-ready areas shall comply with Sections C405.3.1 through C405.3.4.

C405.16. ~~2~~3.1 ESS installed or ~~-~~ready location. Each ESS installed or ~~-~~ready area shall be located in accordance with either Section 1207 of the 2024 International Fire Code or NFPA 855. For the purposes of locating and designing means of egress, ESS-installed or ready areas shall comply with either i) means of egress requirements for H-Occupancies of the 2024 International Fire Code or ii) Sections 7.2.1.4.2(3) and 7.11 of NFPA 101 (2015).

C405.16. ~~2~~3.2 ESS installed or ~~-~~ready minimum area requirements. Each ESS installed or ~~-~~ready area shall be sized in accordance with the spacing requirements of (i) either Section 1207 of the 2024 edition of the International Fire Code or NFPA 855 and (ii) the UL9540 or UL9540A designated rating of the planned system. Where rated to UL9540A, the area shall be sized in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C405.16. ~~2~~3.3 Electrical distribution equipment. The onsite electrical distribution equipment shall have sufficient capacity, rating, and space to allow installation of overcurrent devices and circuit wiring in accordance with NFPA 70 for actual or future electrical ESS installation complying with the capacity criteria of Section C405.16. ~~2~~3.4.

C405.16. ~~2~~3.4 ESS installed or ~~-~~ready minimum system capacity. Compliance with ESS-ready requirements in Sections C405.16.3~~2~~.1 through C405.16.3~~2~~.3 shall be based on a minimum total energy capacity and minimum rated power capacity as follows:

1. ESS rated energy capacity (kWh) ≥ gross conditioned floor area of the three largest floors (ft2) x 0.0008 kWh/ft2
2. ESS rated power capacity (kWh) ≥ gross conditioned floor area of the three largest floors (ft2) x 0.0002 kWh/ft^2

C405.18 Electric infrastructure. New group R-2 occupancies that use fossil fuels for space heating, *service water heating*, cooking, or clothes drying shall install electric infrastructure in accordance with C405.18.1 through C405.18.5 and Section C105.2.2.

C405.18.1 Space heating. Locations with piping for fossil fuel warm-air furnaces and fossil fuel boilers shall comply with Section C405.18.1.1 or C405.18.1.2, as applicable.

Exception to C405.18.1: Where a branch circuit exists for space cooling equipment with the capacity to serve heat pump space heating equipment sized in accordance with the requirements of Section C403.1.1.

C405.18.1.1 Low-capacity space heating. Locations of fossil fuel warm-air furnaces with capacity less than 225,000 Btu/hr (65.9kW) and boilers with a capacity less than 300,000 Btu/hr (88kW) shall be provided with an individual branch circuit in accordance with all of the following:

1. The branch circuit conductors shall terminate within 6 ft (2 m) of the location of the space heating equipment and shall be in a location with *ready access*.

2. The branch circuit shall be sized to serve heat pump space heating equipment sized in accordance with the requirements of Section C403.1.1, and

3. The branch circuit overcurrent device and the termination of the branch circuit shall be labeled "For future heat pump space heating equipment."

C405.18.1.2 Other space heating equipment. Locations of fossil fuel space heating equipment not covered under C405.18.1.1 shall be provided with a raceway in accordance with all of the following:

1. The raceway shall be continuous from a branch circuit panel to a junction box located within the same space as the equipment or, where the equipment is located on the exterior of the building, within 3 ft (1m) of the equipment.

2. The junction box, raceway, bus bar in the electric panel and conductors serving the electrical panel shall be sized to serve electric space heating equipment sized to serve the same load as the fossil fuel space heating equipment.

3. The electrical panel shall have sufficient reserved physical space for branch circuit overprotection devices sized to serve electric equipment sized to serve the same load as the fossil fuel space heating *appliance*,

4. The point of origin and the termination of the raceway shall be labeled “For future heat pump space heating equipment.”

C405.18.2 Water heating. Locations with piping for fossil fuel water heaters shall comply with Section C405.18.2.1 or C405.18.2.2, as applicable.

C405.18.2.1 Low-capacity water heating. Locations of fossil fuel water heaters with an input rating of less than 300,000 Btu/hr (88kW) shall comply with all of the following:

1. An individual 30 ampere, 208/240-volt branch circuit shall be provided and terminate within 6 ft (2 m) of the water heater and shall be in a location with *ready access*.

2. The branch circuit overcurrent protection device and the termination of the branch circuit shall be labeled "For future electric water heater".

3. The space for containing the future water heater shall have a height of not less than 7 ft (2 m), a width of not less than 3 ft (1 m), a depth of not less than 3ft (1 m) and with a volume of not less than 700 ft3 (20 m3).

Exception to C405.18.2.1: Where the space containing the water heater provides for air circulation sufficient for the operation of a heat pump water heater, the minimum room volume shall not be required.

C405.18.2.2 Other water heating. Locations of fossil fuel water heating equipment not covered by Section C405.18.2.1 shall be provided with a raceway in accordance with all of the following:

1. The raceway shall be continuous from an electric panel to a junction box located within the same space as the equipment or, where the equipment is located on the exterior of the building, within 3 ft (1m) of the equipment.

2. The junction box, raceway, and bus bar in the electric panel and conductors serving the electric panel shall be sized to accommodate electric water heating equipment sized to serve the same load as the fossil fuel water heating equipment.

3. The electric panel shall have sufficient reserved physical space for branch circuit overprotection devices sized to serve electric water heating equipment sized to serve the same load as the fossil fuel water heating equipment.

4. The point of origin and termination of the raceway shall be labeled “For future electric water heating appliance”.

C405.18.3 Non-commercial cooking. Locations of fossil fuel ranges, cooktops and ovens that are not *commercial cooking appliances* shall be provided with a dedicated individual branch circuit in accordance with all of the following:

1. The branch circuit shall be rated for 208/240-volts and not less than 50 amps.

2. The branch circuit shall terminate within 3 ft (1 m) of the appliance and shall be in a location with *ready access*.

3. The point of origin and termination of the branch circuit shall be labeled “For future electric cooking appliance”.

C405.18.4 Clothes drying. Locations with piping for fossil fuel clothes drying equipment shall comply with C405.18.4.1 or C405.18.4.2, as applicable.

C405.18.4.1 Residential drying. Locations of fossil fuel clothes drying appliances serving individual *dwellings units* shall be provided with a dedicated individual branch circuit in accordance with all of the following:

1. The branch circuit shall be rated for 208/240-volts and not less than 30 amps.

2. The branch circuit shall terminate within 3 ft (1 m) of the appliance and shall be in a location with *ready access*.

3. The point of origin and termination of the branch circuit shall be labeled "For future electric clothes drying appliance".

C405.18.4.2 Non-residential drying. Locations of fossil fuel clothes drying appliances not covered by Section C405.18.4.1 shall be provided with a raceway in accordance with all of the following:

1. The raceway shall be continuous from an electric panel to a junction box located within the same space as the appliance.

2. The junction box, raceway, electric panel bus bar and conductors serving the electric panel shall be sized to serve electric clothes drying appliances having the same drying capacity as the fossil fuel appliance.

3. The electric panel shall have sufficient reserved physical space for branch circuit overprotection devices sized to serve electric clothes drying appliances sized to serve the same load as the fossil fuel clothes drying appliances.

4. The point of origin and termination of the raceway shall be labeled "For future electric clothes drying appliance".

C405.18.5 Onsite Transformers. Enclosed spaces and underground vaults containing onsite electric transformers on the *building* side of the electric utility meter shall have sufficient space to accommodate transformers sized to serve the additional electric loads identified in C405.18.1, C405.18.2, C405.18.3 and C405.18.4.

SECTION C406
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY, RENEWABLE, AND LOAD MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

C406.1.1 Additional energy efficiency credit requirements. Buildings shall comply with measures from C406.2 to achieve not less than the number of required efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1) based on building occupancy group and climate zone including any energy credit adjustments in accordance with C406.1.1.1. Where a project contains multiple occupancies, the total required energy credits from each building occupancy shall be weighted by the gross conditioned floor area to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of Section C406.

Exceptions:

1. Portions of buildings devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.

~~2. Where a building achieves more renewable and load management credits in Section C406.3 than are required in Section C406.1.2, surplus credits shall be permitted to reduce the required energy efficiency credits as follows:~~

~~ECCred = EECtbt - [the lesser of: (SRLMlim, SRLMadj X [RLMach - RLMreq])}~~

~~EECred = Reduced required energy efficiency credits~~

~~EECtbl = Required energy efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1)~~

~~SRLMlim = Surplus renewable and load management credit limit from Table C406.1.1(2)~~

~~SRLMadj = 1.0 for all-electric or all-renewable buildings (excluding emergency generation) 0.7 for buildings with fossil fuel equipment (excluding emergency generation)~~

~~RLMach = Achieved renewable and load management credits from SectionC406.3~~

~~RLMreq = Required renewable and load management credits from Section C406.1.2~~

~~TABLE C406.1.1(2)~~
~~LIMIT TO ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDIT CARRYOVER FROM RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS~~

	~~CLIMATE ZONE~~																		
~~BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP~~	~~0A~~	~~0B~~	~~1A~~	~~1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	~~3A~~	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	~~4A~~	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	~~5A~~	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
~~R-2, R-4, AND I-1~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~24~~	~~19~~	~~5~~	~~22~~	~~18~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~19~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~
~~I-2~~	~~16~~	~~14~~	~~11~~	~~8~~	~~6~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~10~~	~~6~~	~~8~~	~~14~~	~~10~~	~~17~~	~~26~~	~~29~~	~~21~~	~~21~~	~~22~~	~~39~~
~~R-1~~	~~7~~	~~5~~	~~8~~	~~5~~	~~19~~	~~5~~	~~32~~	~~40~~	~~41~~	~~24~~	~~41~~	~~42~~	~~17~~	~~37~~	~~41~~	~~5~~	~~24~~	~~15~~	~~22~~
~~B~~	~~7~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~8~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~14~~	~~26~~	~~31~~	~~23~~	~~29~~	~~34~~	~~19~~	~~35~~	~~45~~	~~5~~	~~19~~	~~17~~	~~27~~
~~A-2~~	~~18~~	~~16~~	~~14~~	~~15~~	~~13~~	~~9~~	~~11~~	~~23~~	~~32~~	~~5~~	~~23~~	~~23~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~26~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~
~~M~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~20~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~
~~E~~	~~13~~	~~13~~	~~18~~	~~16~~	~~17~~	~~14~~	~~21~~	~~35~~	~~40~~	~~25~~	~~43~~	~~29~~	~~23~~	~~32~~	~~27~~	~~11~~	~~17~~	~~25~~	~~5~~
~~S-1 AND S-2~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~13~~	~~5~~	~~17~~	~~20~~	~~5~~	~~35~~	~~23~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~11~~	~~40~~
~~All Other~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~7~~	~~17~~	~~5~~	~~10~~	~~7~~	~~5~~	~~6~~	~~11~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~

SECTION C407
SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE

C407.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance based on total building performance requires that a proposed design meet all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table C407.2(1).
2. A~~n annual energy cost~~ site energy use that is less than or equal to the percent of the ~~annual energy cost~~ site energy use (~~PAECP~~SEUC) of the standard reference design calculated in Equation 4-32. ~~Energy prices shall be taken from a source approved by the code official, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. Code officials shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.~~ The reduction in ~~energy cost~~ site energy use of the proposed design associated with on-site and off-site renewable energy shall not be included in the total site energy use.~~more than 5 percent of the total energy cost. The amount of renewable energy purchased from off-site sources shall be the same in the standard reference design and the proposed design.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Jurisdictions that require site energy (1 kWh = 3413 Btu) rather than energy cost as the metric of comparison.~~
~~2. Where energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu or Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area is substituted for the energy cost, the energy use shall be calculated using source energy factors from Table C407.2(2) For electricity, U.S. locations shall use values eGRID subregions. Locations outside the United States shall use the value for "All other electricity" or locally derived values.~~

PSEUC ~~PAEC~~ = 100 x (0.80 +0.25- ECr/1000) (Equation 4-32)

PSEUC ~~PAEC~~ = Percentage of ~~annual energy cost~~ site energy use applied to standard reference design
ECr= Energy efficiency credits required for the building in accordance with Section C406.1 (do not include load management and renewable credits)

Modify Table C407.2(1) as follows:

TABLE C407.2(1)

REQUIREMENTS FOR SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE

SECTION[a]	TITLE
Envelope	
C402.5.1.3	Fenestration Orientation

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

Modify Table C407.4.1(1) as follows:

TABLE C407.4.1(1)

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Area 1. The proposed vertical fenestration area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is less than 40 percent of the above-grade wall area. 2. 40 percent of above grade wall area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is 40 percent or more of the above grade wall area 3. 3. Fenestration orientation shall comply with Section C402.5.1.3	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.5	As proposed
	1. SHGC: as specified in Table C402.5 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used. 2. Fenestration SHGC shall comply with C402.5.1.3	As proposed
	External shading and PF: none	As proposed

SECTION C503
ALTERATIONS

C503.6 Additional credit requirements for alterations. Alterations that are substantial improvements shall comply with measures from Sections C402.5 and C405.18 and meet a site EUI by building type in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 100 Table 7-2a. Replacement cost shall be determined by a registered design professional or approved agency and approved by the code official. ~~C406.2, Section C406.3, or both to earn the number of required credits specified in Table C406.1.1 based on building occupancy group and climate zone.~~ Where a project contains multiple occupancies, ~~credits specified in Table C406.1.1 for each building occupancy~~ site EUI requirements shall be weighted by the gross conditioned floor area to determine the weighted average ~~credits~~ site EUI required. Accessory occupancies, other than Groups F or H, shall be included with the primary occupancy group for the purposes of this section.

Exceptions:

1. Alterations that do not contain conditioned space.
2. Portions of buildings devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.
3. Alterations to buildings where the building after the alteration complies with Section C407.
4. Alterations that are permitted with an addition complying with Section C502.3.7.
5. Group R occupancies that achieve an ERI score of 80 or below without on-site renewable energy included in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301, for each dwelling unit.

SECTION C505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

C505.1.3 Additional energy efficiency for changes of occupancy. Where a space is converted from one occupancy type to another occupancy type, it shall comply with Section C406.1.1.1.

Exception:

1. *Alterations* complying with Section C503.6.

~~*1.*~~*2.* Where no less than 50 percent of the peak space heating and peak water heating load of the *building* is served by heat pump equipment.

Appendix CD
The 2030 Glide Path

Remove Section CD101.1 Prescriptive compliance and Table CD101.1 in their entirety.

Appendix CG
All-Electric Commercial Building Provisions

This appendix is removed and is not included in the Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code.

Appendix CI
Total Building Performance Pathway

CI101 Scope. This section establishes criteria for *building*s that demonstrate compliance using total building performance utilizing site energy in accordance with Section 4.2.1.1 of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

CI102 Compliance based on site energy. *Buildings* shall comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 as modified by this section.

CI102.1 Terms. For the purposes of compliance with this appendix, terminology in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 shall be modified as follows:

1. Replace references to energy cost with references to site energy in Sections G1.2.2, G1.3.2, G2.1, G2.5 and G2.4.2 section heading.
2. *baseline building performance* shall be defined as "the annual site *energy* ~~cost~~ for a *building* design intended for use as a baseline for rating above-standard design or when using the *Performance Rating Method* as an alternative path for minimum standard compliance in accordance with Section 4.2.1.1."
3. *proposed building performance* shall be defined as "the annual site *energy* calculated for a *proposed design*."

CI102.2 Section 4.2.1.1. Section 4.2.1.1 shall be replaced with the following:

New *buildings* shall comply with Section 4.2.2 through 4.2.5 and either the provisions of

a. Sections 5, "Building Envelope"; 6, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning"; 7, "Service Water Heating"; 8, "Power"; 9, "Lighting"; 10, "Other Equipment"; and 11, "Additional Efficiency Requirements,"or

b. Normative Appendix G, "Performance Rating Method."

When using Normative Appendix G, the Performance Index (Site Energy) of new *buildings*, *additions* to *existing buildings*, and/or *alterations* to *existing buildings* shall be less than or equal to the Performance Index Target (PI_t) when calculated in accordance with the following:

$$PI_t = [BBUE + (BPF_{site} \times BBRE) - PRE] / BBP$$

Where

PI = Performance Index (Site *Energy*) calculated in accordance with Section G1.2.
BBUE = baseline *building* unregulated site *energy*, the portion of the annual site *energy* of a *baseline building design* that is due to *unregulated energy use.*
BBRE = baseline *building* regulated site *energy*, the portion of the annual site *energy* ~~cost~~ of a *baseline building design* that is due to *regulated energy use.*
BPF = *building* performance factor from Table 4.2.1.1. For *building* area types not listed in Table 4.2.1.1 use "All others." Where a *building* has multiple *building* area types, the required BPF shall be equal to the area-weighted average of the *building* area types based on their *gross floor area*. Where a project includes an *existing building* and an *addition*, the required BPF shall be equal to the area-weighted average, based on the *gross floor area*, of the *existing building* BPF determined as described in Section 4.2.1.3 and the *addition* BPF from Table 4.2.1.1
BBP = baseline *building* performance.
PBP = *proposed building performance*, including the reduced, annual site *energy* associated with all *on-site renewable energy* generation systems.
PBP_{nre} = *proposed building performance* without any credit for reduced annual *energy* from *on-site renewable energy* generation systems.
PBP_{pre} = *proposed building performance*, excluding any *renewable energy system* in the *proposed design* and including an *on-site renewable energy system* that meets but does not exceed the requirements of Section 10.5.1.1 modeled following the requirements for a *budget building design* in Table 12.5.1.
PRE = $PBP_{nre} - PBP_{pre}$

When (PBP*pre* – PBP)/BBP > 0.05, new *buildings*, *additions* to *existing buildings*, and/or *alterations* to *existing buildings* shall comply with the following:

P~~C~~SEI + [(PBP*nre* – PBP)/BBP] – 0.05 < P~~C~~SEI*t*

When (PBP*pre* – PBP)/BBP > 0.05, new *buildings*, *additions* to *existing buildings*, and/or *alterations* to *existing buildings* shall comply with the following:

PCI + [(PBP*pre* – PBP)/BBP] – 0.05 < PCI*t*

Informative Notes:

1. PBP*nre* = *proposed building performance*, no renewable *energy*
2. PBP*pre* = *proposed building performance*, prescriptive renewable *energy*
3. PRE = prescriptive renewable *energy*

CI102.3 Building performance factors. Table 4.2.1.1 Building Performance Factor (BPF) shall be replaced with Table CI102.3.

Table CI102.3 Building Performance Factors (BPF), Site *Energy*

***Building* Area Type**	**Climate Zone**	
	4A	**5A**
Multifamily	0.61	0.56
Healthcare/hospital	0.62	0.65
Hotel/motel	0.65	0.63
Office	0.47	0.49
Restaurant	0.66	0.69
Retail	0.47	0.52
School	0.42	0.44
Warehouse	0.38	0.46
All others	0.55	0.57

CI102.4 Section G1.2.2. Section G1.2.2 shall be replaced with the following:

The performance of the *proposed design* is calculated in accordance with provisions of this appendix using the following formula:

Performance Site *Energy* Index = *Proposed building performance/Baseline building performance*

Both the *proposed building performance* and the *baseline building performance* shall include all end-use load components within and associated with the *building* when calculating the Performance Site *Energy* Index.

CI102.5 Section G1.3.2. Item a. in Section G1.3.2 shall be replaced as follows, and item r. added as follows:

a. The following documentation shall be submitted to the *rating authority*: The *simulation program* used, the version of the *simulation program*, and the results of the *energy* analysis including the calculated values for the baseline *building* unregulated site *energy* (BBUE), baseline *building* regulated site *energy* (BBRE), *Building* Performance Factor (BPF), *baseline building performance*, the *proposed building performance*, Performance Site *Energy* Index (P~~C~~SEI), and Performance Site *Energy* Index Target (PIt).

p. For any exceptional calculation methods employed, document the predicted *energy* savings by *energy* type, the site *energy* savings, a narrative explaining the exceptional calculation method performed, and theoretical or empirical information supporting the accuracy of the method.

CI102.6 Section G2.4.2. Section G2.4.2 shall be renamed "Annual Site Energy." The informative note for sections G2.4.2 and G2.4.2.2 shall be removed. The first sentence in section G2.4.2. shall be replaced with the following:

The *baseline building performance* and *proposed building performance* shall be determined using conversion factors in Table CI103.6

Table CI103.6 Units of Fuel to Site *Energy* Conversion Factors

***Building* Project *Energy* Source**	**Units**	**Site *energy* Btu/unit (W-h/unit)**
Electricity	kWh	3,412
Natural Gas	*Therm (GJ)*	100,000 (277,778)
Propane	*Therm (GJ)*	100,000 (277,778)
Distillate fuel oil	Gallon (L)	137,600 (10,651)

CI102.7 Section G2.5. Section G2.5, item e shall be replaced with the following:

e. The Performance Site *Energy* Index calculated with and without the exceptional calculation method.

2024 International Energy Conservation Code Final Draft

(PCD2 with approved proposals from the CAR)

This document is included by reference in the 2023 Illinois Commercial Stretch Energy Code under license agreement with the International Code Council.

COPYRIGHT

2024 International Energy Conservation Code®
First Printing: Xxxxxx 2023
ISBN: 978-1-959851-69-1 (soft-cover edition)
ISBN: 978-1-959851-70-7 (PDF download)

PRINTED IN THE USA

Table of Contents

OLD PREFACE: To Be Deleted

Introduction

The *International Energy Conservation Code* ® (IECC®) establishes minimum requirements for energy-efficient buildings using prescriptive and performance-related provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles that make possible the use of new materials and new energy-efficient designs. This 2021 edition is fully compatible with all of the International Codes® (I-Codes®) published by the International Code Council® (ICC®), including the ***International Building Code*** ® (IBC®), ***International Existing Building Code*** ® (IEBC®), ***International Fire Code*** ® (IFC®), ***International Fuel Gas Code*** ® (IFGC®), ***International Green Construction Code*** ® (IgCC®), ***International Mechanical Code*** ® (IMC®), ***International Plumbing Code*** ® (IPC®), ***International Private Sewage Disposal Code*** ® (IPSDC®), ***International Property Maintenance Code*** ® (IPMC®), ***International Residential Code*** ® (IRC®), ***International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*** ® (ISPSC®), ***International Wildland-Urban Interface Code*** ® (IWUIC®), ***International Zoning Code*** ® (IZC®) and ***International Code Council Performance Code*** ® (ICCPC®).

This code contains separate provisions for commercial buildings and for low-rise residential buildings (3 stories or less in height above grade). Each set of provisions, IECC—Commercial Provisions and IECC—Residential Provisions, is separately applied to buildings within its respective scope. Each set of provisions is to be treated separately. Each contains a Scope and Administration chapter, a Definitions chapter, a General Requirements chapter, a chapter containing energy efficiency requirements and an Existing Buildings chapter containing provisions applicable to buildings within its scope.

The I-Codes, including the IECC, are used in a variety of ways in both the public and private sectors. Most industry professionals are familiar with the I-Codes as the basis of laws and regulations in communities across the US and in other countries. However, the impact of the codes extends well beyond the regulatory arena, as they are used in a variety of nonregulatory settings, including:

- Voluntary compliance programs such as those promoting sustainability, energy efficiency and disaster resistance.
- The insurance industry, to estimate and manage risk, and as a tool in underwriting and rate decisions.
- Certification and credentialing of individuals involved in the fields of building design, construction and safety.
- Certification of building and construction-related products.
- US federal agencies, to guide construction in an array of government-owned properties.
- Facilities management.
- "Best practices" benchmarks for designers and builders, including those who are engaged in projects in jurisdictions that do not have a formal regulatory system or a governmental enforcement mechanism.
- College, university and professional school textbooks and curricula.
- Reference works related to building design and construction.

In addition to the codes themselves, the code development process brings together building professionals on a regular basis. It provides an international forum for discussion and deliberation about building design, construction methods, safety, performance requirements, technological advances and innovative products.

Development

This 2021 edition presents the code as originally issued, with changes reflected in the 2000 through

2018 editions and further changes approved through the ICC Code Development Process through 2019. A new edition such as this is promulgated every 3 years.

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of an energy conservation code that adequately conserves energy; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

Maintenance

The IECC is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The ICC Code Development Process reflects principles of openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus, the principles embodied in OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government's use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone; there is no cost to participate, and people can participate without travel cost through the ICC's cloud-based app, cdpACCESS®. A broad cross-section of interests are represented in the ICC Code Development Process. The codes, which are updated regularly, include safeguards that allow for emergency action when required for health and safety reasons.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC's important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Multifamily Housing Council (NMHC)

The code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC's governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The contents of this work are subject to change through the code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the ICC.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code.

Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)

In each code development cycle, proposed changes to this code are considered at the Committee Action Hearings by the applicable International Code Development Committee. The IECC—Commercial Provisions (sections designated with a "C" prior to the section number) are primarily maintained by the Commercial Energy Code Development Committee. The IECC—Residential Provisions (sections designated with an "R" prior to the section number) are maintained by the Residential Energy Code Development Committee. This is designated in the chapter headings by a [CE] and [RE], respectively.

Maintenance responsibilities for the IECC are designated as follows:

[CE] = International Commercial Energy Conservation Code Development Committee
[RE] = International Residential Energy Conservation Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2024 edition of the I-Codes, there will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years, as shown in the following Code Development Hearings Table.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold Committee Action Hearings in different years, proposals for several I-Codes will be heard by committees in both the 2021 (Group A) and the 2022 (Group B) code development cycles.

All code change proposals for the IECC are considered in the Group B hearings.

It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understands which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal. For further information on the Code Development Committee responsibilities, please visit the ICC website at www.iccsafe.org/current-code-development-cycle.

CODE DEVELOPMENT HEARINGS

Group A Codes (Heard in 2021, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 11, 2021)	**Group B Codes (Heard in 2022, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 10, 2022)**
International Building Code – Egress (Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E) – Fire Safety (Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26) – General (Chapters 2–6, 12, 27–33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K, N)	Administrative Provisions (Chapter 1 of all codes except IECC, IRC and IgCC; IBC Appendix O; the appendices titled “Board of Appeals” for all codes except IECC, IRC, IgCC, ICCPC and IZC; administrative updates to currently referenced standards; and designated definitions)
International Fire Code	**International Building Code** – Structural (Chapters 15–25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M)
International Fuel Gas Code	**International Existing Building Code**
International Mechanical Code	**International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial**
International Plumbing Code	**International Energy Conservation Code—Residential** – IECC—Residential – IRC—Energy (Chapter 11)
International Property Maintenance Code	**International Green Construction Code** (Chapter 1)
International Private Sewage Disposal Code	**International Residential Code** – IRC—Building (Chapters 1–10, Appendices AE, AF, AH, AJ, AK, AL, AM, AO, AQ, AR, AS, AT, AU, AV, AW)
International Residential Code – IRC—Mechanical (Chapters 12–23) – IRC—Plumbing (Chapters 25–33, Appendices AG, AI, AN, AP)	
International Swimming Pool and Spa Code	

International Wildland-Urban Interface Code	
International Zoning Code	

Note: Proposed changes to the ICCPC will be heard by the code development committee noted in brackets [ ] in the text of the ICCPC.

Marginal Markings

Solid vertical lines in the margins within the body of the code indicate a technical change from the requirements of the 2018 edition. Deletion indicators in the form of an arrow (➡) are provided in the margin where an entire section, exception or table has been deleted or an item in a list of items or row of a table has been deleted.

A single asterisk [*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [**] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code. The following tables indicate such relocations in the 2021 edition of the IECC.

IECC COMMERCIAL RELOCATIONS

2021 LOCATION	2018 LOCATION
C402.2.1.5	C402.2.1.1
C404.6.1.1	C404.7
C405.2.3.1	C405.2.2.2
C405.2.4	C405.2.3
C501.2	C501.4
C503.2.2.1	C401.2.1

IECC RESIDENTIAL RELOCATIONS

2021 LOCATION	2018 LOCATION
Table R402.1.2	Table R402.1.4
Table R402.1.3	Table R402.1.2
R403.3.2	R403.3.7
R403.3.3	R403.3.6
R403.3.3.1	R403.3.6.1
R403.3.4	R403.3.2
R403.3.4.1	R403.3.2.1
R403.3.5	R403.3.3
R403.3.6	R403.3.4
R403.3.7	R403.3.5

Coordination of the International Codes

The coordination of technical provisions is one of the strengths of the ICC family of model codes. The codes can be used as a complete set of complementary documents, which will provide users with full integration and coordination of technical provisions. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. To make sure that each individual code is as complete as possible, some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in some of the model codes. This allows users maximum flexibility in their application of the I-Codes.

Italicized Terms

Terms italicized in code text, other than document titles, are defined in **Chapter 2**. The terms selected to be italicized have definitions that the user should read carefully to better understand the code. Where italicized, the **Chapter 2** definition applies. If not italicized, common-use definitions apply.

Adoption

The ICC maintains a copyright in all of its codes and standards. Maintaining copyright allows the ICC to fund its mission through sales of books, in both print and electronic formats. The ICC welcomes adoption of its codes by jurisdictions that recognize and acknowledge the ICC's copyright in the code, and further acknowledge the substantial shared value of the public/private partnership for code development between jurisdictions and the ICC.

The ICC also recognizes the need for jurisdictions to make laws available to the public. All I-Codes and I-Standards, along with the laws of many jurisdictions, are available for free in a nondownloadable form on the ICC's website. Jurisdictions should contact the ICC at adoptions@iccsafe.org to learn how to adopt and distribute laws based on the IECC in a manner that provides necessary access, while maintaining the ICC's copyright.

To facilitate adoption, two sections of this code contain blanks for fill-in information that needs to be supplied by the adopting jurisdiction as part of the adoption legislation. For this code, please see:

Section C101.1, . Insert: **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**.
Section R101.1, . Insert: **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**.

Effective Use of the International Energy Conservation Code

The IECC is a model code that regulates minimum energy conservation requirements for new buildings. The IECC addresses energy conservation requirements for all aspects of energy use in both commercial and residential construction, including heating and ventilating, lighting, water heating, and power usage for appliances and building systems.

The IECC is a design document. For example, before one constructs a building, the designer must determine the minimum insulation *R*-values and fenestration *U*-factors for the building exterior envelope. Depending on whether the building is for residential use or for commercial use, the IECC sets forth minimum requirements for exterior envelope insulation, window and door *U*-factors and SHGC ratings, *duct* insulation, lighting and power efficiency, and water distribution insulation.

ARRANGEMENT AND FORMAT OF THE 2021 IECC

The IECC contains two separate sets of provisions—one for commercial buildings and one for residential buildings. Each set of provisions is applied separately to buildings within their scope. The IECC—Commercial Provisions apply to all buildings except for residential buildings three stories or less in height. The IECC—Residential Provisions apply to detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings as well as Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height. These scopes are based on the definitions of "Commercial building" and "Residential building," respectively, in Chapter 2 of each set of provisions. Note that the IECC—Commercial Provisions therefore contain provisions for residential buildings four stories or greater in height.

The following table shows how the IECC is divided. The ensuing chapter-by-chapter synopsis details the scope and intent of the provisions of the IECC.

Chapter Topics

Chapter	Subjects
1–2	Administration and definitions
3	Climate zones and general materials requirements
4	Energy efficiency requirements
5	Existing buildings
6	Referenc ed standards
CA	Board of appeals
CB	Solar-ready zone
CC	Net zero energy

Chapter 1 Scope and Administration

Chapters 1 [CE] and **1 [RE]** contain provisions for the application, enforcement and administration of subsequent requirements of the code. In addition to establishing the scope of the code, Chapter 1 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining “due process of law” in enforcing the energy conservation criteria contained in the body of this code. Only through careful observation of the administrative provisions can the code official reasonably expect to demonstrate that “equal protection under the law” has been provided.

Chapter 2 Definitions

Terms that are defined in the code are listed alphabetically in **Chapters 2 [CE]** and **2 [RE]**. While a defined term may be used in one chapter or another, the meaning provided in Chapter 2 is applicable throughout the code.

Additional definitions regarding climate zones are found in **Tables C301.3** and **R301.3**. These are not listed in Chapter 2.

Where understanding of a term’s definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding of a particular code provision, the term is shown in italics. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

Chapter 3 General Requirements

Chapters 3 [CE] and **3 [RE]** specify the climate zones that will serve to establish the exterior design conditions. In addition, Chapter 3 provides interior design conditions that are used as a basis for assumptions in heating and cooling load calculations, and provides basic material requirements for insulation materials and fenestration materials. Climate has a major impact on the energy use of most buildings. The code establishes many requirements such as wall and roof insulation *R*-values, window and door thermal transmittance (*U*-factors) and provisions that affect the mechanical systems based on the climate where the building is located. This chapter contains information that will be used to properly assign the building location into the correct *climate zone* and is used as the basis for establishing or eliminating requirements.

Chapter 4 Energy Efficiency

Chapter 4 [CE] contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of most types of commercial buildings and residential buildings greater than three stories in height above grade. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new commercial construction and new residential construction greater than three stories in height, and promotes the effective use of energy. In addition to energy conservation requirements for the building envelope, this chapter contains requirements that impact energy efficiency for the HVAC systems, the electrical systems and the plumbing systems. It should be noted, however, that requirements are contained in other codes that have an impact on energy conservation. For instance, requirements for water flow rates are regulated by the ***International Plumbing Code***.

Chapter 4 [RE] contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of residential buildings regulated under this code. It should be noted that the definition of a residential building in this code is unique for this code. In this code, residential buildings include detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings as well as R-2, R-3 or R-4 buildings three stories or less in height. All other buildings, including residential buildings greater than three stories in height, are regulated by the energy conservation requirements in the IECC—Commercial Provisions. The applicable portions of a residential building must comply with the provisions within this chapter for energy efficiency. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new residential construction and promotes the effective use of energy. The provisions within the chapter promote energy efficiency in the building envelope, the heating and cooling system and the service water-heating system of the building.

Chapter 5 Existing Buildings

Chapters 5 [CE] and **[RE]** contain the technical energy efficiency requirements for existing buildings. Chapter 5 provisions address the maintenance of buildings in compliance with the code as well as how additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy need to be addressed from the standpoint of energy efficiency. Specific provisions are provided for historic buildings.

Chapter 6 Referenced Standards

The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. **Chapters 6 [CE]** and **6 [RE]** list all standards referenced in their respective portions of the code. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the code official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 6 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based on the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

Appendices

The appendices, while not part of the code, can become part of the code when specifically included in the adopting ordinance.

Chapter 1 requires the establishment of a board of appeals to hear appeals regarding determinations made by the code official. **Appendices CA** and **RA** provide qualification standards for members of the board as well as operational procedures of such board.

Appendices CB and **RB** address provisions for solar capacity in new structures.

Appendices CC and **RC** provide requirements intended bring about net zero annual energy consumption in their respective structures.

ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTATIONS

The following table contains a list of common abbreviations and units of measurement used in this code. Some of the abbreviations are for terms defined in Chapter 2. Others are terms used in various tables and text of the code.

Abbreviations and Notations

AFUE	Annual fuel utilization efficiency
bhp	Brake horsepower (fans)
Btu	British thermal unit
Btu/h × ft^2	Btu per hour per square foot
C-factor	See **Chapter 2**—Definitions
CDD	Cooling degree days
cfm	Cubic feet per minute
cfm/ft^2	Cubic feet per minute per square foot
ci	Continuous insulation
COP	Coefficient of performance
DCV	Demand control ventilation
°C	Degrees Celsius
°F	Degrees Fahrenheit
DWHR	Drain water heat recovery
DX	Direct expansion
E_c	Combustion efficiency
E_v	Ventilation efficiency
E_t	Thermal efficiency
EER	Energy efficiency ratio
EF	Energy factor
ERI	Energy rating index
F-factor	See **Chapter 2**—Definitions
FDD	Fault detection and diagnostics
FEI	Fan energy index
FL	Full load
ft^2	Square foot
gpm	Gallons per minute
HDD	Heating degree days
hp	Horsepower
HSPF	Heating seasonal performance factor
HVAC	Heating, ventilating and air conditioning
IEER	Integrated energy efficiency ratio
IPLV	Integrated Part Load Value
Kg/m^2	Kilograms per square meter

kW	Kilowatt
LPD	Light power density (lighting power allowance)
L/s	Liters per second
Ls	Liner system
m^2	Square meters
MERV	Minimum efficiency reporting value
NAECA	National Appliance Energy Conservation Act
NPLV	Nonstandard Part Load Value
Pa	Pascal
PF	Projection factor
pcf	Pounds per cubic foot
psf	Pounds per square foot
PTAC	Packaged terminal air conditioner
PTHP	Packaged terminal heat pump
R-value	See **Chapter 2**—Definitions
SCOP	Sensible coefficient of performance
SEER	Seasonal energy efficiency ratio
SHGC	Solar Heat Gain Coefficient
SPVAC	Single packaged vertical air conditioner
SPVHP	Single packaged vertical heat pump
SRI	Solar reflectance index
SWHF	Service water heat recovery factor
U-factor	See **Chapter 2**—Definitions
VAV	Variable air volume
VRF	Variable refrigerant flow
VT	Visible transmittance
W	Watts
w.c.	Water column
w.g.	Water gauge

PREFACE

FORMATTING CHANGES TO THE 2024 INTERNATIONAL CODES

The 2024 International Codes® (I-Codes®) have undergone substantial formatting changes as part of the digital transformation strategy of the International Code Council® (ICC®) to improve the user experience. The resulting product better aligns the print and PDF versions of the I-Codes with the ICC's Digital Codes content. Additional information can be found at iccsafe.org/design-updates.

Replacement of Marginal Markings with QR Codes

Through 2021, print editions of the I-Codes identified technical changes from prior code cycles with marginal markings [solid vertical lines for new text, deletion arrows ( ), asterisks for relocations (*)]. The 2024 I-Code print editions replace the marginal markings with QR codes to identify code changes more precisely.

A QR code is placed at the beginning of any section that has undergone technical revision. If there is no QR code, there are no technical changes to that section.

In the following example from the 2024 International Energy Conservation Code® (IECC®), a QR code indicates there are changes to Section XXX from the 2021 IECC. Note that the change may occur in the main section or in one or more subsections of the main section.

ADD QR CODE EXAMPLE

To see the code changes, the user need only scan the QR code with a smart device. If scanning a QR code is not an option, changes can be accessed by entering the 7-digit code beneath the QR code at the end of the following URL: qr.iccsafe.org/ (in the above example, "qr.iccsafe.org/xxxxxxx"). Those viewing the code book via PDF can click on the QR code.

All methods take the user to the appropriate section on ICC's Digital Codes website, where technical changes from the prior cycle can be viewed. Digital Codes Premium subscribers who are logged in will be automatically directed to the Premium view. All other users will be directed to the Digital Codes Basic free view. Both views show new code language in blue text along with deletion arrows for deleted text and relocation markers for relocated text.

Digital Codes Premium offers additional ways to enhance code compliance research, including revision histories, commentary by code experts and an advanced search function. A full list of features can be found at codes.iccsafe.org/premium-features.

ACCESSING ADDITIONAL FEATURES VIA REGISTRATION OF BOOK

Beginning with the 2024 ***International Mechanical Code*** ® (IMC®) and the 2024 ***International Plumbing Code*** ® (IPC®), users will be able to validate the authenticity of their book and register it with the ICC to receive incentives. Digital Codes Premium (codes.iccsafe.org) provides advanced features and exclusive content to enhance code compliance. To validate and register, the user will tap the ICC tag (pictured here and located on the front cover) with a near-field communication (NFC) compatible device. Visit iccsafe.org/nfc for more information and troubleshooting tips regarding NFC tag technology.

ABOUT THE I-CODES

The 2024 I-Codes, published by the ICC, are 15 fully compatible titles intended to establish provisions that adequately protect public health, safety and welfare; that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

The I-Codes are updated on a 3-year cycle to allow for new construction methods and technologies to be incorporated into the codes. Alternative materials, designs and methods not specifically addressed in the I-Code can be approved by the building official where the proposed materials, designs or methods comply with the intent of the provisions of the code.

The I-Codes are used as the basis of laws and regulations in communities across the US and in other countries. They are also used in a variety of nonregulatory settings, including:

- Voluntary compliance programs.
- The insurance industry.
- Certification and credentialing for building design, construction and safety professionals.
- Certification of building and construction-related products.
- Facilities management.
- “Best practices” benchmarks for designers and builders.
- College, university and professional school textbooks and curricula.
- Reference works related to building design and construction.

Code Development Process

The code development process regularly provides an international forum for building professionals to discuss requirements for building design, construction methods, safety, performance, technological advances and new products. Proposed changes to the I-Codes, submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties, are deliberated through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

Openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus are the guiding principles of both the ICC Code Development Process and OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government’s use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone without cost. Remote participation is available through cdpAccess®, the ICC's cloud-based app.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC’s important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- American Gas Association (AGA)
- American Institute of Architects (AIA)
- American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE)
- International Association of Fire Chiefs (IAFC)
- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM)
- National Council of Structural Engineers Association (NCSEA)
- National Multifamily Housing Council (NMHC)
- Plumbing Heating and Cooling Contractors (PHCC)
- Pool and Hot Tub Alliance (PHTA) formerly The Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP)

Code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC’s governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The I-Codes are subject to change through future code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the ICC at iccsafe.org/products-and-services/i-codes/code-development/.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes expressly disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, IMPLIED, EXPRESSED OR STATUTORY, IS GIVEN WITH RESPECT TO THE I-CODES. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of the I-Codes.

Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)

In each cycle, proposed changes are considered by the Code Development Committee assigned to a specific code or subject matter. Committee Action Hearings result in recommendations regarding a proposal to the voting membership. Where changes to a code section are not considered by that code's own committee, the code section is preceded by a bracketed letter designation identifying a different committee. Bracketed letter designations for the I-Code committees are:

- [A] = Administrative Code Development Committee
- [BE] = IBC—Egress Code Development Committee
- [BF] = IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee
- [BG] = IBC—General Code Development Committee
- [BS] = IBC—Structural Code Development Committee
- [E] = Developed under the ICC's Standard Development Process
- [EB] = International Existing Building Code Development Committee
- [F] = International Fire Code Development Committee
- [FG] = International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee
- [M] = International Mechanical Code Development Committee
- [P] = International Plumbing Code Development Committee
- [SP] = International Swimming Pool and Spa Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2027 edition of the I-Codes, the ICC Board of Directors approved a standing motion from the Board Committee on the Long-Term Code Development Process to revise the code development cycle to incorporate two committee action hearings for each code group. This change expands the current process from two independent 1-year cycles to a single continuous 3-year cycle. There will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years. The current groups will be reworked. With the energy provisions of the IECC and **Chapter 11** of the International Residential Code® (IRC®) now moved to the Code Council's Standards Development Process, the reduced volume of code changes will be distributed between Groups A and B.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold Committee Action Hearings in different years, proposals for most codes will be heard by committees in both the 2024 (Group A) and the 2025 (Group B) code development cycles. It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understands which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal.

Please visit the ICC website at iccsafe.org/products-and-services/i-codes/code-development/current-code-development-cycle for further information on the Code Development Committee responsibilities as it becomes available.

Coordination of the I-Codes

The coordination of technical provisions allows the I-Codes to be used as a complete set of complementary documents. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. Some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in multiple model codes.

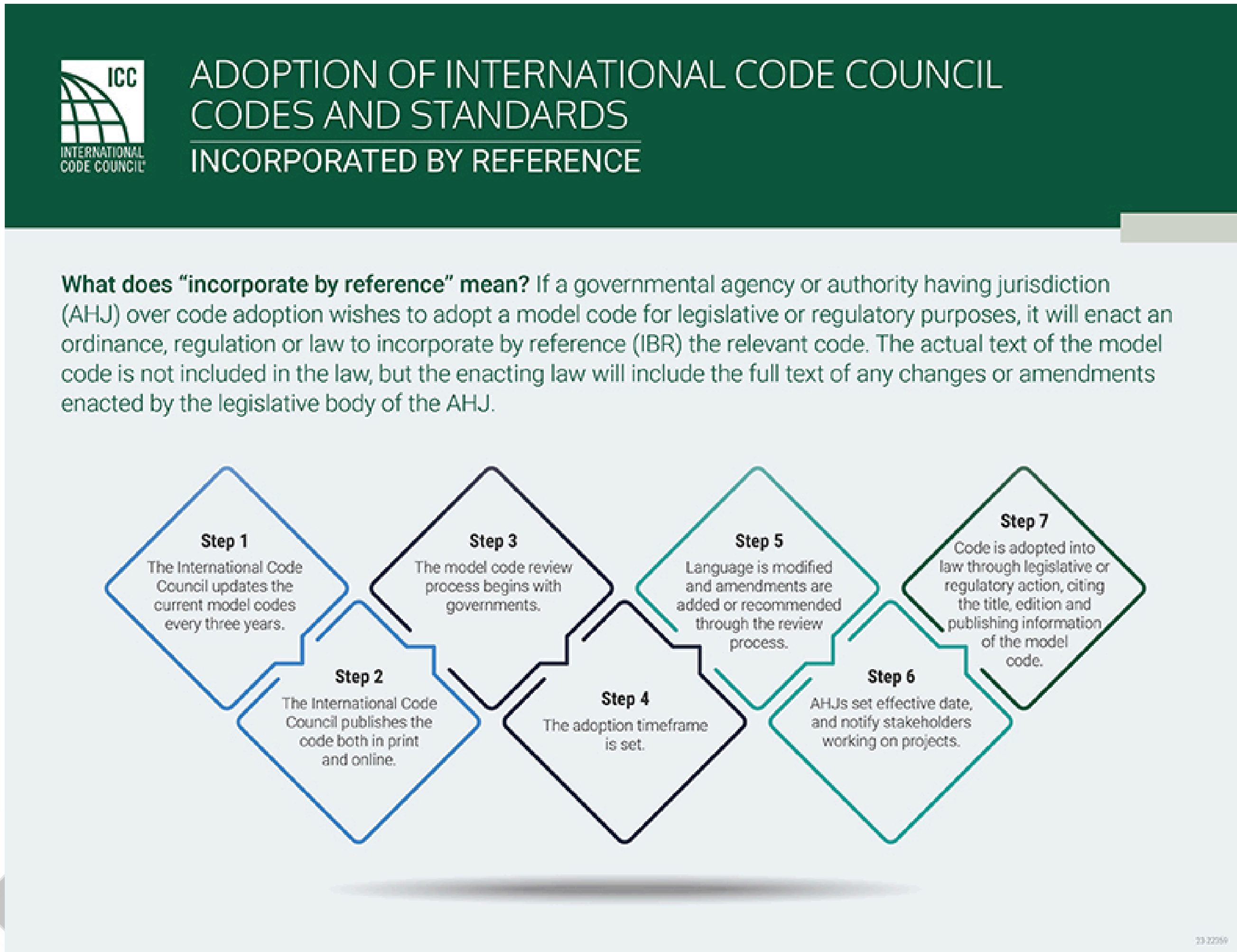
Italicized Terms

Words and terms defined in **Chapter 2**, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text and the Chapter 2 definitions apply. Although care has been taken to ensure applicable terms are italicized, there may be instances where a defined term has not been italicized or where a term is italicized but the definition found in Chapter 2 is not applicable. For example, **Chapter 2** of the International Building Code® (IBC®) contains a definition for "***Listed***" that is applicable to equipment, products and services. The term "listed" is also used in that code to refer to a list of items within the code or within a referenced document. For the latter, the Chapter 2 definition would not be applicable.

Adoption of International Code Council Codes and Standards

The International Code Council maintains a copyright in all of its codes and standards. Maintaining copyright allows the Code Council to fund its mission through sales of books in both print and digital formats. The Code Council welcomes incorporation by reference of its codes and standards by jurisdictions that recognize and acknowledge the Code Council's copyright in the codes and standards, and further acknowledge the substantial shared value of the public/private partnership for code development between jurisdictions and the Code Council. By making its codes and standards available for incorporation by reference, the Code Council does not waive its copyright in its codes and standards.

The Code Council's codes and standards may only be adopted by incorporation by reference in an ordinance passed by the governing body of the jurisdiction. "Incorporation by reference" means that in the adopting ordinance, the governing body cites only the title, edition, relevant sections or subsections (where applicable), and publishing information of the model code or standard, and the actual text of the model code or standard is not included in the ordinance (see graphic, "Adoption of International Code Council Codes and Standards"). The Code Council does not consent to the reproduction of the text of its codes or standards in any ordinance. If the governing body enacts any changes, only the text of those changes or amendments may be included in the ordinance.



The Code Council also recognizes the need for jurisdictions to make laws accessible to the public. Accordingly, all I-Codes and I-Standards, along with the laws of many jurisdictions, are available to view for free at codes.iccsafe.org/codes/i-codes.These documents may also be purchased, in both digital and print versions, at shop.iccsafe.org.

To facilitate adoption, some I-Code sections contain blanks for fill-in information that needs to be supplied by the adopting jurisdiction as part of the adoption legislation. For example, the IECC contains:

Section C101.1. Insert: **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**

Section R101.1. Insert: **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**

For further information or assistance with adoption, including a sample ordinance, jurisdictions should contact the Code Council at incorporation@iccsafe.org.

For a list of frequently asked questions (FAQs) addressing a range of foundational topics about the adoption of model codes by jurisdictions and to learn more about the Code Council's code adoption resources, scan the QR code or visit iccsafe.org/code-adoption-resources.

CHAPTER 1 [CE] SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 1 *establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced.* ***Chapter 1*** *is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement.* ***Section C101,*** *identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.*

The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of ***Chapter 1*** *establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.*

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION C101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

C101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**, and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as "this code."

C101.2 Scope. This code applies to the design and construction of buildings not covered by the scope of the IECC – Residential Provisions.

C101.2.1 Appendices Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

C101.3 Intent. The International Energy Conservation Code - Commercial Provisions provide market-driven, enforceable requirements for the design and construction of commercial buildings, providing minimum efficiency requirements for buildings that result in the maximum level of energy efficiency that is safe, technologically feasible, and life cycle cost effective, considering economic feasibility, including potential costs and savings for consumers and building owners, and return on investment. Additionally, the code provides jurisdictions with supplemental requirements, including ASHRAE 90.1, and optional requirements that lead to achievement of zero energy buildings, presently, and through glidepaths that achieve zero energy buildings by 2030 and on additional timelines sought by governments, and achievement of additional policy goals as identified by the Energy and Carbon Advisory Council and approved by the Board of Directors. Requirements contained in the code will include, but not be limited to, prescriptive- and performance-based pathways. The code may include non-mandatory appendices incorporating additional energy efficiency and greenhouse gas reduction resources developed by the Code Council and others. The code will aim to simplify code requirements to facilitate the code's use and compliance rate. The code is updated on a three-year cycle with each subsequent edition providing increased energy savings over the prior edition. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this intent. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

C101.4 Compliance. *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

C101.4.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

SECTION C102
APPLICABILITY

C102.1 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

C102.1.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a *building* includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

C102.2 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

C102.3 Applications of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

C102.4 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in **Chapter 6**, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C102.4.1 and C102.4.2.

C102.4.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

C102.4.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

C102.5 Partial invalidity. If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION C103
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

C103.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. The *code official* shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the *owner* or the *owner*'s authorized agent. The *code official* shall first find that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was *approved* or was not *approved*.

C103.1.1 Above code programs. The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program as exceeding the energy efficiency required by this code. Buildings *approved* in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified in **Table C407.2(1)** shall be met.

SECTION C104
CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

C104.1 Creation of enforcement agency. The [INSERT NAME OF DEPARTMENT] is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ). The function of the agency shall be the implementation, administration and enforcement of the provisions of this code.

C104.2 Appointment. The authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

C104.3 Deputies. In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) shall have the authority to appoint a deputy authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) , other related technical officers, inspectors and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

SECTION C105
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

C105.1 General. *Construction documents* and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the ~~building~~code official, with each application for a permit. The *construction documents* shall be prepared by a *registered design professional* where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary *construction documents* to be prepared by a *registered design professional*.

Exception: The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for *construction documents* or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

C105.2 Information on construction documents. *Construction documents* shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. *Construction documents* shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the *building*, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include, but are not limited to, the following as applicable:

1. Energy compliance path.
2. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
3. *Fenestration* *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).
4. Area-weighted *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
5. *Air barrier* and air sealing details, including the location of the *air barrier*.
6. Thermal bridges as identified in Section C402.6.
7. Mechanical system design criteria.

8. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
9. Economizer description.
10. Equipment and system controls.
11. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
12. *Duct* sealing, *duct* and pipe insulation and location.
13. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
14. Location of daylight zones on floor plans.
15. Location of pathways for routing of raceways or cable from the *on-site renewable energy* system to the electrical distribution equipment.
16. Location reserved for inverters, metering equipment, ESS, and a pathway reserved for routing of raceways or conduit from the renewable energy system to the point of interconnection with the electrical service and the ESS.
17. Location and layout of a designated area for ESS.
18. Rated energy capacity and rated power capacity of the installed or planned ESS.

C105.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction drawings.

C105.3 Examination of documents. The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying *construction documents* and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a *registered design professional*, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the *building* design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

C105.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the *code official* issues a permit where *construction documents* are required, the *construction documents* shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance." Such *approved construction documents* shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved construction documents*.

One set of *construction documents* so reviewed shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

C105.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the *construction documents*, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

C105.3.3 Phased approval. The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the *construction documents* for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

C105.4 Amended construction documents. Changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved construction documents* shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of *construction documents*.

C105.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of *approved construction documents* shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

C105.6 Building documentation and closeout submittal requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

C105.6.1 Record documents. *Construction documents* shall be updated to convey a record of the completed work. Such updates shall include mechanical, electrical and control drawings that indicate all changes to size, type and location of components, equipment and assemblies.

C105.6.2 Compliance documentation. Energy code compliance documentation and supporting calculations shall be delivered in one document to the building *owner* as part of the project record documents or manuals, or as a standalone document. This document shall include the specific energy code edition utilized for compliance determination for each system, documentation demonstrating compliance with **Section C303.1.3,** for each *fenestration* product installed, and the interior lighting power compliance path, *building* area or space-by-space, used to calculate the lighting power allowance.

For projects complying with Item 2 of **Section C401.2,** , the documentation shall include:

1. The envelope insulation compliance path.
2. All compliance calculations including those required by **Sections C402.1.4,** , **C403.8.1,** , **C405.3,** and **C405.5,** .
3. A plan for annual energy use data gathering and disclosure as specified in Section C405.13.

For projects complying with **Section C407,** , the documentation shall include that required by **Sections C407.3.1,** and **C407.3.2,** .

C105.6.3 Systems operation control. Training shall be provided to those responsible for maintaining and operating equipment included in the manuals required by **Section C105.6.2,** .

The training shall include:

1. Review of manuals and permanent certificate.
2. Hands-on demonstration of all normal maintenance procedures, normal operating modes, and all emergency shutdown and startup procedures.
3. Training completion report.

SECTION C106
FEES

C106.1 Fees. A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by law have been paid. Nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

C106.2 Schedule of permit fees. A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

C106.3 Valuation of work. The applicant for a permit shall provide an estimated value of the work for which the permit is being issued at the time of application. Such estimated valuations shall include the total value of the work, including materials and labor. Where, in the opinion of the *code official* , the valuation is underestimated, the permit shall be denied, unless the applicant can show detailed estimates acceptable to the *code official* . The final valuation shall be *approved* by the *code official* .

C106.4 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to a fee established by the *code official* that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

C106.5 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

C106.6 Refunds. The *code official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

~~SECTION C109~~
~~VALIDITY~~

SECTION C107
INSPECTIONS

C107.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the *code official*, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the *code official* nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or *building* component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

C107.2 Required inspections. The *code official*, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in **Sections C107.2.1,** through **C107.2.6,** .

C107.2.1 Footing and foundation insulation. Inspections shall verify the footing and foundation insulation *R*-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C107.2.2 Building thermal envelope. Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, *R*-values, location of insulation, thermal bridge mitigation, *fenestration*, *U*-factor, SHGC and VT, and that *air leakage* controls are installed, as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C107.2.3 Plumbing system. Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, *R*-values, protection required, controls and heat traps as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C107.2.4 Mechanical system. Inspections shall verify the installed HVAC equipment for the type and size, controls, insulation, *R*-values, system and damper *air leakage*, minimum fan efficiency, energy recovery and economizer as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C107.2.5 Electrical system. Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components and meters as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.Where an electrical energy storage system area is required, inspections shall verify space availability and pathways to electrical service.

C107.2.6 Final inspection. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation and proper operation of all required *building* controls, and documentation verifying activities associated with required *building commissioning* have been conducted in accordance with **Section C408,** .

C107.3 Reinspection. A *building* shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.

C107.4 Approved inspection agencies. The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the *building* design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the *building* components and systems that they are inspecting.

C107.5 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

C107.6 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.

~~SECTION C110~~
~~REFERENCED STANDARDS~~

SECTION C108
NOTICE OF APPROVAL

C108.1 Approval. After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the *code official* .

C108.2 Revocation. The *code official* is authorized to suspend or revoke, in writing, a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

SECTION ~~C110~~C109
MEANS OF APPEALS

~~C110.1~~C109.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the *code official*.

~~C110.2~~C109.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equivalent or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

~~C110.3~~C109.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training on matters pertaining to the provisions of this code and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

C109.4 Administration The *code official* shall take action in accordance with the decisions of the board.

SECTION ~~C109~~C110
STOP WORK ORDER

~~C109.1~~C110.1 Authority. Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

~~C109.2~~C110.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the *owner* of the property, the *owner*'s authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

~~C109.3~~C110.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

~~C109.4~~C110.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

CHAPTER 2 [CE] DEFINITIONS

Staff note: all defined terms will not appear italicized in this code.

About this chapter: *Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code.* ***Chapter 2*** *performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.*

SECTION C201
GENERAL

C201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

C201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

C201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the ***International Building Code*** , ***International Fire Code*** , ***International Fuel Gas Code*** , ***International Mechanical Code*** , ***International Plumbing Code*** or the ***International Residential Code*** shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

C201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION C202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. See "***Wall, above-grade*** ."

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a *building* or structure.

AIR BARRIER. One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

AIR CURTAIN UNIT. A device, installed at the *building entrance* , that generates and discharges a laminar air stream intended to prevent the infiltration of external, unconditioned air into the conditioned spaces, or the loss of interior, conditioned air to the outside.

AIR LEAKAGE. The uncontrolled air flow through the *building thermal envelope* caused by pressure differences across the *building thermal envelope*. *Air leakage* can be inward (*infiltration*) or outward (exfiltration) through the *building thermal envelope*.

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than *repair* or *addition* . Also, a change in a *building* , electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, *addition* or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPROVED. Acceptable to the *code official* .

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been *approved* by the *code official*.

APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, *approved* by the building official, who is competent and experienced in the ap-plication of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "***Manual***").

AUTOMOBILE PARKING SPACE. A space within a *building* or private or public parking lot, exclusive of driveways, ramps, columns, office and work areas, for the parking of an automobile.

BELOW-GRADE WALL. See "***Wall, below-grade***."

BEST EFFICIENCY POINT (BEP). The pump hydraulic power operating point (consisting of both flow and head conditions) that results in the maximum efficiency.

BIOGAS. A mixture of hydrocarbons that is a gas at 60°F (15.5°C) and 1 atmosphere of pressure that is produced through the anaerobic digestion of organic matter.

BIOMASS WASTE. Organic non-fossil material of biological origin that is a byproduct or a discarded product. *Biomass waste* includes municipal solid waste from biogenic sources, landfill gas, sludge waste, agricultural crop byproducts, straw, and other biomass solids, liquids, and biogases; but excludes wood and wood-derived fuels (including black liquor), biofuel feedstock, biodiesel, and fuel ethanol.

BOILER, MODULATING. A boiler that is capable of more than a single firing rate in response to a varying temperature or heating load.

BOILER SYSTEM. One or more boilers, their piping and controls that work together to supply steam or hot water to heat output devices remote from the boiler.

BUBBLE POINT. The refrigerant liquid saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water-heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the *building* site and supporting the *building*.

BUILDING COMMISSIONING. A process that verifies and documents that the selected *building* systems have been designed, installed and function according to the *owner*'s project requirements and *construction documents*, and to minimum code requirements.

BUILDING ENTRANCE. Any door, set of doors, doorway or other form of portal that is used to gain access to the *building* from the outside by the public.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other *building* element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

CAPTIVE KEY OVERRIDE. A lighting control that will not release the key that activates the override when the lighting is on.

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

***C*-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a *building* component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h × ft^2 × °F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the use of a *building* or a portion of a *building* that results in any of the following:

1. A *change of occupancy* classification.
2. A change from one group to another group within an occupancy classification.
3. Any change in use within a group for which there is a change in the application of the requirements of this code.

CHI-FACTOR (χ-FACTOR). The heat loss factor for a single thermal bridge characterized as a point element of a *building thermal envelope* (Btu/h x °F)[W/K].

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to the fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLEAN WATER PUMP. A device that is designed for use in pumping water with a maximum nonabsorbent free solid content of 0.016 lb/ft (0.256 kg/m) and with a maximum dissolved solid content of 3.1 lb/ft (49.66 kg/m), provided that the total gas content of the water does not exceed the saturation volume, and disregarding any additives necessary to prevent the water from freezing at a min-imum of 14°F (-10°C).

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) − COOLING. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) − HEATING. The ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system, including the compressor and, if applicable, auxiliary heat, under designated operating conditions.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of "***Residential building***."

COMMON AREA. All *conditioned spaces* within Group R occupancy *buildings* that are not *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*.

COMMUNITY RENEWABLE ENERGY FACILITY. A facility that produces energy harvested from *renewable energy resources* and is qualified as a community energy facility under applicable jurisdictional statutes and rules.

COMPUTER ROOM. A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data which has a design total information technology equipment (ITE) equipment power density less than or equal to 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area or a design total ITE equipment load less than or equal to 10 kW.

CONDENSING UNIT. A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more refrigerant compressors, refrigerant condensers (air-cooled, evaporatively cooled or water-cooled), condenser fans and motors (where used) and factory-supplied accessories.

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONGREGATE LIVING. A building or part thereof that contains sleeping units where residents share bathroom or kitchen facilities, or both.

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location, and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior or is integral to any opaque surface of the *building thermal envelope*.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. *Fenestration* products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

DATA CENTER. A room or series of rooms that share *data center* systems, whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design total ITE equipment power density exceeding 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area and a total design ITE equipment load greater than 10 kW.

DATA CENTER SYSTEMS. HVAC systems and equipment, or portions thereof, used to provide cooling or *ventilation* in a *data center*.

DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A device or system that provides *automatic* control of electric light levels based on the amount of daylight in a space.

DAYLIGHT ZONE. That portion of a *building*'s interior floor area that is illuminated by natural light.

DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM (DOAS). A *ventilation* system that supplies 100 percent outdoor air primarily for the purpose of *ventilation*, and that is a separate system from the *zone* space-conditioning system.

DEHUMIDIFIER. A self-contained, electrically operated, and mechanically encased product with the sole purpose of dehumidifying the space consisting of:

1. A refrigerated surface (evaporator) that condenses moisture from the atmosphere,
2. A refrigerating system, including an electric motor,

3. An air-circulating fan, and
4. A means for collecting or disposing of the condensate.
A *dehumidifier* does not include a portable air conditioner, room air conditioner, or packaged terminal air conditioner.

DEMAND CONTROL KITCHEN VENTILATION (DCKV). A system that provides *automatic*, continuous control over exhaust hood and, where provided, make-up airflows in response to one or more sensors that monitor cooking activity or through direct communication with cooking appliances.

DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV). A *ventilation* system capability that provides for the *automatic* reduction of outdoor air intake below design rates when the actual occupancy of spaces served by the system is less than design occupancy.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon a demand for hot water.

DEMAND RESPONSE SIGNAL. A signal that indicates a price or a request to modify electricity consumption for a limited time period.

DEMAND RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A control capable of receiving and automatically responding to a *demand response signal*.

DESSICANT DEHUMIDIFICATION SYSTEM. A mechanical dehumidification technology that uses a solid or liquid material to remove moisture from the air.

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC). A type of control where controlled and monitored analog or binary data, such as temperature and contact closures, are converted to digital format for manipulation and calculations by a digital computer or microprocessor, then converted back to analog or binary form to control physical devices.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes *duct* fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DX-DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM UNITS (DX-DOAS UNITS). A type of air-cooled, water-cooled or water source factory assembled product that dehumidifies 100 percent outdoor air to a low dew point and includes reheat that is capable of controlling the supply dry-bulb temperature of the dehumidified air to the designated supply air temperature. This conditioned outdoor air is then delivered directly or indirectly to the conditioned spaces. It may precondition outdoor air by containing an enthalpy wheel, sensible wheel, desiccant wheel, plate heat exchanger, heat pipes, or other heat or mass transfer apparatus. with an energy recovery *ventilation* system.

DYNAMIC GLAZING. Any *fenestration* product that has the fully reversible ability to change its performance properties, including *U*-factor, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) or visible transmittance (VT).

EAST-ORIENTED. Facing within 45 degrees of true east to the south and within less than 22.5 degrees of true east to the north in the northern hemisphere or facing within

45 degrees of true east to the north and within less than 22.5 degrees of true east to the south in the southern hemisphere.

ECONOMIZER, AIR. A *duct* and damper arrangement and *automatic* control system that allows a cooling system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling during mild or cold weather.

ECONOMIZER, WATER. A system where the supply air of a cooling system is cooled indirectly with water that is itself cooled by heat or mass transfer to the environment without the use of mechanical cooling.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, and electric motorcycles, primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a *building* electrical service, EVSE, a rechargeable storage battery, a fuel cell, a photovoltaic array, or another source of electric current. Plug-in hybrid electric vehicles are electric vehicles having a second source of motive power. Off-road, self-propelled electric mobile equipment, such as industrial trucks, hoists, lifts, transports, golf carts, airline ground support equipment, tractors, boats and the like, are not considered electric vehicles.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE (EV CAPABLE SPACE). An *automobile parking space* provided with electrical infrastructure, such as, but not limited to, raceways, cables, enclosures, electrical capacity, and electrical distribution equipment space, necessary for connection to EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE READY SPACE (EV READY SPACE). An *automobile parking space* provided with a branch circuit and either an outlet or enclosure for connection to EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE). Equipment for plug-in power transfer including the ungrounded, grounded and equipment grounding conductors, and the electric vehicle connectors, attachment plugs, personal protection system and all other fittings, devices, power outlets or apparatus installed specifically for the purpose of transferring energy between the premises wiring and the electric vehicle.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT INSTALLED SPACE (EVSE SPACE). An *automobile parking space* where operational EVSE has been installed .

EMITTANCE. The ratio of the radiant heat flux emitted by a specimen ~~to that emitted by a blackbody at the same temperature and under the same conditions~~ measured on a scale from 0 to 1, where a value of 1 indicates perfect release of thermal radiation.

ENCLOSED SPACE. A volume surrounded by solid surfaces such as walls, floors, roofs and openable devices, such as doors and operable windows.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for *purchased energy* for the *building* functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY RECOVERY, SERIES. A three-step process in which the first step is to remove energy from a single airstream without the use of mechanical cooling. In the second step, the air stream is mechanically cooled for the purpose of dehumidification. In the third step, the energy removed in step one is reintroduced to the air stream.

ENERGY RECOVERY RATIO, SERIES (SERR). The difference between the dry bulb air temperatures leaving the series energy recovery unit and leaving the dehumidifying coil divided by the difference between 75˚F (24˚C) and the dry bulb temperature of the air leaving the dehumidifying cooling coil.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from exhaust air for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor *ventilation* air prior to supplying the air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a *building*.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM (ESS). One or more devices, assembled together, capable of storing energy in order to supply electrical energy at a future time.

ENERGY USE INTENSITY (EUI). The metric indicating the total amount of energy consumed by a *building* in one year divided by the gross floor area of the *building* .

ENTHALPY RECOVERY RATIO (ERR). Change in the enthalpy of the outdoor air supply divided by the difference between the outdoor air and entering exhaust air enthalpy, expressed as a percentage.

ENTRANCE DOOR. A vertical *fenestration* product used for occupant ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances utilizing latching hardware and *automatic* closers and containing over 50 percent glazing specifically designed to withstand heavy-duty usage.

EQUIPMENT ROOM. A space that contains either electrical equipment, mechanical equipment, machinery, water pumps or hydraulic pumps that are a function of the *building*'s services.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

~~**EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE.**~~

FAN, EMBEDDED. A fan that is part of a manufactured assembly where the assembly includes functions other than air movement.

FAN ARRAY. Multiple fans in parallel between two plenum sections in an air distribution system.

FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP). The horsepower delivered to the fan's shaft. Brake horsepower does not include the mechanical drive losses, such as that from belts and gears.

FAN ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The electrical input power in kilowatts required to operate an individual fan or *fan array* at design conditions. It includes the power consumption of motor controllers, where present.

FAN ENERGY INDEX (FEI). The ratio of the electric input power of a reference fan to the electric input power of the actual fan as calculated in accordance with **AMCA 208**.

FAN NAMEPLATE ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The nominal electrical input power rating stamped on a fan assembly nameplate.

FAN SYSTEM, COMPLEX. A fan system that combines a single-cabinet fan system with other supply fans, exhaust fans, or both.

FAN SYSTEM, EXHAUST OR RELIEF. A fan system dedicated to the removal of air from interior spaces to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM, RETURN. A fan system dedicated to removing air from the interior where some or all the air is to be recirculated except during economizer operation.

FAN SYSTEM, SINGLE-CABINET. A fan system where a single fan, single *fan array*, a single set of fans operating in parrallel, or fans or fan arrays in series and embedded in the same cabinet that both supply air to a space and recirculate the air.

FAN SYSTEM, TRANSFER. A fan system that exclusively moves air from one occupied space to another.

FAN SYSTEM AIRFLOW. The sum of the airflow of all fans with *fan electrical input power* greater than 1 kW at *fan system design conditions*, excluding the airflow that passes through downstream fans with *fan electrical input power* less than 1 kW.

FAN SYSTEM BHP. The sum of the fan brake horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at *fan system design conditions* to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS. Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow of by the system, other than during air economizer operation.

FAN SYSTEM ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The sum of the fan electrical power of all fans that are required to operate at *fan system design conditions* to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned spaces and/or return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP. The sum of the motor *nameplate horsepower* of all fans that are required to operate at design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAULT DETECTION AND DIAGNOSTICS (FDD) SYSTEM. A software platform that utilizes *building* analytic algorithms to convert data provided by sensors and devices to automatically identify faults in *building* systems and provide a prioritized list of actionable resolutions to those faults based on cost or energy avoidance, comfort and maintenance impact.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either skylights or vertical *fenestration*.

Skylights. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs, greenhouses and sloped walls.

Vertical fenestration. Windows that are fixed or operable, doors that are more than half glazed, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal [KS1]8/2/22

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED. A *fenestration* product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a *fenestration* product or exterior door. Field-fabricated does not include site-built *fenestration*.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A *fenestration* designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built *fenestration* include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

***F*-FACTOR.** The perimeter heat loss factor per unit perimeter length of slab-on-grade floors (Btu/h × ft × °F) [W/(m × K)].

FINANCIAL RENEWABLE ENERGY POWER PURCHASE AGREEMENT. A financial arrangement between a renewa-ble electricity generator and a purchaser wherein the purchaser pays or guarantees a price to the generator for the project's re-newable generation. Also known as a "financial power purchase agreement" and "virtual power purchase agreement."

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

GENERAL LIGHTING. Interior lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout a space.

GREEN RETAIL TARIFF. An electricity-rate structure qualified under applicable statutes or rules contracted by an electricity service provider to the *building* project *owner* to provide electricity generated with 100 percent *renewable energy resources* without the purchase of unbundled RECS.

GREENHOUSE. A structure or a thermally isolated area of a *building* that maintains a specialized sunlit environment with a skylight roof ratio of 50 percent or more above the growing area exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants. *Greenhouses* are those that are erected for a period of 180 days or more.

GROUP R. Buildings or portions of buildings that contain any of the following occupancies as established in the ***International Building Code*** :

1. *Group R*-1.
2. *Group R*-2 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
3. *Group R*-4 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.

HEAT TRAP. An arrangement of piping and fittings, such as elbows, or a commercially available *heat trap* that prevents thermosyphoning of hot water during standby periods.

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

HIGH SPEED DOOR. A nonswinging door used primarily to facilitate vehicular access or material transportation, with a minimum opening rate of 32 inches (813 mm) per second, a minimum closing rate of 24 inches (610 mm) per second and that includes an *automatic* -closing device.

HIGH-CAPACITY GAS-FIRED WATER HEATERS. Gas-fired instantaneous water heaters with a rated input greater than 200,000 Btu/h (58.6 kW) and not less than 4,000 Btu/h per gallon (310 W per litre) of stored water~~, and~~ . Also, gas-fired storage water heaters with a rated input both greater than 105,000 Btu/h (30.8 kW) and less than 4,000 Btu/h per gallon (310 W per litre) of stored water.

HIGH-END TRIM. A lighting control setting which limits the maximum power to individual luminaires or groups of luminaires in a space.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any *building* or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing, by the State Historic Preservation Officer

or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.

2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

HORTICULTURAL LIGHTING. Electric lighting used for horticultural production, cultivation or maintenance.

HUMIDISTATIC CONTROLS. *Automatic* controls used to maintain humidity at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

HVAC TOTAL SYSTEM PERFORMANCE RATIO (HVAC TSPR). The ratio of the sum of a *building*'s annual heating and cooling load in thousands of Btus to the sum of annual site energy consumption of the *building* HVAC systems in BTU.Content

IEC DESIGN H MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

IEC DESIGN N MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has two, four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

INDOOR GROW. a space, other than a greenhouse, used exclusively for, and essential to horticultural production, cultivation or maintenance.

INFILTRATION. The uncontrolled inward *air leakage* into a *building* caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY EQUIPMENT (ITE). Items including computers, data storage devices, servers and network and communication equipment.

INTEGRATED HVAC SYSTEM. An HVAC system designed to handle both sensible and latent heat removal. Integrated HVAC systems include, but are not limited to HVAC systems with a sensible heat ratio of 0.65 or less and the capability of providing cooling, dedicated outdoor air systems, single package air conditioners with at least one refrigerant circuit providing hot gas reheat, and dehumidifiers modified to allow external heat rejection.

INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV). A single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER, COP or kW/ton expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for equipment.

INTERNAL CURTAIN SYSTEM. A system consisting of movable panels of fabric or plastic film used to cover and uncover the space enclosed in a *greenhouse* on a daily basis.

ISOLATION DEVICES. Devices that isolate HVAC zones so that they can be operated independently of one another. *Isolation devices* include separate systems, isolation dampers and controls providing shutoff at terminal boxes.

LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved agency* or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the *labeled* items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than or equal to 84.5 inches (2146 mm) in diameter. These fans are sometimes referred to as High-Volume, Low-Speed (HVLS) fans.

LINER SYSTEM (Ls). A system that includes the following:

1. A continuous vapor barrier liner membrane that is installed below the purlins and that is uninterrupted by framing members.
2. An uncompressed, unfaced insulation resting on top of the liner membrane and located between the purlins.

For multilayer installations, the last rated *R*-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached.

LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LOW SLOPE. A slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) as applied to roofs.

LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER. A transformer that is air-cooled, does not use oil as a coolant, has an input voltage less than or equal to 600 volts and is rated for operation at a frequency of 60 hertz.

LUMINAIRE-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS. A lighting system consisting of one or more luminaires with embedded lighting control logic, occupancy and ambient light sensors, wireless networking capabilities and local override switching capability, where required.

MANUAL. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "***Automatic***").

NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER. The nominal motor output power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.

NEMA DESIGN A MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque as shown in paragraph 12.38.1 of **NEMA MG 1**.
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.1 of **NEMA MG 1**.

3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.1 of **NEMA MG 1**.
4. It has a locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of **NEMA MG 1** for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 of **NEMA MG 1** for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN B MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting.
2. It develops locked-rotor, breakdown and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in Sections 12.38, 12.39 and 12.40 of **NEMA MG1**.
3. It draws locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in Section 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and Section 12.35.2 for 50 hertz of **NEMA MG1**.
4. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN C MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. Designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque for high-torque applications up to the values shown in paragraph 12.38.2 of **NEMA MG1** (incorporated by reference, see A§431.15).
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.2 of **NEMA MG1**.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.2 of **NEMA MG1**.
4. It has a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of **NEMA MG1** for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

NETWORKED GUESTROOM CONTROL SYSTEM. A control system, with access from the front desk or other central location associated with a *Group R*-1 *building*, that is capable of identifying the rented and unrented status of each guestroom according to a timed schedule, and is capable of controlling HVAC in each hotel and motel guestroom separately.

NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV). A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated and referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions, for units that are not designed to operate at AHRI standard rating conditions.

NORTH-ORIENTED. Facing within 67.5 degrees of true north in the northern hemisphere or facing within 67.5 degrees of true south in the southern hemisphere.

OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL. An *automatic* control device or system that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

OCCUPIED-STANDBY MODE. Mode of operation when an HVAC *zone* is scheduled to be occupied and an occupant sensor indicates no occupants are within the *zone*.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. Energy from *renewable energy resources* harvested at the *building* project site.

OPAQUE DOOR. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

OWNER. Any person, agent, operator, entity, firm or corporation having any legal or equitable interest in the property; or recorded in the official records of the state, county or municipality as holding an interest or title to the property; or otherwise having possession or control of the property, including the guardian of the estate of any such person, and the executor or administrator of the estate of such person if ordered to take possession of real property by a court.

PARKING AREA, EXTERIOR. Parking spaces, drive aisles and ramps which are not located within a *building*, or which are located on a roof.

PARKING AREA, INTERIOR. Parking spaces, drive aisles, and ramps located within a *building*.

PARKING GARAGE SECTION. A part of an enclosed parking garage that is separated from all other parts of the garage by full-height solid walls or operable openings that are intended to remain closed during normal operation and where vehicles cannot pass to other parts of the garage.A parking garage can have one or more parking garage sections and parking garage sections can include multiple floors.

PHOTOSYNTHETIC PHOTON EFFICACY (PPE). Photosynthetic photon flux emitted by a light source divided by its electrical input power in units of micromoles per second per watt, or micromoles per joule (μmol/J) between 400-700nm as defined by ANSI/ ASABE S640.

PHYSICAL RENEWABLE ENERGY POWER PURCHASE AGREEMENT. A contract for the purchase of renewable electricity from a specific renewable electricity generator to a purchaser of renewable electricity.

POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS. A fan consisting of a centrifugal or axial impeller with an integral driver in a weather-resistant housing and with a base designed to fit, usually by means of a curb, over a wall or roof opening.

PROCESS APPLICATION. A manufacturing, industrial, or commercial procedure or activity where the primary purpose is other than conditioning spaces and maintaining comfort and amenities for the occupants of a *building*.

PROPOSED DESIGN. A description of the proposed *building* used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on simulated *building* performanceand HVAC total system performance ratio.

PSI-FACTOR (ψ-FACTOR). The heat loss factor per unit length of a thermal bridge characterized as a linear element of a *building thermal envelope* (Btu/h × ft × °F)[W/(m × K)].

PUMP ENERGY INDEX (PEI). The ratio of a pump's energy rating divided by the energy rating of a minimally compliant pump. For pumps with the con-stant load operating mode, the relevant PEI is PEI_{CL}. For pumps with the variable load operating mode, the relevant PEI is PEI_{VL}.

PURCHASED ENERGY. energy or power purchased for consumption and delivered to the *building* site.

RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM. A heating system that transfers heat to objects and surfaces within a *conditioned space*, primarily by infrared radiation.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

REFRIGERANT DEW POINT. The refrigerant vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, LOW TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product in a frozen state in refrigeration applications.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MEDIUM TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product above freezing in refrigeration applications.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

RENEWABLE ENERGY CERTIFICATE (REC). A market-based instrument that represents and conveys the environmental, social, and other non-power attributes of one megawatt hour of renewable electricity generation and could be sold separately from the underlying physical electricity associated with *renewable energy resources*, also known as "energy attribute" and "energy attribute certificate" (EAC).

RENEWABLE ENERGY INVESTMENT FUND (REIF). A fund established by a jurisdiction to accept payment from *building* project owners to construct or acquire interests in qualifying renewable energy systems, together with their associated RECS, on the *building* project owners' behalf.

RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCES. Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, *biomass waste* or extracted from hot fluid or steam heated within the earth.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing *building* for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "***Roof recover***" and "***Roof replacement***."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) and *Group R*-2, R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A *roof assembly* includes the roof covering, underlayment, roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. An *alteration* that includes the removal of all existing layers of *roof assembly* materials down to the roof deck and installing replacement materials above the existing roof deck.

ROOFTOP MONITOR. A raised section of a roof containing vertical *fenestration* along one or more sides.

***R*-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ($h \times ft^2 \times °F/Btu$) [$(m^2 \times K)/W$].

SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE. The saturation temperature corresponding to the measured refrigerant pressure at the condenser inlet for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, and the arithmetic average of the dew point and *bubble point* temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance for zeotropic refrigerants.

SENSIBLE ENERGY RECOVERY RATIO. Change in the dry-bulb temperature of the outdoor air supply divided by the difference between the outdoor air and entering exhaust air dry-bulb temperatures, expressed as a percentage.

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE. A process in which the proposed *building* design is compared to a *standard reference design* for the purposes of estimating relative energy use against a baseline to determine code compliance.

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep that can include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are part of a *dwelling unit* are not *sleeping units*.

SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR. A general purpose alternating-current single-speed induction motor.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the *fenestration* assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

SOUTH-ORIENTED. Facing within 45 degrees of true south in the northern hemisphere or facing within 45 degrees of true north in the southern hemisphere.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on simulated *building* performance and HVAC total system performance ratio.

STOREFRONT. A system of doors and windows mulled as a composite *fenestration* structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. *Storefront* systems include, but are not limited to, exterior *fenestration* systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on commercial buildings, with or without mulled windows and doors.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. Any *repair*, reconstruction, rehabilitation, *alteration*, *addition* or other improvement of a *building* or structure, the cost of which equals or is more than 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement.

Where the structure has sustained substantial damage, as defined in the International Building Code, any repairs are considered *substantial improvement* regardless of the actual *repair* work performed. *Substantial improvement* does not include the following:

1. Improvement of a *building* ordered by the *code official* ~~required~~ to correct health, sanitary or safety code violations ~~ordered by the *code official*~~ .
2. *Alteration* of a *historic building* where the *alteration* will not affect the designation as a *historic building*.

TESTING UNIT ENCLOSURE AREA. The area sum of all the boundary surfaces that define the *dwelling unit* , *sleeping unit* or *conditioned enclosed space* including top/ ceiling, bottom/floor and all side walls. This does not include interior partition walls within the *dwelling unit* , *sleeping unit* , or *conditioned enclosed space*. Wall height shall be measured from the finished floor of the *conditioned space* to the finished floor or roof/ceiling *air barrier* above.

THERMAL BLOCK. A generic concept used in energy simulation. It can include one or more thermal zones. It represents a whole building or portion of a building with the same use type served by the same HVAC system type.

THERMAL BRIDGE. An element or interface of elements that has a higher thermal conductivity than the surrounding *building thermal envelope*, which creates a path of least resistance for heat transfer.

THERMAL DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY (TDE). The resistance to changes in air heat as air is conveyed through a distance of air *duct*. TDE is a heat loss calculation evaluating the difference in the heat of the air between the air *duct* inlet and outlet caused by differences in temperatures between the air in the *duct* and the *duct* material. TDE is expressed as a percent difference between the inlet and outlet heat in the *duct*.

THERMOSTAT. An *automatic* control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

TIME SWITCH CONTROL. An *automatic* control device or system that controls lighting or other loads, including switching off, based on time schedules.

TOTAL SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE. The process in which the total simulated performance of a *proposed design* is compared to that of a *standard reference design* for the purposes of estimating relative energy use in order to determine code compliance.

***U*-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a *building* component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h × ft^2 × °F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM. An engineered direct-expansion (DX) refrigerant system that incorporates a common *condensing unit*, at least one variable-capacity compressor, a distributed refrigerant piping network to multiple indoor fan heating and cooling units each capable of individual *zone* temperature control, through integral *zone* temperature control devices and a common communications network. Variable refrigerant flow utilizes three or more steps of control on common interconnecting piping.

VEGETATIVE ROOF. An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof a *building*'s top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the *fenestration* product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE, ANNUAL (VT_{annual}). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the *fenestration* product assembly to the incident visible light during the course of a year, which includes the effects of glazing material, frame, and light well or tubular conduit, and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VOLTAGE DROP. A decrease in voltage caused by losses in the wiring systems that connect the power source to the load.

WALK-IN COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) and less than 55°F (12.8°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALK-IN FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALL, ABOVE-GRADE. A wall associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is more than 15 percent above grade and is on the exterior of the *building* or any wall that is associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is not on the exterior of the building. This includes, but is not limited to, between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof, mechanical equipment penetrations, and skylight shafts.

WALL, BELOW-GRADE. A wall associated with the basement or first story of the *building* that is part of the *building thermal envelope*, is not less than 85 percent below grade and is on the exterior of the building.

WATER HEATER. Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

WEST-ORIENTED. Facing within 45 degrees of true west to the south and within less than 22.5 degrees of true west to the north in the northern hemisphere or facing within 45 degrees of true west to the north and within less than 22.5 degrees of true west to the south in the southern hemisphere.

WORK AREA. That portion or portions of a *building* consisting of all reconfigured spaces as indicated on the *construction documents* . Work area excludes other portions of the *building* where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed and portions of the *building* where work not initially intended by the *owner* is specifically required by this code.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a *building* with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

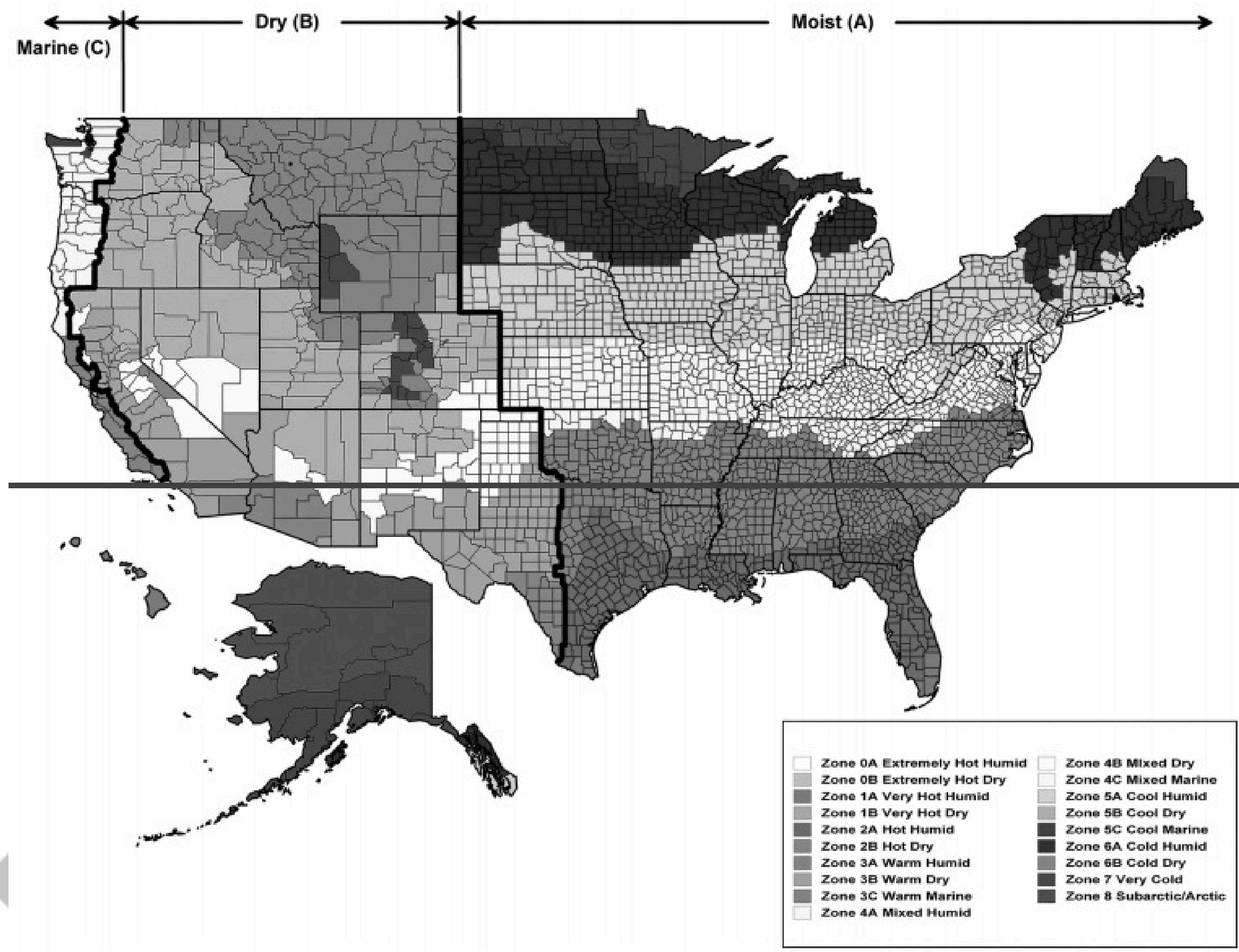
CHAPTER 3 [CE] GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 3 *addresses broadly applicable requirements that would not be at home in other chapters having more specific coverage of subject matter. This chapter establishes climate zone by US counties and territories and includes methodology for determining climate zones elsewhere. It also contains product rating, marking and installation requirements for materials such as insulation, windows, doors and siding.*

SECTION C301
CLIMATE ZONES

C301.1 General. *Climate zones* from **Figure C301.1** or **Table C301.1** shall be used for determining the applicable requirements from **Chapter 4**. Locations not indicated in **Table C301.1** shall be assigned a *climate zone* in accordance with **Section C301.3, .**


Marine (C)
Dry (B)
Moist (A)
Zone 0A Extremely Hot Humid
Zone 0B Extremely Hot Dry
Zone 1A Very Hot Humid
Zone 1B Very Hot Dry
Zone 2A Hot Humid
Zone 2B Hot Dry
Zone 3A Warm Humid
Zone 3B Warm Dry
Zone 3C Warm Marine
Zone 4A Mixed Humid
Zone 4B Mixed Dry
Zone 4C Mixed Marine
Zone 5A Cool Humid
Zone 5B Cool Dry
Zone 5C Cool Marine
Zone 6A Cold Humid
Zone 6B Cold Dry
Zone 7 Very Cold
Zone 8 Subarctic/Arctic

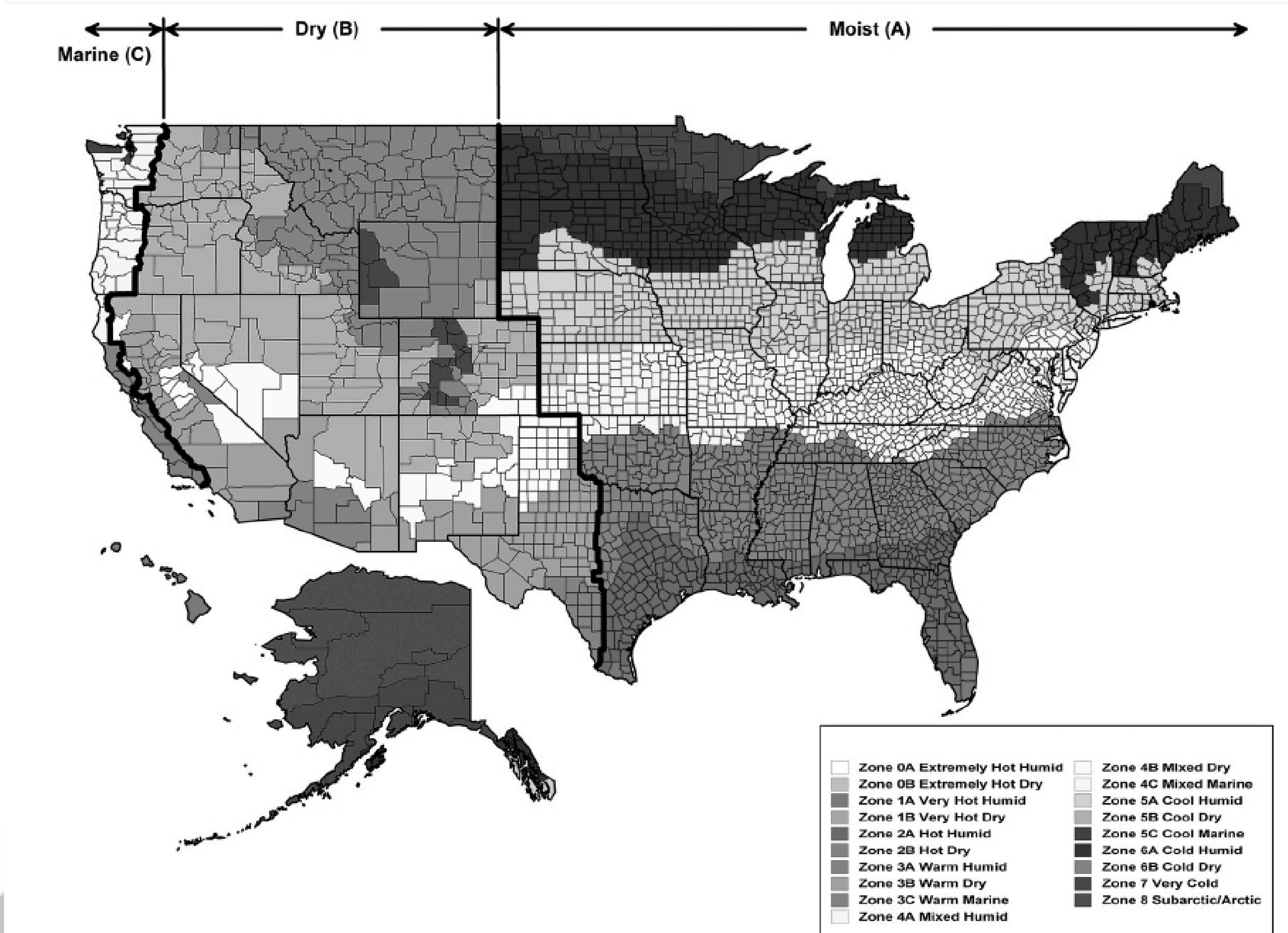


FIGURE C301.1
CLIMATE ZONES

TABLE C301.1
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY[a]

US STATES
ALABAMA
3A Autauga*
2A Baldwin*
3A Barbour*
3A Bibb
3A Blount
3A Bullock*
3A Butler*
3A Calhoun
3A Chambers
3A Cherokee
3A Chilton
3A Choctaw*
3A Clarke*
3A Clay
3A Cleburne
2A Coffee*
3A Colbert
3A Conecuh*
3A Coosa
2A Covington*
3A Crenshaw*
3A Cullman
2A Dale*
3A Dallas*
3A DeKalb
3A Elmore*
2A Escambia*
3A Etowah
3A Fayette
3A Franklin

2A Geneva*
3A Greene
3A Hale
2A Henry*
2A Houston*
3A Jackson
3A Jefferson
3A Lamar
3A Lauderdale
3A Lawrence
3A Lee
3A Limestone
3A Lowndes*
3A Macon*
3A Madison
3A Marengo*
3A Marion
3A Marshall
2A Mobile*
3A Monroe*
3A Montgomery*
3A Morgan
3A Perry*
3A Pickens
3A Pike*
3A Randolph
3A Russell*
3A Shelby
3A St. Clair
3A Sumter
3A Talladega
3A Tallapoosa
3A Tuscaloosa
3A Walker
3A Washington*

3A Wilcox*
3A Winston
ALASKA
7 Aleutians East
7 Aleutians West
7 Anchorage
7 Bethel
7 Bristol Bay
8 Denali
7 Dillingham
8 Fairbanks North Star
6A Haines
6A Juneau
7 Kenai Peninsula
5C Ketchikan Gateway
6A Kodiak Island
7 Lake and Peninsula
7 Matanuska-Susitna
8 Nome
8 North Slope
8 Northwest Arctic
5C Prince of Wales Outer Ketchikan
5C Sitka
6A Skagway-Hoonah-Angoon
8 Southeast Fairbanks
7 Valdez-Cordova
8 Wade Hampton
6A Wrangell-Petersburg
7 Yakutat
8 Yukon-Koyukuk
ARIZONA
5B Apache
3B Cochise
5B Coconino
4B Gila

3B Graham
3B Greenlee
2B La Paz
2B Maricopa
3B Mohave
5B Navajo
2B Pima
2B Pinal
3B Santa Cruz
4B Yavapai
2B Yuma
ARKANSAS
3A Arkansas
3A Ashley
4A Baxter
4A Benton
4A Boone
3A Bradley
3A Calhoun
4A Carroll
3A Chicot
3A Clark
3A Clay
3A Cleburne
3A Cleveland
3A Columbia*
3A Conway
3A Craighead
3A Crawford
3A Crittenden
3A Cross
3A Dallas
3A Desha
3A Drew
3A Faulkner

3A Franklin
4A Fulton
3A Garland
3A Grant
3A Greene
3A Hempstead*
3A Hot Spring
3A Howard
3A Independence
4A Izard
3A Jackson
3A Jefferson
3A Johnson
3A Lafayette*
3A Lawrence
3A Lee
3A Lincoln
3A Little River*
3A Logan
3A Lonoke
4A Madison
4A Marion
3A Miller*
3A Mississippi
3A Monroe
3A Montgomery
3A Nevada
4A Newton
3A Ouachita
3A Perry
3A Phillips
3A Pike
3A Poinsett
3A Polk
3A Pope

3A Prairie
3A Pulaski
3A Randolph
3A Saline
3A Scott
4A Searcy
3A Sebastian
3A Sevier*
3A Sharp
3A St. Francis
4A Stone
3A Union*
3A Van Buren
4A Washington
3A White
3A Woodruff
3A Yell
CALIFORNIA
3C Alameda
6B Alpine
4B Amador
3B Butte
4B Calaveras
3B Colusa
3B Contra Costa
4C Del Norte
4B El Dorado
3B Fresno
3B Glenn
4C Humboldt
2B Imperial
4B Inyo
3B Kern
3B Kings
4B Lake

5B Lassen
3B Los Angeles
3B Madera
3C Marin
4B Mariposa
3C Mendocino
3B Merced
5B Modoc
6B Mono
3C Monterey
3C Napa
5B Nevada
3B Orange
3B Placer
5B Plumas
3B Riverside
3B Sacramento
3C San Benito
3B San Bernardino
3B San Diego
3C San Francisco
3B San Joaquin
3C San Luis Obispo
3C San Mateo
3C Santa Barbara
3C Santa Clara
3C Santa Cruz
3B Shasta
5B Sierra
5B Siskiyou
3B Solano
3C Sonoma
3B Stanislaus
3B Sutter
3B Tehama

4B Trinity
3B Tulare
4B Tuolumne
3C Ventura
3B Yolo
3B Yuba
COLORADO
5B Adams
6B Alamosa
5B Arapahoe
6B Archuleta
4B Baca
4B Bent
5B Boulder
5B Broomfield
6B Chaffee
5B Cheyenne
7 Clear Creek
6B Conejos
6B Costilla
5B Crowley
5B Custer
5B Delta
5B Denver
6B Dolores
5B Douglas
6B Eagle
5B Elbert
5B El Paso
5B Fremont
5B Garfield
5B Gilpin
7 Grand
7 Gunnison
7 Hinsdale

5B Huerfano
7 Jackson
5B Jefferson
5B Kiowa
5B Kit Carson
7 Lake
5B La Plata
5B Larimer
4B Las Animas
5B Lincoln
5B Logan
5B Mesa
7 Mineral
6B Moffat
5B Montezuma
5B Montrose
5B Morgan
4B Otero
6B Ouray
7 Park
5B Phillips
7 Pitkin
4B Prowers
5B Pueblo
6B Rio Blanco
7 Rio Grande
7 Routt
6B Saguache
7 San Juan
6B San Miguel
5B Sedgwick
7 Summit
5B Teller
5B Washington
5B Weld

5B Yuma
CONNECTICUT
5A (all)
DELAWARE
4A (all)
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
4A (all)
FLORIDA
2A Alachua*
2A Baker*
2A Bay*
2A Bradford*
2A Brevard*
1A Broward*
2A Calhoun*
2A Charlotte*
2A Citrus*
2A Clay*
2A Collier*
2A Columbia*
2A DeSoto*
2A Dixie*
2A Duval*
2A Escambia*
2A Flagler*
2A Franklin*
2A Gadsden*
2A Gilchrist*
2A Glades*
2A Gulf*
2A Hamilton*
2A Hardee*
2A Hendry*
2A Hernando*
2A Highlands*

2A Hillsborough*
2A Holmes*
2A Indian River*
2A Jackson*
2A Jefferson*
2A Lafayette*
2A Lake*
2A Lee*
2A Leon*
2A Levy*
2A Liberty*
2A Madison*
2A Manatee*
2A Marion*
2A Martin*
1A Miami-Dade*
1A Monroe*
2A Nassau*
2A Okaloosa*
2A Okeechobee*
2A Orange*
2A Osceola*
1A Palm Beach*
2A Pasco*
2A Pinellas*
2A Polk*
2A Putnam*
2A Santa Rosa*
2A Sarasota*
2A Seminole*
2A St. Johns*
2A St. Lucie*
2A Sumter*
2A Suwannee*
2A Taylor*

2A Union*
2A Volusia*
2A Wakulla*
2A Walton*
2A Washington*
GEORGIA
2A Appling*
2A Atkinson*
2A Bacon*
2A Baker*
3A Baldwin
3A Banks
3A Barrow
3A Bartow
3A Ben Hill*
2A Berrien*
3A Bibb
3A Bleckley*
2A Brantley*
2A Brooks*
2A Bryan*
3A Bulloch*
3A Burke
3A Butts
2A Calhoun*
2A Camden*
3A Candler*
3A Carroll
3A Catoosa
2A Charlton*
2A Chatham*
3A Chattahoochee*
3A Chattooga
3A Cherokee
3A Clarke

3A Clay*
3A Clayton
2A Clinch*
3A Cobb
2A Coffee*
2A Colquitt*
3A Columbia
2A Cook*
3A Coweta
3A Crawford
3A Crisp*
3A Dade
3A Dawson
2A Decatur*
3A DeKalb
3A Dodge*
3A Dooly*
2A Dougherty*
3A Douglas
2A Early*
2A Echols*
2A Effingham*
3A Elbert
3A Emanuel*
2A Evans*
3A Fannin
3A Fayette
3A Floyd
3A Forsyth
3A Franklin
3A Fulton
3A Gilmer
3A Glascock
2A Glynn*
3A Gordon

2A Grady*
3A Greene
3A Gwinnett
3A Habersham
3A Hall
3A Hancock
3A Haralson
3A Harris
3A Hart
3A Heard
3A Henry
3A Houston*
3A Irwin*
3A Jackson
3A Jasper
2A Jeff Davis*
3A Jefferson
3A Jenkins*
3A Johnson*
3A Jones
3A Lamar
2A Lanier*
3A Laurens*
3A Lee*
2A Liberty*
3A Lincoln
2A Long*
2A Lowndes*
3A Lumpkin
3A Macon*
3A Madison
3A Marion*
3A McDuffie
2A McIntosh*
3A Meriwether

2A Miller*
2A Mitchell*
3A Monroe
3A Montgomery*
3A Morgan
3A Murray
3A Muscogee
3A Newton
3A Oconee
3A Oglethorpe
3A Paulding
3A Peach*
3A Pickens
2A Pierce*
3A Pike
3A Polk
3A Pulaski*
3A Putnam
3A Quitman*
3A Rabun
3A Randolph*
3A Richmond
3A Rockdale
3A Schley*
3A Screven*
2A Seminole*
3A Spalding
3A Stephens
3A Stewart*
3A Sumter*
3A Talbot
3A Taliaferro
2A Tattnall*
3A Taylor*
3A Telfair*

3A Terrell*
2A Thomas*
2A Tift*
2A Toombs*
3A Towns
3A Treutlen*
3A Troup
3A Turner*
3A Twiggs*
3A Union
3A Upson
3A Walker
3A Walton
2A Ware*
3A Warren
3A Washington
2A Wayne*
3A Webster*
3A Wheeler*
3A White
3A Whitfield
3A Wilcox*
3A Wilkes
3A Wilkinson
2A Worth*
HAWAII
1A (all)*
IDAHO
5B Ada
6B Adams
6B Bannock
6B Bear Lake
5B Benewah
6B Bingham
6B Blaine

6B Boise
6B Bonner
6B Bonneville
6B Boundary
6B Butte
6B Camas
5B Canyon
6B Caribou
5B Cassia
6B Clark
5B Clearwater
6B Custer
5B Elmore
6B Franklin
6B Fremont
5B Gem
5B Gooding
5B Idaho
6B Jefferson
5B Jerome
5B Kootenai
5B Latah
6B Lemhi
5B Lewis
5B Lincoln
6B Madison
5B Minidoka
5B Nez Perce
6B Oneida
5B Owyhee
5B Payette
5B Power
5B Shoshone
6B Teton
5B Twin Falls

6B Valley
5B Washington
ILLINOIS
5A Adams
4A Alexander
4A Bond
5A Boone
5A Brown
5A Bureau
4A Calhoun
5A Carroll
5A Cass
5A Champaign
4A Christian
4A Clark
4A Clay
4A Clinton
4A Coles
5A Cook
4A Crawford
4A Cumberland
5A DeKalb
5A De Witt
5A Douglas
5A DuPage
5A Edgar
4A Edwards
4A Effingham
4A Fayette
5A Ford
4A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gallatin
4A Greene
5A Grundy

4A Hamilton
5A Hancock
4A Hardin
5A Henderson
5A Henry
5A Iroquois
4A Jackson
4A Jasper
4A Jefferson
4A Jersey
5A Jo Daviess
4A Johnson
5A Kane
5A Kankakee
5A Kendall
5A Knox
5A Lake
5A La Salle
4A Lawrence
5A Lee
5A Livingston
5A Logan
5A Macon
4A Macoupin
4A Madison
4A Marion
5A Marshall
5A Mason
4A Massac
5A McDonough
5A McHenry
5A McLean
5A Menard
5A Mercer
4A Monroe

4A Montgomery
5A Morgan
5A Moultrie
5A Ogle
5A Peoria
4A Perry
5A Piatt
5A Pike
4A Pope
4A Pulaski
5A Putnam
4A Randolph
4A Richland
5A Rock Island
4A Saline
5A Sangamon
5A Schuyler
5A Scott
4A Shelby
5A Stark
4A St. Clair
5A Stephenson
5A Tazewell
4A Union
5A Vermilion
4A Wabash
5A Warren
4A Washington
4A Wayne
4A White
5A Whiteside
5A Will
4A Williamson
5A Winnebago
5A Woodford

INDIANA
5A Adams
5A Allen
4A Bartholomew
5A Benton
5A Blackford
5A Boone
4A Brown
5A Carroll
5A Cass
4A Clark
4A Clay
5A Clinton
4A Crawford
4A Daviess
4A Dearborn
4A Decatur
5A De Kalb
5A Delaware
4A Dubois
5A Elkhart
4A Fayette
4A Floyd
5A Fountain
4A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gibson
5A Grant
4A Greene
5A Hamilton
5A Hancock
4A Harrison
4A Hendricks
5A Henry
5A Howard

5A Huntington
4A Jackson
5A Jasper
5A Jay
4A Jefferson
4A Jennings
4A Johnson
4A Knox
5A Kosciusko
5A LaGrange
5A Lake
5A LaPorte
4A Lawrence
5A Madison
4A Marion
5A Marshall
4A Martin
5A Miami
4A Monroe
5A Montgomery
4A Morgan
5A Newton
5A Noble
4A Ohio
4A Orange
4A Owen
5A Parke
4A Perry
4A Pike
5A Porter
4A Posey
5A Pulaski
4A Putnam
5A Randolph
4A Ripley

4A Rush
4A Scott
4A Shelby
4A Spencer
5A Starke
5A Steuben
5A St. Joseph
4A Sullivan
4A Switzerland
5A Tippecanoe
5A Tipton
4A Union
4A Vanderburgh
5A Vermillion
4A Vigo
5A Wabash
5A Warren
4A Warrick
4A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Wells
5A White
5A Whitley
IOWA
5A Adair
5A Adams
5A Allamakee
5A Appanoose
5A Audubon
5A Benton
6A Black Hawk
5A Boone
5A Bremer
5A Buchanan
5A Buena Vista

5A Butler
5A Calhoun
5A Carroll
5A Cass
5A Cedar
6A Cerro Gordo
5A Cherokee
5A Chickasaw
5A Clarke
6A Clay
5A Clayton
5A Clinton
5A Crawford
5A Dallas
5A Davis
5A Decatur
5A Delaware
5A Des Moines
6A Dickinson
5A Dubuque
6A Emmet
5A Fayette
5A Floyd
5A Franklin
5A Fremont
5A Greene
5A Grundy
5A Guthrie
5A Hamilton
6A Hancock
5A Hardin
5A Harrison
5A Henry
5A Howard
5A Humboldt

5A Ida
5A Iowa
5A Jackson
5A Jasper
5A Jefferson
5A Johnson
5A Jones
5A Keokuk
6A Kossuth
5A Lee
5A Linn
5A Louisa
5A Lucas
6A Lyon
5A Madison
5A Mahaska
5A Marion
5A Marshall
5A Mills
6A Mitchell
5A Monona
5A Monroe
5A Montgomery
5A Muscatine
6A O’Brien
6A Osceola
5A Page
6A Palo Alto
5A Plymouth
5A Pocahontas
5A Polk
5A Pottawattamie
5A Poweshiek
5A Ringgold
5A Sac

5A Scott
5A Shelby
6A Sioux
5A Story
5A Tama
5A Taylor
5A Union
5A Van Buren
5A Wapello
5A Warren
5A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Webster
6A Winnebago
5A Winneshiek
5A Woodbury
6A Worth
5A Wright
KANSAS
4A Allen
4A Anderson
4A Atchison
4A Barber
4A Barton
4A Bourbon
4A Brown
4A Butler
4A Chase
4A Chautauqua
4A Cherokee
5A Cheyenne
4A Clark
4A Clay
4A Cloud
4A Coffey

4A Comanche
4A Cowley
4A Crawford
5A Decatur
4A Dickinson
4A Doniphan
4A Douglas
4A Edwards
4A Elk
4A Ellis
4A Ellsworth
4A Finney
4A Ford
4A Franklin
4A Geary
5A Gove
4A Graham
4A Grant
4A Gray
5A Greeley
4A Greenwood
4A Hamilton
4A Harper
4A Harvey
4A Haskell
4A Hodgeman
4A Jackson
4A Jefferson
5A Jewell
4A Johnson
4A Kearny
4A Kingman
4A Kiowa
4A Labette
4A Lane

4A Leavenworth
4A Lincoln
4A Linn
5A Logan
4A Lyon
4A Marion
4A Marshall
4A McPherson
4A Meade
4A Miami
4A Mitchell
4A Montgomery
4A Morris
4A Morton
4A Nemaha
4A Neosho
4A Ness
5A Norton
4A Osage
4A Osborne
4A Ottawa
4A Pawnee
5A Phillips
4A Pottawatomie
4A Pratt
5A Rawlins
4A Reno
5A Republic
4A Rice
4A Riley
4A Rooks
4A Rush
4A Russell
4A Saline
5A Scott

4A Sedgwick
4A Seward
4A Shawnee
5A Sheridan
5A Sherman
5A Smith
4A Stafford
4A Stanton
4A Stevens
4A Sumner
5A Thomas
4A Trego
4A Wabaunsee
5A Wallace
4A Washington
5A Wichita
4A Wilson
4A Woodson
4A Wyandotte
KENTUCKY
4A (all)
LOUISIANA
2A Acadia*
2A Allen*
2A Ascension*
2A Assumption*
2A Avoyelles*
2A Beauregard*
3A Bienville*
3A Bossier*
3A Caddo*
2A Calcasieu*
3A Caldwell*
2A Cameron*
3A Catahoula*

3A Claiborne*
3A Concordia*
3A De Soto*
2A East Baton Rouge*
3A East Carroll
2A East Feliciana*
2A Evangeline*
3A Franklin*
3A Grant*
2A Iberia*
2A Iberville*
3A Jackson*
2A Jefferson*
2A Jefferson Davis*
2A Lafayette*
2A Lafourche*
3A La Salle*
3A Lincoln*
2A Livingston*
3A Madison*
3A Morehouse
3A Natchitoches*
2A Orleans*
3A Ouachita*
2A Plaquemines*
2A Pointe Coupee*
2A Rapides*
3A Red River*
3A Richland*
3A Sabine*
2A St. Bernard*
2A St. Charles*
2A St. Helena*
2A St. James*
2A St. John the Baptist*

2A St. Landry*
2A St. Martin*
2A St. Mary*
2A St. Tammany*
2A Tangipahoa*
3A Tensas*
2A Terrebonne*
3A Union*
2A Vermilion*
3A Vernon*
2A Washington*
3A Webster*
2A West Baton Rouge*
3A West Carroll
2A West Feliciana*
3A Winn*
MAINE
6A Androscoggin
7 Aroostook
6A Cumberland
6A Franklin
6A Hancock
6A Kennebec
6A Knox
6A Lincoln
6A Oxford
6A Penobscot
6A Piscataquis
6A Sagadahoc
6A Somerset
6A Waldo
6A Washington
6A York
MARYLAND
5A Allegany

4A Anne Arundel
4A Baltimore
4A Baltimore (city)
4A Calvert
4A Caroline
4A Carroll
4A Cecil
4A Charles
4A Dorchester
4A Frederick
5A Garrett
4A Harford
4A Howard
4A Kent
4A Montgomery
4A Prince George's
4A Queen Anne's
4A Somerset
4A St. Mary's
4A Talbot
4A Washington
4A Wicomico
4A Worcester
MASSACHUSETTS
5A (all)
MICHIGAN
6A Alcona
6A Alger
5A Allegan
6A Alpena
6A Antrim
6A Arenac
6A Baraga
5A Barry
5A Bay

6A Benzie
5A Berrien
5A Branch
5A Calhoun
5A Cass
6A Charlevoix
6A Cheboygan
6A Chippewa
6A Clare
5A Clinton
6A Crawford
6A Delta
6A Dickinson
5A Eaton
6A Emmet
5A Genesee
6A Gladwin
6A Gogebic
6A Grand Traverse
5A Gratiot
5A Hillsdale
6A Houghton
5A Huron
5A Ingham
5A Ionia
6A Iosco
6A Iron
6A Isabella
5A Jackson
5A Kalamazoo
6A Kalkaska
5A Kent
7 Keweenaw
6A Lake
5A Lapeer

6A Leelanau
5A Lenawee
5A Livingston
6A Luce
6A Mackinac
5A Macomb
6A Manistee
7 Marquette
6A Mason
6A Mecosta
6A Menominee
5A Midland
6A Missaukee
5A Monroe
5A Montcalm
6A Montmorency
5A Muskegon
6A Newaygo
5A Oakland
6A Oceana
6A Ogemaw
6A Ontonagon
6A Osceola
6A Oscoda
6A Otsego
5A Ottawa
6A Presque Isle
6A Roscommon
5A Saginaw
5A Sanilac
6A Schoolcraft
5A Shiawassee
5A St. Clair
5A St. Joseph
5A Tuscola

5A Van Buren
5A Washtenaw
5A Wayne
6A Wexford
MINNESOTA
7 Aitkin
6A Anoka
6A Becker
7 Beltrami
6A Benton
6A Big Stone
6A Blue Earth
6A Brown
7 Carlton
6A Carver
7 Cass
6A Chippewa
6A Chisago
6A Clay
7 Clearwater
7 Cook
6A Cottonwood
7 Crow Wing
6A Dakota
6A Dodge
6A Douglas
6A Faribault
5A Fillmore
6A Freeborn
6A Goodhue
6A Grant
6A Hennepin
5A Houston
7 Hubbard
6A Isanti

7 Itasca
6A Jackson
6A Kanabec
6A Kandiyohi
7 Kittson
7 Koochiching
6A Lac qui Parle
7 Lake
7 Lake of the Woods
6A Le Sueur
6A Lincoln
6A Lyon
7 Mahnomen
7 Marshall
6A Martin
6A McLeod
6A Meeker
6A Mille Lacs
6A Morrison
6A Mower
6A Murray
6A Nicollet
6A Nobles
7 Norman
6A Olmsted
6A Otter Tail
7 Pennington
7 Pine
6A Pipestone
7 Polk
6A Pope
6A Ramsey
7 Red Lake
6A Redwood
6A Renville

6A Rice
6A Rock
7 Roseau
6A Scott
6A Sherburne
6A Sibley
6A Stearns
6A Steele
6A Stevens
7 St. Louis
6A Swift
6A Todd
6A Traverse
6A Wabasha
7 Wadena
6A Waseca
6A Washington
6A Watonwan
6A Wilkin
5A Winona
6A Wright
6A Yellow Medicine
MISSISSIPPI
3A Adams*
3A Alcorn
3A Amite*
3A Attala
3A Benton
3A Bolivar
3A Calhoun
3A Carroll
3A Chickasaw
3A Choctaw
3A Claiborne*
3A Clarke

3A Clay
3A Coahoma
3A Copiah*
3A Covington*
3A DeSoto
3A Forrest*
3A Franklin*
2A George*
3A Greene*
3A Grenada
2A Hancock*
2A Harrison*
3A Hinds*
3A Holmes
3A Humphreys
3A Issaquena
3A Itawamba
2A Jackson*
3A Jasper
3A Jefferson*
3A Jefferson Davis*
3A Jones*
3A Kemper
3A Lafayette
3A Lamar*
3A Lauderdale
3A Lawrence*
3A Leake
3A Lee
3A Leflore
3A Lincoln*
3A Lowndes
3A Madison
3A Marion*
3A Marshall

3A Monroe
3A Montgomery
3A Neshoba
3A Newton
3A Noxubee
3A Oktibbeha
3A Panola
2A Pearl River*
3A Perry*
3A Pike*
3A Pontotoc
3A Prentiss
3A Quitman
3A Rankin*
3A Scott
3A Sharkey
3A Simpson*
3A Smith*
2A Stone*
3A Sunflower
3A Tallahatchie
3A Tate
3A Tippah
3A Tishomingo
3A Tunica
3A Union
3A Walthall*
3A Warren*
3A Washington
3A Wayne*
3A Webster
3A Wilkinson*
3A Winston
3A Yalobusha
3A Yazoo

MISSOURI
5A Adair
5A Andrew
5A Atchison
4A Audrain
4A Barry
4A Barton
4A Bates
4A Benton
4A Bollinger
4A Boone
4A Buchanan
4A Butler
4A Caldwell
4A Callaway
4A Camden
4A Cape Girardeau
4A Carroll
4A Carter
4A Cass
4A Cedar
4A Chariton
4A Christian
5A Clark
4A Clay
4A Clinton
4A Cole
4A Cooper
4A Crawford
4A Dade
4A Dallas
5A Daviess
5A DeKalb
4A Dent
4A Douglas

3A Dunklin
4A Franklin
4A Gasconade
5A Gentry
4A Greene
5A Grundy
5A Harrison
4A Henry
4A Hickory
5A Holt
4A Howard
4A Howell
4A Iron
4A Jackson
4A Jasper
4A Jefferson
4A Johnson
5A Knox
4A Laclede
4A Lafayette
4A Lawrence
5A Lewis
4A Lincoln
5A Linn
5A Livingston
5A Macon
4A Madison
4A Maries
5A Marion
4A McDonald
5A Mercer
4A Miller
4A Mississippi
4A Moniteau
4A Monroe

4A Montgomery
4A Morgan
4A New Madrid
4A Newton
5A Nodaway
4A Oregon
4A Osage
4A Ozark
3A Pemiscot
4A Perry
4A Pettis
4A Phelps
5A Pike
4A Platte
4A Polk
4A Pulaski
5A Putnam
5A Ralls
4A Randolph
4A Ray
4A Reynolds
4A Ripley
4A Saline
5A Schuyler
5A Scotland
4A Scott
4A Shannon
5A Shelby
4A St. Charles
4A St. Clair
4A St. Francois
4A St. Louis
4A St. Louis (city)
4A Ste. Genevieve
4A Stoddard

4A Stone
5A Sullivan
4A Taney
4A Texas
4A Vernon
4A Warren
4A Washington
4A Wayne
4A Webster
5A Worth
4A Wright
MONTANA
6B (all)
NEBRASKA
5A (all)
NEVADA
4B Carson City (city)
5B Churchill
3B Clark
4B Douglas
5B Elko
4B Esmeralda
5B Eureka
5B Humboldt
5B Lander
4B Lincoln
4B Lyon
4B Mineral
4B Nye
5B Pershing
5B Storey
5B Washoe
5B White Pine
NEW HAMPSHIRE
6A Belknap

6A Carroll
5A Cheshire
6A Coos
6A Grafton
5A Hillsborough
5A Merrimack
5A Rockingham
5A Strafford
6A Sullivan
NEW JERSEY
4A Atlantic
5A Bergen
4A Burlington
4A Camden
4A Cape May
4A Cumberland
4A Essex
4A Gloucester
4A Hudson
5A Hunterdon
4A Mercer
4A Middlesex
4A Monmouth
5A Morris
4A Ocean
5A Passaic
4A Salem
5A Somerset
5A Sussex
4A Union
5A Warren
NEW MEXICO
4B Bernalillo
4B Catron
3B Chaves

4B Cibola
5B Colfax
4B Curry
4B DeBaca
3B Doña Ana
3B Eddy
4B Grant
4B Guadalupe
5B Harding
3B Hidalgo
3B Lea
4B Lincoln
5B Los Alamos
3B Luna
5B McKinley
5B Mora
3B Otero
4B Quay
5B Rio Arriba
4B Roosevelt
5B Sandoval
5B San Juan
5B San Miguel
5B Santa Fe
3B Sierra
4B Socorro
5B Taos
5B Torrance
4B Union
4B Valencia
NEW YORK
5A Albany
5A Allegany
4A Bronx
5A Broome

5A Cattaraugus
5A Cayuga
5A Chautauqua
5A Chemung
6A Chenango
6A Clinton
5A Columbia
5A Cortland
6A Delaware
5A Dutchess
5A Erie
6A Essex
6A Franklin
6A Fulton
5A Genesee
5A Greene
6A Hamilton
6A Herkimer
6A Jefferson
4A Kings
6A Lewis
5A Livingston
6A Madison
5A Monroe
6A Montgomery
4A Nassau
4A New York
5A Niagara
6A Oneida
5A Onondaga
5A Ontario
5A Orange
5A Orleans
5A Oswego
6A Otsego

5A Putnam
4A Queens
5A Rensselaer
4A Richmond
5A Rockland
5A Saratoga
5A Schenectady
5A Schoharie
5A Schuyler
5A Seneca
5A Steuben
6A St. Lawrence
4A Suffolk
6A Sullivan
5A Tioga
5A Tompkins
6A Ulster
6A Warren
5A Washington
5A Wayne
4A Westchester
5A Wyoming
5A Yates
NORTH CAROLINA
3A Alamance
3A Alexander
5A Alleghany
3A Anson
5A Ashe
5A Avery
3A Beaufort
3A Bertie
3A Bladen
3A Brunswick*
4A Buncombe

4A Burke
3A Cabarrus
4A Caldwell
3A Camden
3A Carteret*
3A Caswell
3A Catawba
3A Chatham
3A Cherokee
3A Chowan
3A Clay
3A Cleveland
3A Columbus*
3A Craven
3A Cumberland
3A Currituck
3A Dare
3A Davidson
3A Davie
3A Duplin
3A Durham
3A Edgecombe
3A Forsyth
3A Franklin
3A Gaston
3A Gates
4A Graham
3A Granville
3A Greene
3A Guilford
3A Halifax
3A Harnett
4A Haywood
4A Henderson
3A Hertford

3A Hoke
3A Hyde
3A Iredell
4A Jackson
3A Johnston
3A Jones
3A Lee
3A Lenoir
3A Lincoln
4A Macon
4A Madison
3A Martin
4A McDowell
3A Mecklenburg
4A Mitchell
3A Montgomery
3A Moore
3A Nash
3A New Hanover*
3A Northampton
3A Onslow*
3A Orange
3A Pamlico
3A Pasquotank
3A Pender*
3A Perquimans
3A Person
3A Pitt
3A Polk
3A Randolph
3A Richmond
3A Robeson
3A Rockingham
3A Rowan
3A Rutherford

3A Sampson
3A Scotland
3A Stanly
4A Stokes
4A Surry
4A Swain
4A Transylvania
3A Tyrrell
3A Union
3A Vance
3A Wake
3A Warren
3A Washington
5A Watauga
3A Wayne
3A Wilkes
3A Wilson
4A Yadkin
5A Yancey
NORTH DAKOTA
6A Adams
6A Barnes
7 Benson
6A Billings
7 Bottineau
6A Bowman
7 Burke
6A Burleigh
6A Cass
7 Cavalier
6A Dickey
7 Divide
6A Dunn
6A Eddy
6A Emmons

6A Foster
6A Golden Valley
7 Grand Forks
6A Grant
6A Griggs
6A Hettinger
6A Kidder
6A LaMoure
6A Logan
7 McHenry
6A McIntosh
6A McKenzie
6A McLean
6A Mercer
6A Morton
6A Mountrail
7 Nelson
6A Oliver
7 Pembina
7 Pierce
7 Ramsey
6A Ransom
7 Renville
6A Richland
7 Rolette
6A Sargent
6A Sheridan
6A Sioux
6A Slope
6A Stark
6A Steele
6A Stutsman
7 Towner
6A Traill
7 Walsh

7 Ward
6A Wells
6A Williams
OHIO
4A Adams
5A Allen
5A Ashland
5A Ashtabula
4A Athens
5A Auglaize
5A Belmont
4A Brown
4A Butler
5A Carroll
5A Champaign
5A Clark
4A Clermont
4A Clinton
5A Columbiana
5A Coshocton
5A Crawford
5A Cuyahoga
5A Darke
5A Defiance
5A Delaware
5A Erie
5A Fairfield
4A Fayette
4A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gallia
5A Geauga
4A Greene
5A Guernsey
4A Hamilton

5A Hancock
5A Hardin
5A Harrison
5A Henry
4A Highland
4A Hocking
5A Holmes
5A Huron
4A Jackson
5A Jefferson
5A Knox
5A Lake
4A Lawrence
5A Licking
5A Logan
5A Lorain
5A Lucas
4A Madison
5A Mahoning
5A Marion
5A Medina
4A Meigs
5A Mercer
5A Miami
5A Monroe
5A Montgomery
5A Morgan
5A Morrow
5A Muskingum
5A Noble
5A Ottawa
5A Paulding
5A Perry
4A Pickaway
4A Pike

5A Portage
5A Preble
5A Putnam
5A Richland
4A Ross
5A Sandusky
4A Scioto
5A Seneca
5A Shelby
5A Stark
5A Summit
5A Trumbull
5A Tuscarawas
5A Union
5A Van Wert
4A Vinton
4A Warren
4A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Williams
5A Wood
5A Wyandot
OKLAHOMA
3A Adair
4A Alfalfa
3A Atoka
4B Beaver
3A Beckham
3A Blaine
3A Bryan
3A Caddo
3A Canadian
3A Carter
3A Cherokee
3A Choctaw

4B Cimarron
3A Cleveland
3A Coal
3A Comanche
3A Cotton
4A Craig
3A Creek
3A Custer
4A Delaware
3A Dewey
4A Ellis
4A Garfield
3A Garvin
3A Grady
4A Grant
3A Greer
3A Harmon
4A Harper
3A Haskell
3A Hughes
3A Jackson
3A Jefferson
3A Johnston
4A Kay
3A Kingfisher
3A Kiowa
3A Latimer
3A Le Flore
3A Lincoln
3A Logan
3A Love
4A Major
3A Marshall
3A Mayes
3A McClain

3A McCurtain
3A McIntosh
3A Murray
3A Muskogee
3A Noble
4A Nowata
3A Okfuskee
3A Oklahoma
3A Okmulgee
4A Osage
4A Ottawa
3A Pawnee
3A Payne
3A Pittsburg
3A Pontotoc
3A Pottawatomie
3A Pushmataha
3A Roger Mills
3A Rogers
3A Seminole
3A Sequoyah
3A Stephens
4B Texas
3A Tillman
3A Tulsa
3A Wagoner
4A Washington
3A Washita
4A Woods
4A Woodward
OREGON
5B Baker
4C Benton
4C Clackamas
4C Clatsop

4C Columbia
4C Coos
5B Crook
4C Curry
5B Deschutes
4C Douglas
5B Gilliam
5B Grant
5B Harney
5B Hood River
4C Jackson
5B Jefferson
4C Josephine
5B Klamath
5B Lake
4C Lane
4C Lincoln
4C Linn
5B Malheur
4C Marion
5B Morrow
4C Multnomah
4C Polk
5B Sherman
4C Tillamook
5B Umatilla
5B Union
5B Wallowa
5B Wasco
4C Washington
5B Wheeler
4C Yamhill
PENNSYLVANIA
4A Adams
5A Allegheny

5A Armstrong
5A Beaver
5A Bedford
4A Berks
5A Blair
5A Bradford
4A Bucks
5A Butler
5A Cambria
5A Cameron
5A Carbon
5A Centre
4A Chester
5A Clarion
5A Clearfield
5A Clinton
5A Columbia
5A Crawford
4A Cumberland
4A Dauphin
4A Delaware
5A Elk
5A Erie
5A Fayette
5A Forest
4A Franklin
5A Fulton
5A Greene
5A Huntingdon
5A Indiana
5A Jefferson
5A Juniata
5A Lackawanna
4A Lancaster
5A Lawrence

4A Lebanon
5A Lehigh
5A Luzerne
5A Lycoming
5A McKean
5A Mercer
5A Mifflin
5A Monroe
4A Montgomery
5A Montour
5A Northampton
5A Northumberland
4A Perry
4A Philadelphia
5A Pike
5A Potter
5A Schuylkill
5A Snyder
5A Somerset
5A Sullivan
5A Susquehanna
5A Tioga
5A Union
5A Venango
5A Warren
5A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Westmoreland
5A Wyoming
4A York
RHODE ISLAND
5A (all)
SOUTH CAROLINA
3A Abbeville
3A Aiken

3A Allendale*
3A Anderson
3A Bamberg*
3A Barnwell*
2A Beaufort*
3A Berkeley*
3A Calhoun
3A Charleston*
3A Cherokee
3A Chester
3A Chesterfield
3A Clarendon
3A Colleton*
3A Darlington
3A Dillon
3A Dorchester*
3A Edgefield
3A Fairfield
3A Florence
3A Georgetown*
3A Greenville
3A Greenwood
3A Hampton*
3A Horry*
2A Jasper*
3A Kershaw
3A Lancaster
3A Laurens
3A Lee
3A Lexington
3A Marion
3A Marlboro
3A McCormick
3A Newberry
3A Oconee

3A Orangeburg
3A Pickens
3A Richland
3A Saluda
3A Spartanburg
3A Sumter
3A Union
3A Williamsburg
3A York
SOUTH DAKOTA
6A Aurora
6A Beadle
5A Bennett
5A Bon Homme
6A Brookings
6A Brown
5A Brule
6A Buffalo
6A Butte
6A Campbell
5A Charles Mix
6A Clark
5A Clay
6A Codington
6A Corson
6A Custer
6A Davison
6A Day
6A Deuel
6A Dewey
5A Douglas
6A Edmunds
6A Fall River
6A Faulk
6A Grant

5A Gregory
5A Haakon
6A Hamlin
6A Hand
6A Hanson
6A Harding
6A Hughes
5A Hutchinson
6A Hyde
5A Jackson
6A Jerauld
5A Jones
6A Kingsbury
6A Lake
6A Lawrence
6A Lincoln
5A Lyman
6A Marshall
6A McCook
6A McPherson
6A Meade
5A Mellette
6A Miner
6A Minnehaha
6A Moody
6A Pennington
6A Perkins
6A Potter
6A Roberts
6A Sanborn
6A Shannon
6A Spink
5A Stanley
6A Sully
5A Todd

5A Tripp
6A Turner
5A Union
6A Walworth
5A Yankton
6A Ziebach
TENNESSEE
4A Anderson
3A Bedford
4A Benton
4A Bledsoe
4A Blount
4A Bradley
4A Campbell
4A Cannon
4A Carroll
4A Carter
4A Cheatham
3A Chester
4A Claiborne
4A Clay
4A Cocke
3A Coffee
3A Crockett
4A Cumberland
3A Davidson
3A Decatur
4A DeKalb
4A Dickson
3A Dyer
3A Fayette
4A Fentress
3A Franklin
3A Gibson
3A Giles

4A Grainger
4A Greene
3A Grundy
4A Hamblen
3A Hamilton
4A Hancock
3A Hardeman
3A Hardin
4A Hawkins
3A Haywood
3A Henderson
4A Henry
3A Hickman
4A Houston
4A Humphreys
4A Jackson
4A Jefferson
4A Johnson
4A Knox
4A Lake
3A Lauderdale
3A Lawrence
3A Lewis
3A Lincoln
4A Loudon
4A Macon
3A Madison
3A Marion
3A Marshall
3A Maury
4A McMinn
3A McNairy
4A Meigs
4A Monroe
4A Montgomery

3A Moore
4A Morgan
4A Obion
4A Overton
3A Perry
4A Pickett
4A Polk
4A Putnam
4A Rhea
4A Roane
4A Robertson
3A Rutherford
4A Scott
4A Sequatchie
4A Sevier
3A Shelby
4A Smith
4A Stewart
4A Sullivan
4A Sumner
3A Tipton
4A Trousdale
4A Unicoi
4A Union
4A Van Buren
4A Warren
4A Washington
3A Wayne
4A Weakley
4A White
3A Williamson
4A Wilson
TEXAS
2A Anderson*
3B Andrews

2A Angelina*
2A Aransas*
3A Archer
4B Armstrong
2A Atascosa*
2A Austin*
4B Bailey
2B Bandera
2A Bastrop*
3B Baylor
2A Bee*
2A Bell*
2A Bexar*
3A Blanco*
3B Borden
2A Bosque*
3A Bowie*
2A Brazoria*
2A Brazos*
3B Brewster
4B Briscoe
2A Brooks*
3A Brown*
2A Burleson*
3A Burnet*
2A Caldwell*
2A Calhoun*
3B Callahan
1A Cameron*
3A Camp*
4B Carson
3A Cass*
4B Castro
2A Chambers*
2A Cherokee*

3B Childress
3A Clay
4B Cochran
3B Coke
3B Coleman
3A Collin*
3B Collingsworth
2A Colorado*
2A Comal*
3A Comanche*
3B Concho
3A Cooke
2A Coryell*
3B Cottle
3B Crane
3B Crockett
3B Crosby
3B Culberson
4B Dallam
2A Dallas*
3B Dawson
4B Deaf Smith
3A Delta
3A Denton*
2A DeWitt*
3B Dickens
2B Dimmit
4B Donley
2A Duval*
3A Eastland
3B Ector
2B Edwards
2A Ellis*
3B El Paso
3A Erath*

2A Falls*
3A Fannin
2A Fayette*
3B Fisher
4B Floyd
3B Foard
2A Fort Bend*
3A Franklin*
2A Freestone*
2B Frio
3B Gaines
2A Galveston*
3B Garza
3A Gillespie*
3B Glasscock
2A Goliad*
2A Gonzales*
4B Gray
3A Grayson
3A Gregg*
2A Grimes*
2A Guadalupe*
4B Hale
3B Hall
3A Hamilton*
4B Hansford
3B Hardeman
2A Hardin*
2A Harris*
3A Harrison*
4B Hartley
3B Haskell
2A Hays*
3B Hemphill
3A Henderson*

1A Hidalgo*
2A Hill*
4B Hockley
3A Hood*
3A Hopkins*
2A Houston*
3B Howard
3B Hudspeth
3A Hunt*
4B Hutchinson
3B Irion
3A Jack
2A Jackson*
2A Jasper*
3B Jeff Davis
2A Jefferson*
2A Jim Hogg*
2A Jim Wells*
2A Johnson*
3B Jones
2A Karnes*
3A Kaufman*
3A Kendall*
2A Kenedy*
3B Kent
3B Kerr
3B Kimble
3B King
2B Kinney
2A Kleberg*
3B Knox
3A Lamar*
4B Lamb
3A Lampasas*
2B La Salle

2A Lavaca*
2A Lee*
2A Leon*
2A Liberty*
2A Limestone*
4B Lipscomb
2A Live Oak*
3A Llano*
3B Loving
3B Lubbock
3B Lynn
2A Madison*
3A Marion*
3B Martin
3B Mason
2A Matagorda*
2B Maverick
3B McCulloch
2A McLennan*
2A McMullen*
2B Medina
3B Menard
3B Midland
2A Milam*
3A Mills*
3B Mitchell
3A Montague
2A Montgomery*
4B Moore
3A Morris*
3B Motley
3A Nacogdoches*
2A Navarro*
2A Newton*
3B Nolan

2A Nueces*
4B Ochiltree
4B Oldham
2A Orange*
3A Palo Pinto*
3A Panola*
3A Parker*
4B Parmer
3B Pecos
2A Polk*
4B Potter
3B Presidio
3A Rains*
4B Randall
3B Reagan
2B Real
3A Red River*
3B Reeves
2A Refugio*
4B Roberts
2A Robertson*
3A Rockwall*
3B Runnels
3A Rusk*
3A Sabine*
3A San Augustine*
2A San Jacinto*
2A San Patricio*
3A San Saba*
3B Schleicher
3B Scurry
3B Shackelford
3A Shelby*
4B Sherman
3A Smith*

3A Somervell*
2A Starr*
3A Stephens
3B Sterling
3B Stonewall
3B Sutton
4B Swisher
2A Tarrant*
3B Taylor
3B Terrell
3B Terry
3B Throckmorton
3A Titus*
3B Tom Green
2A Travis*
2A Trinity*
2A Tyler*
3A Upshur*
3B Upton
2B Uvalde
2B Val Verde
3A Van Zandt*
2A Victoria*
2A Walker*
2A Waller*
3B Ward
2A Washington*
2B Webb
2A Wharton*
3B Wheeler
3A Wichita
3B Wilbarger
1A Willacy*
2A Williamson*
2A Wilson*

3B Winkler
3A Wise
3A Wood*
4B Yoakum
3A Young
2B Zapata
2B Zavala
UTAH
5B Beaver
5B Box Elder
5B Cache
5B Carbon
6B Daggett
5B Davis
6B Duchesne
5B Emery
5B Garfield
5B Grand
5B Iron
5B Juab
5B Kane
5B Millard
6B Morgan
5B Piute
6B Rich
5B Salt Lake
5B San Juan
5B Sanpete
5B Sevier
6B Summit
5B Tooele
6B Uintah
5B Utah
6B Wasatch
3B Washington

5B Wayne
5B Weber
VERMONT
6A (all)
VIRGINIA
4A (all except as follows:)
5A Alleghany
5A Bath
3A Brunswick
3A Chesapeake
5A Clifton Forge
5A Covington
3A Emporia
3A Franklin
3A Greensville
3A Halifax
3A Hampton
5A Highland
3A Isle of Wight
3A Mecklenburg
3A Newport News
3A Norfolk
3A Pittsylvania
3A Portsmouth
3A South Boston
3A Southampton
3A Suffolk
3A Surry
3A Sussex
3A Virginia Beach
WASHINGTON
5B Adams
5B Asotin
5B Benton
5B Chelan

5C Clallam
4C Clark
5B Columbia
4C Cowlitz
5B Douglas
6B Ferry
5B Franklin
5B Garfield
5B Grant
4C Grays Harbor
5C Island
4C Jefferson
4C King
5C Kitsap
5B Kittitas
5B Klickitat
4C Lewis
5B Lincoln
4C Mason
5B Okanogan
4C Pacific
6B Pend Oreille
4C Pierce
5C San Juan
4C Skagit
5B Skamania
4C Snohomish
5B Spokane
6B Stevens
4C Thurston
4C Wahkiakum
5B Walla Walla
4C Whatcom
5B Whitman
5B Yakima

WEST VIRGINIA
5A Barbour
4A Berkeley
4A Boone
4A Braxton
5A Brooke
4A Cabell
4A Calhoun
4A Clay
4A Doddridge
4A Fayette
4A Gilmer
5A Grant
4A Greenbrier
5A Hampshire
5A Hancock
5A Hardy
5A Harrison
4A Jackson
4A Jefferson
4A Kanawha
4A Lewis
4A Lincoln
4A Logan
5A Marion
5A Marshall
4A Mason
4A McDowell
4A Mercer
5A Mineral
4A Mingo
5A Monongalia
4A Monroe
4A Morgan
4A Nicholas

5A Ohio
5A Pendleton
4A Pleasants
5A Pocahontas
5A Preston
4A Putnam
4A Raleigh
5A Randolph
4A Ritchie
4A Roane
4A Summers
5A Taylor
5A Tucker
4A Tyler
4A Upshur
4A Wayne
4A Webster
5A Wetzel
4A Wirt
4A Wood
4A Wyoming
WISCONSIN
5A Adams
6A Ashland
6A Barron
6A Bayfield
6A Brown
6A Buffalo
6A Burnett
5A Calumet
6A Chippewa
6A Clark
5A Columbia
5A Crawford
5A Dane

5A Dodge
6A Door
6A Douglas
6A Dunn
6A Eau Claire
6A Florence
5A Fond du Lac
6A Forest
5A Grant
5A Green
5A Green Lake
5A Iowa
6A Iron
6A Jackson
5A Jefferson
5A Juneau
5A Kenosha
6A Kewaunee
5A La Crosse
5A Lafayette
6A Langlade
6A Lincoln
6A Manitowoc
6A Marathon
6A Marinette
6A Marquette
6A Menominee
5A Milwaukee
5A Monroe
6A Oconto
6A Oneida
5A Outagamie
5A Ozaukee
6A Pepin
6A Pierce

6A Polk
6A Portage
6A Price
5A Racine
5A Richland
5A Rock
6A Rusk
5A Sauk
6A Sawyer
6A Shawano
6A Sheboygan
6A St. Croix
6A Taylor
6A Trempealeau
5A Vernon
6AVilas
5A Walworth
6A Washburn
5A Washington
5A Waukesha
6A Waupaca
5A Waushara
5A Winnebago
6A Wood
WYOMING
6B Albany
6B Big Horn
6B Campbell
6B Carbon
6B Converse
6B Crook
6B Fremont
5B Goshen
6B Hot Springs
6B Johnson

5B Laramie
7 Lincoln
6B Natrona
6B Niobrara
6B Park
5B Platte
6B Sheridan
7 Sublette
6B Sweetwater
7 Teton
6B Uinta
6B Washakie
6B Weston
US TERRITORIES
AMERICAN SAMOA
1A (all)*
GUAM
1A (all)*
NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS
1A (all)*
PUERTO RICO
1A (all except as follows:)*
2B Barranquitas
2B Cayey
VIRGIN ISLANDS
1A (all)*

a. Key: A – Moist, B – Dry, C – Marine. Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a Warm Humid location.

C301.2 Warm Humid counties. In **Table C301.1**, Warm Humid counties are identified by an asterisk.

C301.3 *Climate zone* definitions. To determine the climate zones for locations not listed in this code, use the following information to determine *climate zone* numbers and letters in accordance with Items 1 through 5.

1. Determine the thermal *climate zone*, 0 through 8, from **Table C301.3** using the heating (HDD) and cooling degree-days (CDD) for the location.
2. Determine the moisture zone (Marine, Dry or Humid) in accordance with Items 2.1 through 2.3.
   - 2.1. If monthly average temperature and precipitation data are available, use the Marine, Dry and Humid definitions to determine the moisture zone (C, B or A).
   - 2.2. If annual average temperature information (including degree-days) and annual precipitation (i.e., annual mean) are available, use Items 2.2.1 through 2.2.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then use the Dry definition to determine whether Dry or Humid.
     - 2.2.1. If thermal *climate zone* is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), *climate zone* is Marine (3C).
     - 2.2.2. If thermal *climate zone* is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), *climate zone* is Marine (4C).
     - 2.2.3. If thermal *climate zone* is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), *climate zone* is Marine (5C).
   - 2.3. If only degree-day information is available, use Items 2.3.1 through 2.3.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then it is not possible to assign Humid or Dry moisture zone for this location.
     - 2.3.1. If thermal *climate zone* is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), *climate zone* is Marine (3C).
     - 2.3.2. If thermal *climate zone* is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), *climate zone* is Marine (4C).
     - 2.3.3. If thermal *climate zone* is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), *climate zone* is Marine (5C).
3. Marine (C) Zone definition: Locations meeting all the criteria in Items 3.1 through 3.4.
   - 3.1. Mean temperature of coldest month between 27°F (-3°C) and 65°F (18°C).
   - 3.2. Warmest month mean < 72°F (22°C).
   - 3.3. Not fewer than four months with mean temperatures over 50°F (10°C).
   - 3.4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.
4. Dry (B) definition: Locations meeting the criteria in Items 4.1 through 4.4.
   - 4.1. Not Marine (C).

4.2. If 70 percent or more of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-1.

$$P<0.44 \times (T-7) \quad \textbf{(Equation 3-1)}$$

$$[P<20.0 \times (T+14) \text{ in SI units}]$$

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

4.3. If between 30 and 70 percent of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-2.

$$P<0.44 \times (T-19.5) \quad \textbf{(Equation 3-2)}$$

$$[P<20.0 \times (T+14) \text{ in SI units}]$$

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

4.4. If 30 percent or less of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-3.

$$P<0.44 \times (T-32) \quad \textbf{(Equation 3-3)}$$

$$[P<20.0 \times (T+14) \text{ in SI units}]$$

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

5. Humid (A) definition: Locations that are not Marine (C) or Dry (B).

TABLE C301.3
THERMAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP Units	**SI Units**
0	10,800 < CDD50°F	6000 < CDD10°C
1	9,000 < CDD50°F < 10,800	5000 < CDD10°C < 6000
2	6,300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9,000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 3,600	CDD10°C < 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND 3,600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5,400	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	CDD50°F < 6,300 AND 5,400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7,200	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7,200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9,000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9,000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12,600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12,600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

C301.4 Tropical climate region. The tropical climate region shall be defined as:

1. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, US Virgin Islands, Commonwealth of Northern Mariana Islands; and
2. Islands in the area between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

SECTION C302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

C302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION C303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

C303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

C303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and *R*-value of installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be *labeled* on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be *labeled* as required by the material standards specified in **Table 1508.2** of the *International Building Code*.

C303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof/ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers and one or more of such markers shall be installed for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) of attic area throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic *access* opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be indicated on certification provided by the insulation installer.

C303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection. For insulation materials that are installed without an observable manufacturer's *R*-value mark, such as blown or draped products, an insulation certificate complying with **Section C303.1.1,** shall be left immediately after installation by the installer, in a conspicuous location within the *building*, to certify the installed *R*-value of the insulation material.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the R-value shall be *labeled* as specified by the material standards in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code*.

C303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. *U*-factors, *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC), and *visible transmittance* (VT) of *fenestration* products shall be determined as follows:

1. For windows, doors and skylights, *U*-factor, SHGC and VT ratings shall be determined in accordance with **NFRC 100** and NFRC 200.
2. Where required for garage doors and rolling doors, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with either **NFRC 100** or **ANSI/DASMA 105**.

U-factors, SHGC and VT shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer by a label affixed to the product or a label certificate specific to the products in the project.

Products lacking such a *labeled* *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from **Table C303.1.3(1)** or **Table C303.1.3(2)**. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from **Table C303.1.3(3)**. For Tubular Daylighting Devices, VT_{annual} shall be measured and rated in accordance with NFRC 203.

TABLE C303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single	Double	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glass Block	0.60			

TABLE C303.1.3(2)
DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE *U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal (Rolling)	0.90
Insulated Metal (Other)	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE C303.1.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

C303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the US Federal Trade Commission *R*-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

C303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with **ASTM C1363**. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the ***International Building Code*** .

C303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

C303.2.2 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board. Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with **Section C303.2,** . Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer's instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.

CHAPTER 4 [CE] COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note:

About this chapter: Chapter 4 *presents the paths and options for compliance with the energy efficiency provisions.* ***Chapter 4*** *contains energy efficiency provisions for the building envelope, mechanical and water heating systems, lighting and additional efficiency requirements. A performance alternative is also provided to allow for energy code compliance other than by the prescriptive method.*

SECTION C401
GENERAL

C401.1 Scope. The provisions in this chapter are applicable to commercial *buildings* and their *building sites*.

C401.2 Application. Commercial buildings shall comply with **Section C401.2.1,** or **C401.2.2,** .

C401.2.1 International Energy Conservation Code. Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:

1. Prescriptive Compliance. The Prescriptive Compliance option requires compliance with **Sections C402,** through **C406,** and **Section C408,** . Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 buildings shall be deemed to be in compliance with this chapter, provided that they comply with **Section R406.,**
2. *Simulated Building Performance*. The *Simulated Building Performance* option requires compliance with **Section C407,** .

Exception: Additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with **Chapter 5**.

C401.2.2 ASHRAE 90.1. Commercial buildings shall comply with the requirements of **ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1**.

C401.3 Building thermal envelope certificate. A permanent *building thermal envelope* certificate shall be completed by an *approved* party. Such certificate shall be posted on a wall in the space where the space conditioning equipment is located, a utility room or other *approved* location. If located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. A copy of the certificate shall also be included in the construction files for the project. The certificate shall include the following:

1. *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundations and slabs, *basement walls*, crawl space walls and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces*.
2. *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) of fenestrations.
3. Results from any *building thermal envelope air leakage* testing performed on the *building* .

Where there is more than one value for any component of the *building thermal envelope*, the certificate shall indicate the area-weighted average value where available. If the area-weighted average is not available, the certificate shall list each value that applies to 10 percent or more of the total component area.

SECTION C402
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

C402.1 General. *Building thermal envelope* assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis in accordance with the compliance path described in Item 1 of **Section C401.2.1 ,** shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of **Section C402.2 ,** and the thermal requirements of either Section C402.1.2; Section C402.1.3; or **Section C402.1.4,** . Where the total area of through penetrations of mechanical equipment is greater than 1 percent of the opaque *above-grade wall* area, the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Section C402.1.2.1.8.
2. Wall solar reflectance and thermal *emittance* shall comply with Section C402.3.
3. Roof solar reflectance and thermal *emittance* shall comply with Section C402.4.
4. *Fenestration* in the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Section C402.5. Where buildings have a vertical *fenestration* area or skylight area greater than that allowed in Section C402.5, the *building* and *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Item 2 of Section C401.2.1, Section C401.2.2, or Section C402.1.4.
5. *Air leakage* of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Section C402.6.
6. Thermal bridges in above-grade walls shall comply with Section C402.7.
7. *Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C403.12.*

C402.1.1 Low-energy buildings and greenhouses. The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof separated from the remainder of the *building* by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section, shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of **Section C402,** .

C402.1.1.1 Low-energy buildings. Buildings that comply with either of the following:

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt per square foot (10.7 W/m^2) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space* .

C402.1.1.2 Greenhouses. Greenhouse structures or areas that are mechanically heated or cooled and that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code:

1. Exterior opaque envelope assemblies comply with **Sections C402.2 ,** and **C402.5.5,** .

   Exception: Low energy greenhouses that comply with **Section C402.1.1,** .

2. Interior partition *building thermal envelope* assemblies that separate the greenhouse from *conditioned space* comply with **Sections C402.2,** , **C402.5.3 ,** and **C402.5.5,** .
3. *Fenestration* assemblies that comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements in **Table C402.1.1.2**. The *U*-factor for a roof shall be for the *roof assembly* or a roof that includes the assembly and an *internal curtain system* .

   Exception: Unconditioned greenhouses.

TABLE C402.1.1.2
FENESTRATION BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS

COMPONENT	*U*-FACTOR (BTU/h × ft^2 × °F)
Skylight	0.5
Vertical fenestration	0.7

C402.1.1.3 Equipment Building. Buildings that comply with the following shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area not more than 1,200 square feet (110 m^2).
2. Are intended to house electric equipment with installed equipment power totaling not less than 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m^2) and not intended for human occupancy.
3. Have a heating system capacity not greater than (20,000 Btu/hr) (6kW) and a heating *thermostat* setpoint that is restricted to not more than 50°F (10°C).
4. Have an average wall and roof *U*-factor less than 0.200 in *Climate Zones* 1 through 5 and less than 0.120 in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.
5. Comply with the roof solar reflectance and thermal *emittance* provisions for *Climate Zone* 1.

C402.1.2 Assembly U-factor, C-factor or F-factor method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall have a *U-*, *C-* or *F-factor* not greater than that specified in **Table C402.1.2**. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *U-*, *C-* or *F-factor* from the "*Group R*" column of **Table C402.1.2**. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *U-*, *C-* or *F-factor* from the "All other" column of **Table C402.1.2**

TABLE C402.1.2
OPAQUE BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *U*-FACTOR METHOD [a, b]

CLIMATE ZONE	0 AND 1		2		3		4 EXCEPT MARINE		5 AND MARINE 4		6		7		8	
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R
Roofs																
Insulation entirely above roof deck	U-0.048	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.028	U-0.028	U-0.028	U-0.028
Metal buildings	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.031	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.026	U-0.026
Attic and other	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.017	U-0.017	U-0.017	U-0.017
Walls, above grade																
Mass [f]	U-0.151	U-0.151	U-0.151	U-0.123	U-0.123	U-0.104	U-0.104	U-0.090	U-0.090	U-0.080	U-0.080	U-0.071	U-0.071	U-0.071	U-0.037	U-0.037
Metal building	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.044	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039
Metal framed	U-0.077	U-0.077	U-0.077	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.055	U-0.055	U-0.049	U-0.049	U-0.049	U-0.042	U-0.037	U-0.037
Wood framed and other [c]	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.032	U-0.032
Walls, below grade																
Below-grade wall [c]	C-1.140 [e]	C-1.140 [e]	C-1.140 [e]	C-1.140 [e]	C-1.140 [e]	C-1.140 [e]	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.092	C-0.063	C-0.063	C-0.063	C-0.063	C-0.063
Floors																
Mass [d]	U-0.322 [e]	U-0.322 [e]	U-0.107	U-0.087	U-0.074	U-0.074	U-0.057	U-0.051	U-0.057	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.042	U-0.042	U-0.038	U-0.038
Joist/framing	U-0.066 [e]	U-0.066 [e]	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027
Slab-on-grade floors																
Unheated slabs	F-0.73 [e]	F-0.73 [e]	F-0.73 [e]	F-0.73 [e]	F-0.73 [e]	F-0.54	F-0.52	F-0.52	F-0.52	F-0.51	F-0.51	F-0.434	F-0.51	F-0.434	F-0.434	F-0.424
Heated slabs	F-0.69	F-0.69	F-0.69	F-0.69	F-0.66	F-0.66	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.602	F-0.602	F-0.602	F-0.602	F-0.602
Opaque doors																
Nonswinging door	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31
Swinging door [g]	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37
Garage door < 14% glazing [h]	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.

ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Where assembly *U*-factors, *C*-factors and *F*-factors are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Appendix A, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table, and provided that the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Appendix A.
b. Where *U*-factors have been established by testing in accordance with **ASTM C1363**, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table. The *R*-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.
c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the *U*-factor requirements for above-grade mass walls.
d. “Mass floors” shall be in accordance withSection C402.1.3.4.
e. These *C*-, *F*- and *U*-factors are based on assemblies that are not required to contain insulation.
f. “Mass walls” shall be in accordance withSection C402.1.3.4.
g. Swinging door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with **NFRC-100**.
h. Garage doors having a single row of fenestration shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.44 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.36 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the fenestration area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

C402.1.2.1 Methods of determining U-, C-, and F-factors. Where assembly U-factors, C-factors and F-factors and calculation procedures are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Appendix A for opaque assemblies, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative provided they meet the criteria of Table C402.1.2 and the construction, excluding cladding system on walls, complies with the applicable construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Appendix A. Where U-factors have been established by testing in accordance with ASTM C1363, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative provided they meet the criteria of Table C402.1.4. The R-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design. Air spaces used for assembly evaluations shall comply with Section C402.2.7.

C402.1.2.1.1 Tapered, above-deck insulation based on thickness. For tapered, above-deck roof insulation, area-weighted U-factors of non-uniform insulation thickness shall be determined by an *approved* method.

Exception: The area-weighted U-factor shall be permitted to be determined by using the inverse of the average R-value determined in accordance with the exception to Section C402.1.3.2.

C402.1.2.1.2 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the assembly *U*-factor of the roof-ceiling construction.

C402.1.2.1.3 Concrete masonry units, integral insulation. In determining compliance with Table C402.1.2, the U-factor of concrete masonry units with integral insulation shall be permitted to be used.

C402.1.2.1.4 Mass walls and floors. Compliance with required maximum U-factors for mass walls and mass floors in accordance with Table C402.1.2 shall be permitted for assemblies complying with Section C402.1.3. ~~7~~4.

C402.1.2.1.5 Area-weighted averaging of above-grade wall U-factors. Where *above-grade walls* include more than one assembly type or a penetration of the opaque wall area, the area weighted U-factor of the *above-grade wall* is permitted to be determined by an *approved* method.

C402.1.2.1.6 Cold-formed steel assemblies. *U*-factors for *building thermal envelopes* containing cold-formed steel framed ceilings and walls shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S250 as modified herein.

1. Where the steel-framed wall contains no *cavity insulation*, and uses continuous insulation to satisfy the U-factor maximum, the steel-framed wall member spacing is permitted to be installed at any on-center spacing.
2. Where the steel-framed wall contains framing at 24 inches (610 mm) on center with a 23 percent framing factor or framing at 16 inches (400 mm) on-center with a 25 percent framing factor, the next lower framing member spacing input values shall be used when calculating using AISI S250.
3. Where the steel-framed wall contains less than 23 percent framing factors the AISI S250 shall be used without any modifications.
4. Where the steel-framed wall contains other than standard C-shape framing members the AISI S250 calculation option for other than standard C-shape framing is permitted to be used.

C402.1.2.1.7 Spandrel Panels. U-factors of opaque assemblies within *fenestration* framing systems shall be determined in accordance with the default values in Table C402.1.2.1.7, ASTM C1363, or ANSI/NFRC 100.

TABLE C402.1.2.1.7
EFFECTIVE U-FACTORS FOR SPANDREL PANELS [a]

Rated R-value of Insulation between Framing Members		R-4	R-7	R-10	R-15	R-20	R-25	R-30
Frame Type	**Spandrel Panel**	**Default U-factor**						
Aluminum without Thermal Break [b]	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	0.285	0.259	0.247	0.236	0.230	0.226	0.224
	Double glazing with no low-e coatings	0.273	0.254	0.244	0.234	0.229	0.226	0.223
	Triple glazing or double glazing with low-e glass	0.263	0.249	0.241	0.233	0.228	0.225	0.223
Aluminum with Thermal Break [c]	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	0.243	0.212	0.197	0.184	0.176	0.172	0.169
	Double glazing with no low-e coatings	0.228	0.205	0.193	0.182	0.175	0.171	0.168
	Triple glazing or double glazing with low-e glass	0.217	0.199	0.189	0.180	0.174	0.170	0.167
Structural Glazing [d]	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	0.217	0.180	0.161	0.145	0.136	0.130	0.126
	Double glazing with no low-e coatings	0.199	0.172	0.157	0.143	0.135	0.129	0.126
	Triple glazing or double glazing with low-e glass	0.186	0.165	0.152	0.140	0.133	0.128	0.125
No framing or Insulation is Continuous [e]	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	0.160	0.108	0.082	0.058	0.045	0.037	0.031
	Double glazing with no low-e coatings	0.147	0.102	0.078	0.056	0.044	0.036	0.030
	Triple glazing or double glazing with low-e glass	0.139	0.098	0.076	0.055	0.043	0.035	0.030

a. Extrapolation outside of the table shall not be permitted. Assemblies with distance between framing less than 30 inches (762 mm), or not included in the default table, shall have a U-factor determined by testing in compliance with ASTM C1363 or modeling in compliance with ANSI/NFRC 100. Spandrel panel assemblies in the table do not include metal backpans. For designs with metal backpans, multiply the U-factor by 1.20.
b. This frame type shall be used for systems that do not contain a non-metallic element that separates the metal exposed to the exterior from the metal that is exposed to the interior condition.
c. This frame type chall be used for systems where a non-metallic element separates the metal exposed to the exterior from the metal that is exposed to the interior condition.
d. This frame type shall be used for systems that have no exposed mullion on the exterior.
e. This frame types shall be used for systems where there is no framing or the insulation is continuous and uninterrupted between framing.

C402.1.2.1.8 Mechanical equipment penetrations. Where the total area of through penetrations of mechanical equipment is greater than 1 percent of the opaque above grade wall area, such area shall be calculated as a separate wall assembly, in accordance with either Section C402.1.2.1.5 or Section C402.1.4 using a published and *approved* U-factor for that equipment or a default U-factor of 0.5.

C402.1.3 Insulation component R-value method . For opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* , the *R*-values for *cavity insulation* and continuous insulation shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Group R occupancy buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *R*-values from the "*Group R*" column of **Table C402.1.3**. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *R*-values from the "All other" column of **Table C402.1.3**.

TABLE C402.1.3
OPAQUE BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *R*-VALUE METHOD [a]

CLIMATE ZONE	0 AND 1		2		3		4 EXCEPT MARINE		5 AND MARINE 4		6		7		8	
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R
Roofs																
Insulation entirely above roof deck	R-20ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-35ci	R-35ci	R-35ci	R-35ci
Metal buildings [b]	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-25 + R-11 LS	R-30 + R-11 LS	R-30 + R-11 LS	R-30 + R-11 LS	R-25 + R-11 + R-11 LS	R-25 + R-11 + R-11 LS
Attic and other	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-60	R-60	R-60	R-60
Walls, above grade																
Mass [f]	R-5.7ci [c]	R-5.7ci [c]	R-5.7ci [c]	R-7.6ci	R-7.6ci	R-9.5ci	R-9.5ci	R-11.4ci	R-11.4ci	R-13.3ci	R-13.3ci	R-15.2ci	R-15.2ci	R-15.2ci	R-25ci	R-25ci
Metal building	R-13 + R-6.5ci	R-13 + R-6.5ci	R13 + R-6.5ci	R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-6.5ci	R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-17ci	R-13 + R-19.5ci	R-13 + R-19.5ci	R-13 + R-19.5ci
Metal framed [h,i]	R-0 + R-10ci or R-13 + R-5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci	R-0 + R-10ci or R-13 + R-5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci	R-0 + R-10ci or R-13 + R-5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci	R-0 + R-12.6ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-6.3ci	R-0 + R-12.6ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-6.3ci	R-0 + R-12.6ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-6.3ci	R-0 + R-12.6ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-6.3ci	R-0 + R-12.6ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-6.3ci	R-0 + R-15.2ci or R-13 + R-10ci or R-20 + R-9ci	R-0 + R-15.2ci or R-13 + R-10ci or R-20 + R-9ci	R-0 + R-17.3ci or R-13 + R-12.5ci or R-20 + R-11ci	R-0 + R-17.3ci or R-13 + R-12.5ci or R-20 + R-11ci	R-0 + R-17.3ci or R-13 + R-12.5ci or R-20 + R-11ci	R-0 + R-21ci or R-13 + R-15.6ci or R-20 + R-14.3ci	R-0 + R-24ci or R-13 + R-18.8ci or R-20 + R-17.5ci	R-0 + R-24ci or R-13 + R-18.8ci or R-20 + R-17.5ci
Wood framed and other [h,i]	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 +R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 + R-12ci or R-13 + R-3.8ci orR-20	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 +R-16ci or R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci or R-27	R-0 + R-27.5ci or R-13 + R-18.8ci or R-20 + R-14ci	R-0 + R-27.5ci or R-13 + R-18.8ci or R-20 + R-14ci
Walls, below grade																
Below-grade wall [d]	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	R-7.5ci	R-10ci	R-7.5ci	R-10ci	R-10ci	R-15ci	R-15ci	R-15ci	R-15ci	R-15ci
Floors																
Mass [e]	NR	NR	R-6.3ci	R-8.3ci	R-10ci	R-10ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci	R-16.7ci	R-16.7ci	R-20.9ci	R-20.9ci	R-23ci	R-23ci
Joist/ framing	R-13	R-13	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-30	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38
Slab-on-grade floors																
Unheated slabs	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	R-10 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-20 for 24″ below	R-20 for 24″ below	R-20 for 48″ below	R-20 for 24″ below	R-20 for 48″ below	R-20 for 48″ below	R-25 for 48″ below
Heated slabs [g]	R-7.5 for 12″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-7.5 for 12″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-7.5 for 12″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-7.5 for 12″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-10 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-10 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ R-5 full slab

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.

ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Appendix A.
b. Where using *R*-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block shall be provided, otherwise use the *U*-factor compliance method in **Table C402.1.2**.
c. R-5.7ci is allowed to be substituted with concrete block walls complying with **ASTM C90**, ungrouted or partially grouted not less than 32 inches (813 mm) on center vertically and not less than 48 inches (1220) on center horizontally, with ungrouted cores filled with materials having a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.44 Btu-in/h-f^2°F.
d. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the R-value requirements for above-grade mass walls .
e. "Mass floors" shall be in accordance with Section C402.1.3.4.
f. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.1.3.4.
g. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full, under-slab insulation. Perimeter insulation and full-slab insulation components shall be installed in accordance with Section C402.2.4 .
h. The first value is *cavity insulation*; the second value is *continuous insulation*. Therefore, "R-0+R-12ci" means R-12 *continuous insulation* and no *cavity insulation*; "R-13+R-3.8ci" means R-13 *cavity insulation* and R-3.8 *continuous insulation*; "R-20" means R-20 *cavity insulation* and no *continuous insulation*. R-13, R-20, and R-27 *cavity insulation* as used in this table apply to a nominal 4-inch (101 mm), 6-inch (152 mm), and 8-inch (203 mm) deep

wood or cold-formed steel stud cavities, respectively.

i. Where the required R-value in Table C402.1.3 is met by using continuous insulation such that cavity insulation is not required, ~~the wall assembly framing is permitted to be spaced at any spacing~~ the R-Value is applicable to any wall framing spacing.

C402.1.3.1 R-value of multi-layered insulation components. Where *cavity insulation* is installed in multiple layers, the *cavity insulation* R-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the *cavity insulation* R-value requirements. Where continuous insulation is installed in multiple layers, the continuous insulation R-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the continuous insulation R-value requirements. *Cavity insulation* R-values shall not be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation R-value requirements in Table C402.1.3.

C402.1.3.2 Area-weighted averaging of R-values. Area-weighted averaging shall not be permitted for R-value compliance.

> **Exception:** For tapered above-deck roof insulation, compliance with the R-values required in Table C402.1.3 shall be permitted to be demonstrated by multiplying the rated R-value per inch of the insulation material by the average thickness of the roof insulation. The average thickness of the roof insulation shall equal the total volume of the roof insulation divided by the area of the roof.

C402.1.3.3 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the thermal resistance (R-value) of roof insulation in roof-ceiling construction.

C402.1.3.4 Mass walls and mass floors. Compliance with required maximum U-factors for mass walls and mass floors in accordance with Table C402.1.2 and minimum R-values for insulation components applied to mass walls and mass floors in accordance with Table C402.1.3 shall be permitted for assemblies complying with the following:

1. Where used as a component of the *building thermal envelope*, mass walls shall comply with one of the following:
   - 1.1 Weigh not less that 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m^2) of wall surface area.
   - 1.2 Weigh not less than 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m^2) of wall surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).
   - 1.3 Have a heat capacity exceeding 7 Btu/ft^2 x °F (144 kJ/m^2 x K).
   - 1.4 Have a heat capacity exceeding 5 Btu/ft^2 x °F (103 kJ/m^2 x K) where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).
2. Where used as a component of the *building thermal envelope* of a *building*, the minimum weight of mass floors shall comply with provide one of the following:
   - 2.1 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m^2)of floor surface area.
   - 2.2 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m^2) of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).

C402.1.3.5

C402.1.3.6

C402.1.3.7

C402.1.4 Component performance method. *Building thermal envelope* values and *fenestration* areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-1 shall be an alternative to compliance with the *U*-, *F*-, psi-, chi-, and *C*-factors in **Tables C402.1.2**, Tables C402.1.2.1.7 and C402.1.4, and **C402.5** and the maximum allowable *fenestration* areas in

Section C402.5.1, . *Fenestration* shall meet the applicable SHGC requirements of **Section C402.5.3,** .

$$A_P + B_P + C_P + T_P \leq A_T + B_T + C_T + T_T - V_F - V_S \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

A_P = Sum of the (area x U-factor) for each proposed *building thermal envelope* assembly, other than slab-on-grade or *below-grade wall* assemblies
B_P= Sum of the (length x *F-factor*) for each proposed slab-on-grade edge condition
C_P = Sum of the (area x C-factor) for each proposed *below-grade wall* assembly
T_P = Sum of the (ψL_P) and (χN_p) values for each type of thermal bridge condition of the *building thermal envelope* as identified in Section C402.7 in the proposed *building*. For the purposes of this section, the (ψL_P) and (χN_P) values for thermal bridges caused by materials with a thermal conductivity less than or equal to 3.0 Btu-in/h-ft^2-F shall be assigned as zero. For buildings or structures located in Climate Zones 0 through 3, the value of T_P shall be assigned as zero.
ψL_P= psi-factor × length of the thermal bridge elements in the proposed *building thermal envelope*.
χN_P = chi-factor x number of the thermal bridge point elements other than fasteners, ties, or brackets in the proposed *building thermal envelope*.
A_T= Sum of the (area x U-factor permitted by Tables C402.1.2 and C402.5) for each proposed *building thermal envelope* assembly, other than slab-on-grade or *below-grade wall* assemblies
B_T = Sum of the (length x *F-factor* permitted by Table C402.1.2 for each proposed slab-on-grade edge condition
C_T = Sum of the (area x C-factor permitted by Table C402.1.2) for each proposed *below-grade wall* assembly
T_T = Sum of the (ψL_T) and (χN_T) values for each type of thermal bridge condition in the proposed *building thermal envelope* as identified in Section C402.7 with values specified as "compliant" in Table C402.1.4. For the purposes of this section, the (ψL_T) and (χNT) values for thermal bridges caused by materials with a thermal conductivity less than or equal to 3.0 Btu-in/h-ft^2-F shall be assigned as zero. For buildings or structures located in Climate Zones 0 through 3, the value of T_T shall be assigned as zero.
ψL_T= (psi-factor specified as "compliant" in Table C402.1.~~5~~4) × length of the thermal bridge elements in the proposed *building thermal envelope*.
χN_T = (chi-factor specified as "compliant" in Table C402.1.~~5~~4) x number of the thermal bridge point elements other than fasteners, ties, or brackets in the proposed *building thermal envelope*.
P_F = Maximum vertical *fenestration* area allowable by Section C402.5.1, C402.5.1.1, or C402.5.1.2
Q_F= Proposed vertical *fenestration* area
R_F = Q_F – P_F, but not less than zero (excess vertical *fenestration* area)
S_F = Area-weighted average U-factor permitted by Table C402.5 of all vertical *fenestration* assemblies
T_F = Area-weighted average U-factor permitted by Table C402.1.2 of all exterior opaque wall assemblies
U_F = S_F – T_F (excess U-factor for excess vertical *fenestration* area)
V_F = R_F x U_F (excess UxA due to excess vertical *fenestration* area)
P_S = Maximum skylight area allowable by Section C402.1.2
Q_S = Actual skylight area
R_S = Q_S – P_S, but not less than zero (excess skylight area)
S_S = Area-weighted average U-factor permitted by Table C402.5 of all skylights

T_S = Area-weighted average U-factor permitted by Table C402.1.2 of all opaque roof assemblies

$U_S = S_S – T_S$ (excess U-factor for excess skylight area)

$V_S = R_S \times U_S$ (excess UxA due to excess skylight area)

A proposed psi- or chi-factor for each thermal bridge shall comply with one of the following as applicable:

1. Where the proposed mitigation of a thermal bridge is compliant with the requirements of Section C402.7, the “compliant” values in Table C402.1.4 shall be used for the proposed psi- or chi-factors.
2. Where a thermal bridge is not mitigated in a manner at least equivalent to Section C402.7, the “non-compliant” values in Table C402.1.4 shall be used for the proposed psi- or chi-factors.
3. Where the proposed mitigation of a thermal bridge provides a psi- or chi-factor less than the “compliant” values in Table C402.1.4, the proposed psi- or chi-factor shall be determined by thermal analysis, testing, or other *approved* sources.

TABLE C402.1.4
PSI- and CHI-FACTORS TO DETERMINE THERMAL BRIDGES FOR THE COMPONENT PERFORMANCE METHOD

Thermal Bridge per Section C402.7	Thermal Bridge Compliant with Section C402.7		Thermal Bridge Non-Compliant with Section C402.7	
	psi-factor (Btu/h-ft-°F)	chi-factor (Btu/h-°F)	psi-factor (Btu/h-ft-°F)	chi-factor (Btu/h-°F)
C402.7.1 Balconies~~, slabs,~~ and floor decks	0.2	n/a	0.5	n/a
C402.7.2 Cladding supports	0.2	n/a	0.3	n/a
C402.7.3 Structural beams and columns	n/a	1.0-carbon steel 0.3-concrete	n/a	2.0-carbon steel 1.0-concrete
C402.7.4 Vertical fenestration	0.15	n/a	0.3	n/a
C402.7.5 Parapets	0.2	n/a	0.4	n/a

For SI: W/m-K = 0.578 Btu/h-ft-°F; 1 W/K = 1.90 Btu/h-°F

n/a = not applicable

C402.1.5 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. In *Climate Zones* 3 through 8, where combustion air is supplied through openings in an *exterior wall* to a room or space containing a space-conditioning fuel-burning appliance, one of the following shall apply:

1. The room or space containing the appliance shall be located outside of the *building thermal envelope*.
2. The room or space containing the appliance shall be enclosed and isolated from conditioned spaces inside the *building thermal envelope* . Such rooms shall comply with all of the following:
   2.1. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be not less than equivalent to the insulation requirement of below-grade walls as specified in **Table C402.1.3** or **Table C402.1.2**.
   2.2. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with **Section C402.6.1.2,** .
   2.3. The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be fully gasketed.
   2.4. Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with **Section C403,** . Service water piping shall be insulated in accordance with Section C404.
   2.5. Where an air *duct* supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through *conditioned space*, the *duct* shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.

Exception: Fireplaces and stoves complying with **Sections 901 ,** through **905,** of the *International Mechanical Code*, and **Section 2111.14 ,** of the *International Building Code*.

C402.2 Specific insulation and installation requirements. Insulation in *building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall be installed in accordance with Section C303.2 and **Sections C402.2.1 ,** through **C402.2.7,** , or an *approved* design. .

C402.2.1 Roof -ceiling construction. Insulation materials in the roof-ceiling construction shall be installed between the roof or ceiling framing, continuously below the ceiling framing, continuously above, below, or within the roof deck or in any *approved* combination thereof. Insulation installed above the roof deck shall comply with Sections C402.2.1.1 through C402.2.1.3.

C402.2.1.1 Joints staggered. Continuous, above deck insulation board located above the roof deck shall be installed in not less than two layers and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered, except where insulation tapers to the roof deck at a gutter edge, roof drain or scupper.

C402.2.1.2 Skylight curbs. Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of the above-deck roof insulation or R-5, whichever is less.

Exception: Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with **NFRC 100** shall not be required to be insulated.

C402.2.1.3 Minimum thickness of tapered insulation. The ~~minimum~~ thickness of tapered above-deck roof insulation at its lowest point, gutter edge, roof drain or scupper, shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

C402.2.2 Above-grade walls. *Above-grade wall* insulation materials shall be installed between the wall framing, be integral to the wall assembly, be continuous on the wall assembly, or be any combination of these insulation methods. Where continuous insulation is layered on the exterior side of a wall assembly, the joints shall be staggered.

C402.2.3 Floors over outdoor air or unconditioned space. Floor insulation shall be installed between floor framing, be integral to the floor assembly, be continuous on the floor assembly, or be any combination of these insulation methods. Where continuous insulation is layered on the exterior side of a floor assembly, the joints shall be staggered. Floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs.

Exceptions:

1. The floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be installed in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies. Floor framing or structural slab members at the perimeter of the floor assembly shall be insulated vertically for their full depth with insulation equivalent to that required for the above grade wall construction.
2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an airspace of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the *building thermal envelope*.

C402.2.4 Slabs-on-grade. Where installed, the perimeter insulation for slab-on-grade shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. For installations complying with Table C402.1.3, the perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Where installed, full slab insulation shall be continuous under the entire area of the slab-on-grade floor, except at structural column locations and service penetrations. Insulation required at the heated slab perimeter shall not be required to extend below the bottom of the heated slab and shall be continuous with the full slab insulation.

Exception: Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

C402.2.5 Below-grade walls. *Below-grade wall* insulation shall be installed between framing members, be integral to the wall assembly, be continuous on the wall assembly, or be any combination of these insulation methods. For installations complying with Section C401.2.1, insulation shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the *conditioned space* enclosed by the *below-grade wall*, whichever is less.

C402.2.6 Insulation of radiant heating system panels. *Radiant heating system* panels, and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies, shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R -3.5 on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. *Radiant heating system* panels that are installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the *R*-value of insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with **Section C402.1.2,** .

C402.2.7 Airspaces. Where the *R*-value of an airspace is used for compliance in accordance with **Section C402.1,** , the airspace shall be enclosed in a cavity bounded on all sides by *building* components and constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where one of the following conditions occur:

1. The enclosed airspace is unventilated.
2. The enclosed airspace is bounded on at least one side by an anchored masonry veneer, constructed in accordance with Chapter 14 of the International Building Code, and vented by veneer weep holes located only at the bottom of the airspace and spaced not less than 15 inches (380 mm) on center with top of the cavity airspace closed.

Exception: For ventilated cavities, the effect of the *ventilation* of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous *air barrier* and adjacent to and behind the *exterior wall*-covering material shall be determined in accordance with **ASTM C1363** modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at an air movement rate of not less than 70 mm/second.

C402.3 Above-Grade Wall Solar Reflectance. For *Climate Zone* 0, above-grade east-oriented, south-oriented, and west-oriented walls shall comply with either of the following:

1. Not less than 75 percent of the opaque *above-grade wall* area shall have an area-weighted initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.30 where tested in accordance with ASTM C1549 with AM1.5GV, output or ASTM E903 with AM1.5GV output, or determined in accordance with an *approved* source. This *above-grade wall* area shall have an *emittance* or emissivity of not less than 0.75 where tested in accordance with ASTM C835, C1371, E408, or determined in accordance with an *approved* source. For the portion of the *above-grade wall* that is glass spandrel area, a solar reflectance of not less than 0.29, as determined in accordance with NFRC 300 or ISO 9050, shall be permitted. Area-weighted averaging is permitted only using *south-, east-, and west-oriented walls* enclosing the same occupancy classification.
2. Not less than 30 percent of the opaque *above-grade wall* area shall be shaded by manmade structures, existing buildings, hillsides, permanent *building* projections, *on-site renewable energy* systems, or a combination of these. Shade coverage shall be calculated by projecting the shading surface downward on the *above-grade wall* at an angle of 45 degrees.

Exception: Above grade walls of low energy buildings complying with Section C402.1.1.1, greenhouses complying with Section C402.1.1.2, and equipment buildings complying with Section C402.1.1.3.

C402.4 Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance. *Low slope* roofs directly above cooled conditioned spaces in *Climate Zones* 0 through 3 shall comply with one or more of the options in **Table C402.4**.

Exceptions: The following roofs and portions of roofs are exempt from the requirements of **Table C402.4**:

1. Portions of the roof that include or are covered by the following:
   1.1. Photovoltaic systems or components.
   1.2. Solar air or water-heating systems or components.

1.3. Vegetative roofs or landscaped roofs.
1.4. Above-roof decks or walkways.
1.5. Skylights.
1.6. HVAC systems and components, and other opaque objects mounted above the roof.

2. Portions of the roof shaded during the peak sun angle on the summer solstice by permanent features of the *building* or by permanent features of adjacent buildings.
3. Portions of roofs that are ballasted with a minimum stone ballast of 17 pounds per square foot (74 kg/m^2) or 23 psf (117 kg/m^2) pavers.
4. Roofs where not less than 75 percent of the roof area complies with one or more of the exceptions to this section.

TABLE C402.4
MINIMUM ROOF REFLECTANCE AND EMITTANCE OPTIONS [a]

Three-year-aged solar reflectance [b] of 0.55 and 3-year aged thermal *emittance* [c] of 0.75
Three-year-aged solar reflectance index [d] of 64

a. The use of area-weighted averages to comply with these requirements shall be permitted. Materials lacking 3-year-aged tested values for either solar reflectance or thermal *emittance* shall be assigned both a 3-year-aged solar reflectance in accordance with **Section C402.4.1**, and a 3-year-aged thermal *emittance* of 0.90.
b. Aged solar reflectance tested in accordance with **ASTM C1549**, **ASTM E903** or **ASTM E1918** or **CRRC-S100**.
c. Aged thermal *emittance* tested in accordance with **ASTM C1371** or **ASTM E408** or **CRRC-S100**.
d. Solar reflectance index (SRI) shall be determined in accordance with **ASTM E1980** using a convection coefficient of 2.1 Btu/h × ft^2 × °F (12 W/m^2 × K). Calculation of aged SRI shall be based on aged tested values of solar reflectance and thermal *emittance*.

C402.4.1 Aged roof solar reflectance. Where an aged solar reflectance required by **Section C402.4 ,** is not available, it shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-2.

$$R_{\text{aged}} = [0.2 + 0.7(R_{\text{initial}} - 0.2)] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-2)}$$

where:

R_{aged} = The aged solar reflectance.
$R_{initial}$ = The initial solar reflectance determined in accordance with **CRRC-S100**.

C402.5 Fenestration . *Fenestration* shall comply with **Sections C402.5.1 ,** through **C402.5.5,** and **Table C402.5**. Daylight responsive controls shall comply with this section and **Section C405.2.4, .**

TABLE C402.5
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM *U*-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE	0 AND 1		2		3		4 EXCEPT MARINE		5 AND MARINE 4		6		7		8	
Vertical fenestration																
***U*-factor**																
Fixed fenestration	0.50		0.45		0.38		0.34		0.34		0.34		0.28		0.25	
Operable fenestration	0.62		0.60		0.54		0.45		0.45		0.42		0.36		0.32	
Entrance doors	0.83		0.77		0.68		0.63		0.63		0.63		0.63		0.63	
SHGC																
	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable
PF < 0.2	0.23	0.21	0.25	0.23	0.25	0.23	0.36	0.33	0.38	0.33	0.38	0.34	0.40	0.36	0.40	0.36
0.2 ≤ PF < 0.5	0.28	0.25	0.30	0.28	0.30	0.28	0.43	0.40	0.46	0.40	0.46	0.41	0.48	0.43	0.48	0.43
PF ≥ 0.5	0.37	0.34	0.40	0.37	0.40	0.37	0.58	0.53	0.61	0.53	0.61	0.54	0.64	0.58	0.64	0.58
Skylights																
U-factor	0.70		0.65		0.55		0.50		0.50		0.50		0.44		0.41	
SHGC	0.30		0.30		0.30		0.40		0.40		0.40		NR		NR	

NR = No Requirement, PF = Projection Factor.

C402.5.1 Maximum area. The vertical *fenestration* area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not greater than 30 percent of the gross *above-grade wall* area. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area.

C402.5.1.1 Increased vertical fenestration area with daylight responsive controls. In *Climate Zones* 0 through 6, not more than 40 percent of the gross *above-grade wall* area shall be vertical *fenestration*, provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. In buildings not greater than two stories above grade, not less than 50 percent of the net floor area is within a primary sidelit *daylight zone or a toplit daylight zone*.
2. In buildings three or more stories above grade, not less than 25 percent of the net floor area is within a primary sidelit *daylight zone or a toplit daylight zone*.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* are installed in *daylight zones.*
4. Visible transmittance (VT) of vertical *fenestration* is not less than 1.1 times solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC).

   Exception: *Fenestration* that is outside the scope of **NFRC 200** is not required to comply with Item 4.

C402.5.1.2 Increased skylight area with daylight responsive controls. The skylight area shall be not more than 6 percent of the roof area provided that *daylight responsive controls* are installed in *toplit daylight zones*.

C402.5.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area. Skylights shall be provided in enclosed spaces greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) in floor area, directly under a roof with not less than 75 percent of the ceiling area with a ceiling height greater than 15 feet (4572 mm), and used as an office, lobby, atrium, concourse, corridor, storage space, gymnasium/ exercise center, convention center, automotive service area, space where manufacturing occurs, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation depot or workshop. The total *toplit daylight zone* shall be not less than half the floor area and shall comply with one of the following:

1. A minimum skylight area to *toplit daylight zone* of not less than 3 percent where all skylights have a VT of not less than 0.40, or VT_{annual} of not less than 0.26, as determined in accordance with **Section C303.1.3,** .
2. A minimum skylight effective aperture, determined in accordance with Equation 4-3, of:
   2.1. Not less than 1 percent using a skylight's VT rating; or
   2.2. Not less than 0.66 percent using a Tubular Daylight Device's VT_{annual} rating.

Skylight Effective Aperture = (0.85 x Skylight Area x Skylight VT x WF)/ Toplit Zone **(Equation 4-3)**

where:
Skylight area = Total *fenestration* area of skylights.
Skylight VT = Area weighted average visible transmittance of skylights.
WF = Area weighted average well factor, where well factor is 0.9 if light well depth is less than 2 feet (610 mm), or 0.7 if light well depth is 2 feet (610 mm) or greater, or 1.0 for Tubular Daylighting Devices with VT_{annual} ratings.
Light well depth = Measure vertically from the underside of the lowest point of the skylight glazing to the ceiling plane under the skylight.

Exception: Skylights above *daylight zones* of enclosed spaces are not required in:

1. Buildings in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.

2. Spaces where the designed *general lighting* power densities are less than 0.5 W/ft^2 (5.4 W/m^2).
3. Areas where it is documented that existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on not less than half of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.
4. Spaces where the *daylight zone* under rooftop monitors is greater than 50 percent of the *enclosed space* floor area.
5. Spaces where the total area minus the area of *sidelit daylight zones* is less than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2), and where the lighting is controlled in accordance with **Section C405.2.3,** .
6. Spaces designed as storm shelters complying with **ICC 500**.

C402.5.2.1 Lighting controls in toplit daylight zones. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be provided in toplit daylight zones.

C402.5.2.2 Haze factor. Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with **ASTM D1003**.

Exception: Skylights and tubular daylighting devices designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles, the geometry of skylight and light well or the use of optical diffuser components.

C402.5.3 Maximum *U*-factor and SHGC. The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for *fenestration* shall be as specified in **Table C402.5**.
The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-4.

$$PF = A/B$$ **(Equation 4-4)**

where:

PF = Projection factor (decimal).
A = Distance measured horizontally from the farthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.
B = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device.

Where different windows or glass doors have different *PF* values, they shall each be evaluated separately.

C402.5.3.1 Increased skylight SHGC. In *Climate Zones* 0 through 6, skylights shall be permitted a maximum SHGC of 0.60 where located above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*.

C402.5.3.2 Increased skylight *U*-factor. Where skylights are installed above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*, a maximum *U*-factor of 0.9 shall be permitted in *Climate Zones* 0 through 3 and a maximum *U*-factor of 0.75 shall be permitted in *Climate Zones* 4 through 8.

C402.5.3.3 Dynamic glazing. Where *dynamic glazing* is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of **Table C402.5**, the ratio of the higher to lower *labeled* SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. *Dynamic glazing* shall be considered separately from other *fenestration*, and area-weighted averaging with other *fenestration* that is not *dynamic glazing* shall not be permitted.

Exception: *Dynamic glazing* is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher *labeled* SHGC already comply with the requirements of **Table C402.5**.

C402.5.3.4 Area-weighted *U*-factor. An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each *fenestration* product category listed in **Table C402.5**. Individual *fenestration* products from different *fenestration* product categories listed in **Table C402.5** shall not be combined in calculating area-weighted average *U*-factor.

C402.5.4 Daylight zones. Daylight zones referenced in **Sections C402.5.1.1 ,** through **C402.5.3.2,** shall comply with **Sections C405.2.4.2 ,** and **C405.2.4.3,** , as applicable. Daylight zones shall include *toplit daylight zones* and sidelit *daylight* zones.

C402.5.5 Doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with **Table C402.1.2**. Opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with **Table C402.1.2**. Opaque doors shall be considered as part of the gross area of above-grade walls that are part of the *building thermal envelope* . Opaque doors shall comply with **Section C402.5.5.1 ,** or **C402.5.5.2,** . Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.5.3 for vertical *fenestration*.

C402.5.5.1 Opaque swinging doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with **Table C402.1.2**.

C402.5.5.2 Nonswinging doors. Opaque nonswinging doors that are horizontally hinged sectional doors with a single row of *fenestration* shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.440 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.360 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the *fenestration* area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

Exception: Other doors shall comply with the provisions of **Section C402.5.3 ,** for vertical *fenestration*.

C402.5.11

C402.5.11.1

C402.6 Air leakage—building thermal envelope.

The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with **Sections C402.6.1 ,** through C402.6.7.

C402.6.1 Air barriers.

A continuous *air barrier* shall be provided throughout the *building thermal envelope*. The *air barrier* is permitted to be located at any combination of inside, outside, or within the *building thermal envelope* . The *air barrier* shall comply with Sections C402.6.1.1, and C402.6.1.2. The *air leakage* performance of the *air barrier* shall be verified in accordance with Section

C402.6.2.

Exception: *Air barriers* are not required in buildings located in *Climate Zone* 2B.

C402.6.1.1 Air barrier design and documentation requirements.

Design of the continuous *air barrier* shall be documented as follows:

1. Components comprising the continuous *air barrier* and their position within each *building thermal envelope* assembly shall be identified.
2. Joints, interconnections, and penetrations of the continuous *air barrier* components shall be detailed.
3. The continuity of the *air barrier building* element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and unconditioned space shall be identified.
4. Documentation of the continuous *air barrier* shall detail methods of sealing the *air barrier* such as wrapping, caulking, gasketing, taping or other *approved* methods at the following locations:
   4.1 Joints around *fenestration* and door frames.
   4.2 Joints between walls and floors, between walls at *building* corners, between walls and roofs including parapets and copings, where above-grade walls meet foundations, and similar intersections.
   4.3 Penetrations or attachments through the continuous *air barrier* .
   4.4 Building assemblies used as ducts or plenums.
   4.5 Changes in continuous *air barrier* materials and assemblies.
5. Identify where testing will or will not be performed in accordance with Section C402.6.2 Where testing will not be performed, a plan for field inspections required by C402.6.2.3 shall be provided that includes the following:
   5.1 Schedule for periodic inspection,
   5.2 Continuous *air barrier* scope of work,
   5.3 List of critical inspection items,
   5.4 Inspection documentation requirements, and
   5.5 Provisions for corrective actions where needed.

C402.6.1.2 Air barrier construction.

The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The *air barrier* shall be continuous for all assemblies that comprise the *building thermal envelope* and across the joints and assemblies.
2. *Air barrier* joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure differentials such as those from wind , stack effect and mechanical *ventilation* .
3. Penetrations of the *air barrier* shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration.Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure.

Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the fire sprinkler manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.

4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with **Section C402.6.1.2.1,** . Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the *air barrier*, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the *air barrier*.
5. Electrical and communication boxes shall comply with C402.6.1.2.2.

C402.6.1.2.1 Recessed lighting.

Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be all of the following:

1. IC-rated.
2. *Labeled* as having an *air leakage* rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) where tested in accordance with **ASTM E283** at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.
3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

C402.6.1.2.2 Electrical and communication boxes.

Electrical and communication boxes that penetrate the *air barrier* of the *building thermal envelope*, and that do not comply with C402.6.1.2.2.1, shall be caulked, taped, gasketed, or otherwise sealed to the *air barrier* element being penetrated. All openings on the concealed portion of the box shall be sealed. Where present, insulation shall rest against all concealed portions of the box.

C402.6.1.2.2.1 Air-sealed boxes.

Where air-sealed boxes are installed, they shall be marked in accordance with NEMA OS 4. Air-sealed boxes shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~C402.6.2~~ C402.6.8 Reserved (Potentially move C402.1.3 *Air leakage* compliance here).

Reserved.

~~C402.6.1.3~~ C402.6.2 Air leakage compliance.

Air leakage of the *building thermal envelope* shall be tested by an *approved* third party in accordance with C402.6.2.1. The measured air leakage shall not be greater than 0.35 cfm/ft^2(1.8 L/s x m^2) of the *building thermal envelope* area at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) with the calculated *building thermal envelope* surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade *building thermal envelope*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the measured *air leakage* rate is greater than 0.35 cfm/ft^2 (1.8 L/s x m^2) but is not greater than 0.45 cfm/ft^2 (2.3 L/s x m^2), the *approved* third party shall perform a diagnostic evaluation using smoke tracer or infrared imaging. The evaluation shall be conducted while the *building* is pressurized or depressurized along with a visual inspection of the *air barrier* in accordance with ASTM E1186. All identified leaks shall be sealed where such sealing can be made without damaging existing *building*

components. A report specifying the corrective actions taken to seal leaks shall be deemed to establish compliance with the requirements of this section where submitted to the *code official* and the *building owner*. Where the measured *air leakage* rate is greater than 0.45 cfm/ft^2 (2.3 L/s x m^2), corrective actions must be made to the *building* and an additional test completed for which the results are 0.45 cfm/ft^2 (2.3 L/s x m^2), or less.

2. Buildings in *Climate Zone* 2B.
3. Buildings larger than 25,000 square feet (2300 m^2) floor area in Climate Zones 0 through 4, other than Group R and I occupancies, that comply with C402.6.2.3
4. As an alternative, buildings or portions of *building*, containing Group R-2 and I-1 occupancies, shall be permitted to be tested by an *approved* third party in accordance with C402.6.2.2. The reported *air leakage* of the *building thermal envelope* shall not be greater than 0.27 cfm/ft^2 (1.4 L/s x m^2) of the *testing unit enclosure area* at a pressure differential of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa).

C402.6.2.1 Whole building test method and reporting.

The *building thermal envelope* shall be tested by an *approved* third party for *air leakage* in accordance with ASTM E3158 or an equivalent *approved* method. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and *air leakage* rates shall be submitted to the *code official* and the *building owner*.

Exceptions:

1. For *buildings* less than 10,000 ft^2 (1000 m^2) the entire *building thermal envelope* shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ASTM E779, ASTM E3158, ASTM E1827, or an equivalent *approved* method.
2. For *buildings* greater than 50,000 ft^2 (4645 m^2), portions of the *building* shall be permitted to be tested and the measured *air leakage* shall be area-weighted by the surface areas of the *building thermal envelope* in each portion. The weighted average tested *air leakage* shall not be greater than the whole *building air leakage* limit. The following portions of the *building* shall be tested:
   - 2.1 The entire *building thermal envelope* area of stories that have any conditioned spaces directly under a roof.
   - 2.2 The entire *building thermal envelope* area of stories that have a *building* entrance, a floor over unconditioned space, a loading dock, or that are below grade.
   - 2.3 Representative above-grade portions of the *building* totaling not less than 25 percent of the wall area enclosing the remaining *conditioned space*.

C402.6.2.2 Dwelling and sleeping unit enclosure method and reporting.

The *building thermal envelope* shall be tested for *air leakage* in accordance with **ASTM E779**, ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, **ASTM E1827** or an equivalent *approved* method. Where multiple dwelling units or sleeping units or other spaces are contained within one *building thermal envelope*, each shall be considered an individual testing unit, and the *building air leakage* shall be the weighted average of all tested unit results, weighted by each *testing unit enclosure area*. Units shall be tested without simultaneously testing adjacent units and shall be separately tested as follows:

1. Where buildings have less than eight total dwelling or sleeping units, each unit shall be tested.

2. Where buildings have eight or more dwelling or sleeping units, the greater of seven units or 20 percent of the units in the *building* shall be tested, including a top floor unit, a middle floor unit, a ground floor unit and a unit with the largest *testing unit enclosure area*. For each tested unit that exceeds the maximum *air leakage* rate, an additional three units shall be tested, including a mixture of testing unit types and locations.
3. Enclosed spaces with not less than one *exterior wall* in the *building thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with Section C402.6.2.1.

   Exception: Corridors, stairwells, and enclosed spaces having a *conditioned floor area* not greater than 1,500 ft (139 m^2) shall be permitted to comply with Section C402.6.2.3 and either Section C402.6.2.3.1 or Section C402.6.2.3.2.

C402.6.2.3 Building thermal envelope design and construction verification criteria.

Where Section C402.6.2.1 and C402.6.2.2 are not applicable the installation of the continuous *air barrier* shall be verified by the *code official*, a *registered design professional* or *approved* agency in accordance with the following:

1. A review of the *construction documents* and other supporting data shall be conducted to assess compliance with the requirements in **Section C402.6.1,** .
2. Inspection of continuous *air barrier* components and assemblies shall be conducted during construction to verify compliance with the requirements of Section C402.6.2.3.1 or C402.6.2.3.2. The *air barrier* shall ~~remain accessible~~ be provided with access for inspection and *repair*.
3. A final inspection report shall be provided for inspections completed by the *registered design professional* or *approved* agency. The inspection report shall be provided to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent and the *code official*. The report shall identify deficiencies found during inspection and details of corrective measures taken.

C402.6.2.3.1 Materials.

Materials with an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cfm/ft^2(0.02 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with **ASTM E2178** shall comply with this section. Materials in Items 1 through 16 below shall be deemed to comply with this section, provided that joints are sealed and materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Plywood with a thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).
2. Oriented strand board having a thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).
3. Extruded polystyrene insulation board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
4. Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
5. Closed-cell spray foam having a minimum density of 1.5 pcf (2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than 1 $^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).
6. Open-cell spray foam with a density between 0.4 and 1.5 pcf (0.6 and 2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than 4.5 inches (113 mm).
7. Exterior or interior gypsum board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch

(12.7 mm).

8. Cement board having a thickness of not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm).
9. Built-up roofing membrane.
10. Modified bituminous roof membrane.
11. Single-ply roof membrane.
12. A Portland cement/sand parge, or gypsum plaster having a thickness of not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm).
13. Cast-in-place and precast concrete.
14. Fully grouted concrete block masonry.
15. Sheet steel or aluminum.
16. Solid or hollow masonry constructed of clay or shale masonry units.

C402.6.2.3.2 Assemblies.

Assemblies of materials and components with an average *air leakage* not greater than 0.04 cfm/ft^{2}(0.2 L/s × m^{2}) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch of water gauge (75 Pa) where tested in accordance with **ASTM E2357**, **ASTM E1677**, **ASTM D8052** or **ASTM E283** shall comply with this section. Assemblies listed in Items 1 through 3 below shall be deemed to comply, provided that joints are sealed and the requirements of **Section C402.6.1.2 ,** are met.

1. Concrete masonry walls coated with either one application of block filler or two applications of a paint or sealer coating.
2. Masonry walls constructed of clay or shale masonry units with a nominal width greater than or equal to 4 inches (102 mm).
3. A Portland cement/sand parge, stucco or plaster not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness.

C402.6.3 Air leakage of fenestration and opaque doors.

The *air leakage* of *fenestration* and opaque doors assemblies shall comply with **Table C402.6.3**. Testing shall be conducted by an accredited, independent testing laboratory in accordance with applicable reference test standards in Table C402.6.3 and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exceptions:

1. Field-fabricated *fenestration* assemblies that are sealed in accordance with **Section C402.6.1, .**
2. *Fenestration* in buildings that are tested in accordance with Section C402.6.2 are not required to meet the *air leakage* requirements in **Table C402.6.3**.

TABLE C402.6.3
MAXIMUM AIR LEAKAGE RATE FOR FENESTRATION ASSEMBLIES

FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY	MAXIMUM RATE (CFM/FT^2)	TEST PROCEDURE
Windows	0.20 [a]	**AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440** or **NFRC 400**
Sliding doors	0.20 [a]	
Swinging doors	0.20 [a]	
Skylights—with condensation weepage openings	0.30	
Skylights—all other	0.20 [a]	
Curtain walls	0.06	**NFRC 400** or **ASTM E283** at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Storefront glazing	0.06	
Commercial glazed swinging entrance doors	1.00	
Power-operated sliding doors and power operated folding doors	1.00	
Revolving doors	1.00	
Garage doors	0.40	**ANSI/DASMA 105** , **NFRC 400**, or **ASTM E283** at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Rolling doors	1.00	
High-speed doors	1.30	

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m^2.

a. The maximum rate for windows, sliding and swinging doors, and skylights is permitted to be 0.3 cfm per square foot of *fenestration* or door area when tested in accordance with **AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440** at 6.24 psf (300 Pa).

C402.6.4 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies.

Doors and *access* openings from *conditioned space* to shafts, chutes stairways and elevator lobbies not within the scope of the *fenestration* assemblies covered by **Section C402.6.3 ,** shall be gasketed, weather-stripped or sealed.

Exceptions:

1. Door openings required to comply with **Section 716 ,** of the *International Building Code*.
2. Doors and door openings required by the ***International Building Code*** to comply with UL 1784.

C402.6.5 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts.

Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intakes and exhaust openings integral to the *building thermal envelope* shall be provided with dampers in accordance with **Section C403.7.7,** .

C402.6.6 Vestibules.

Building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule. Doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the *building entrance* shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors.

Exceptions: Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Buildings in *Climate Zones* 0 through 2.
2. Doors not intended to be used by the public, such as doors to mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, or intended solely for employee use.
3. Doors opening directly from a *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* .
4. Doors that open directly from a space less than 3,000 square feet (298 m^2) in area.
5. Revolving doors.
6. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
7. Doors that have an *air curtain unit* with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at 6.0 inches (15 cm) above the floor that has been tested in accordance with **ANSI/AMCA 220** or ISO 27327-1 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. *Manual* or *automatic* controls shall be provided that will operate the *air curtain unit* with the opening and closing of the door and comply with Section C403.4.1.45. Air curtain units and their controls shall comply with **Section C408.2.3,** .

C402.6.7 Loading dock weather seals.

Cargo door openings and loading door openings shall be equipped with weather seals that restrict *air leakage* and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

C402.7 Thermal bridges in above-grade walls Thermal bridges in above-grade walls shall comply with this section or an *approved* design.

Exceptions:

1. *Buildings* and structures located in Climate Zones 0 through 3.
2. Any *thermal bridge* with a material thermal conductivity not greater than 3.0 Btu/h-ft-°F.
3. Blocking, coping, flashing, and other similar materials for attachment of roof coverings.
4. *Thermal bridges* accounted for in the *U*-factor or *C*-factor for a *building thermal envelope* .

C402.7.1 Balconies and floor decks. Balconies and concrete floor decks shall not penetrate the *building thermal envelope*. Such assemblies shall be separately supported or shall be supported by structural attachments or elements that minimize thermal bridging through the *building thermal envelope*.

Exceptions: Balconies and concrete floor decks shall be permitted to penetrate the *building thermal envelope* where:

1. An area-weighted *U*-factor is used for *above-grade wall* compliance that includes a *U*-factor of 0.8 Btu/h-°F-ft^2 for the area of the *above-grade wall* penetrated by the concrete floor deck in accordance with Section C402.1.2.1.5, or
2. An *approved* thermal break device with not less than R-10 insulation material is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions , or
3. An *approved* design where the *above-grade wall* U-factor used for compliance accounts for all balcony and concrete floor deck *thermal bridges*.

C402.7.2 Cladding supports. Linear elements supporting opaque cladding shall be off-set from the structure with attachments that allow the continuous insulation, where present, to pass behind the cladding support element except at the point of attachment.

Exceptions:

1. An *approved* design where the *above-grade wall U*-factor used for compliance accounts for the cladding support element *thermal bridge*.
2. Anchoring for *curtain wall* and window wall systems where *curtain wall* and window wall systems comply with Section C402.7.4.

C402.7.3 Structural beams and columns. Structural steel and concrete beams and columns that project through the *building thermal envelope* shall be covered with not less than R-5 insulation for not less than 2 feet (610 mm) beyond the interior or exterior surface of an insulation component within the *building thermal envelope* .

Exceptions:

1. Where an *approved* thermal break device is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. An *approved* design where the *above-grade wall* U-factor used to demonstrate compliance accounts for the beam or column thermal bridge.

C402.7.4 Vertical fenestration. Vertical *fenestration* intersections with above grade walls shall comply with one or more of the following:

1. Where above-grade walls include continuous insulation, the plane of the exterior glazing layer or, for metal frame *fenestration*, a non-metal thermal break in the frame

shall be positioned within 2 inches (610 mm) of the interior or exterior surface of the continuous insulation.

2. Where above-grade walls do not include continuous insulation, the plane of the exterior glazing layer or, for metal frame *fenestration*, a non-metal thermal break in the frame shall be positioned within the thickness of the integral or *cavity insulation*.
3. The surface of the rough opening, not covered by the fenestration frame, shall be insulated with insulation of not less than R-3 material or covered with a wood buck that is not less than 1.5 inches (457 mm) thick.
4. For the intersection between vertical fenestration and opaque spandrel in a shared framing system, manufacturer's data for the spandrel *U*-factor shall account for *thermal bridges*.

Exceptions:

1. Where an *approved* design for the *above-grade wall U*-factor used for compliance accounts for *thermal bridges* at the intersection with the vertical fenestration.
2. Doors

C402.7.5 Parapets. Parapets shall comply with one or more of the following as applicable:

1. Where continuous insulation is installed on the exterior side of the *above-grade wall* and the roof is insulated with insulation entirely above deck, the continuous insulation shall extend up both sides of the parapet not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof covering or to the top of the parapet, whichever is less. Parapets that are an integral part of a fire-resistance rated wall, and the exterior continuous insulation applied to the parapet, shall comply with the fire resistance ratings of the building code.
2. Where continuous insulation is installed on the exterior side of the *above-grade wall* and the roof insulation is below the roof deck, the continuous insulation shall extend up the exterior side of the parapet to not less than the height of the top surface of the *roof assembly*.
3. Where continuous insulation is not installed on the exterior side of the *above-grade wall* and the roof is insulated with insulation entirely above deck, the wall cavity or integral insulation shall extend into the parapet up to the exterior face of the roof insulation or equivalent R-value insulation shall be installed not less than 2 feet (610 mm) horizontally inward on the underside of the roof deck.
4. Where continuous insulation is not installed on the exterior side of the *above-grade wall* and the roof insulation is below the roof deck, the wall and roof insulation components shall be adjacent to each other at the roof-ceiling-wall intersection.
5. Where a thermal break device with not less than R-10 insulation material aligned with the *above-grade wall* and roof insulation is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Exception: An *approved* design where the *above-grade wall U* -factor used for compliance accounts for the parapet *thermal bridge*.

SECTION C403
BUILDING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

C403.1 General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving the *building* heating, cooling, ventilating or refrigerating needs shall comply with one of the following:

1. Sections C403.1.1 and Sections C403.2 through Section C403.14

2. Data Centers shall comply with Section C403.1.1, Section C403.1.2 and Section C403.6 through Section C403.14
3. Section C409

C403.1.1 Calculation of heating and cooling loads. Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the *building* shall be determined in accordance with **ANSI/ ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183** or by an *approved* equivalent computational procedure using the design parameters specified in **Chapter 3**. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system in accordance with the **ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook** by an *approved* equivalent computational procedure.

C403.1.2 Data centers. *Data center* systems shall comply with Sections 6 and 8 of **ASHRAE 90.4** :

C403.1.3

C403.1.3.1

C403.2 System design. Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with **Sections C403.2.1,** through **C403.2.3,** . Where elements of a *building*'s mechanical systems are addressed in **Sections C403.3,** through **C403.14,** , such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

C403.2.1 Zone isolation required. HVAC systems serving *zones* that are over 25,000 square feet (2323 m^2) in floor area or that span more than one floor and are designed to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. Each isolation area shall be equipped with *isolation devices* and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of **Section C403.4.2.2,** . Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).
2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.
3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a *zone* are inoperative.

C403.2.2 Ventilation. *Ventilation*, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with **Chapter 4** of the *International Mechanical Code*. Where mechanical *ventilation* is provided, the system shall provide the capability to reduce the outdoor air supply to the minimum required by **Chapter 4** of the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.2.3 Fault detection and diagnostics. Buildings with gross *conditioned floor area* of not less than 100,000 square feet (9290 m^2) served by one or more HVAC systems that are controlled by a direct digital control (DDC) system shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The FDD system shall:

1. Include permanently installed sensors and devices to monitor HVAC system's performance.
2. Sample HVAC system performance at least once every 15 minutes.
3. Automatically identify and report HVAC system faults.
4. Automatically notify authorized personnel of identified HVAC system faults.
5. Automatically provide prioritized recommendations for repair of identified faults based on analysis of data collected from the sampling of HVAC system performance.
6. Be capable of transmitting the prioritized fault repair recommendations to remotely located authorized personnel.

Exception: R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

C403.3 Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies. Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with **Section C403.3.1,** and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in **Section C403.3.2,** .

C403.3.1 Equipment sizing. The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with **Section C403.1.1,** . A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

Exceptions:

1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.

C403.3.2 HVAC equipment performance requirements. Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of **Tables C403.3.2(1)** through **C403.3.2(16)** when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of **AHRI 400**. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein. ~~Efficiency values and metrics in tables shall be equal to the values and metrics shown in ASHRAE 90.1-2022~~

TABLE C403.3.2(1)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~13.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 13.4 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/240—2017** before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single-package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 13.4 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Space constrained, air cooled	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 11.7 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/240—2017** before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 11.7 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Small duct, high velocity, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 12. 0 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/240—2017** before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	~~11.2 EER 12.9 IEER before 1/1/2023~~ 14.8 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	**AHRI 340/360**

		All other		~~11.0 EER~~ ~~12.7 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 14.6 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		~~11.0 EER~~ ~~12.4 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 14.2 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
		All other		~~10.8 EER~~ ~~12.2 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 14.0 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	~~10.0 EER~~ ~~11.6 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 13.2 IEER after 1/1/2023	**AHRI 340/360**
		All other		~~9.8 EER~~ ~~11.4 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 13.0 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		~~9.7 EER~~ ~~11.2 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 12.5 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	

		All other		~~9.5 EER~~ ~~11.0 IEER~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ 12.3 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	**AHRI 210/240**
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	**AHRI 340/360**
		All other		11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other		12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other		12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other		12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	**AHRI 210/240**
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	**AHRI 340/360**
		All other		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other		11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	

	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other		11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	**AHRI 365**
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	**AHRI 365**
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	**AHRI 365**

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, US air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations **DOE 10 CFR 430**. SEER and SEER2 values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy.
c. **DOE 10 CFR 430** Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 ~~that will be incorporated~~ are documented in **AHRI 210/240—2023**.
~~d. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-1 Electrically Operated Unitary Air Conditioners and Condensing Units—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(2)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED AIR-COOLED UNITARY HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 14.3 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/ 2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 13.4 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Space constrained, air cooled (cooling mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 11.7 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/ 2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 11.7 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Small duct, high velocity, air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023~~ 12.0 SEER2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/ 2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
Air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	~~11.0 EER 12.2 IEER before 1/1/ 2023~~ 14.1 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	**AHRI 340/360**
		All other		~~10.8 EER 12.0 IEER before 1/1/ 2023~~ 13.9 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		~~10.6 EER 11.6 IEER before 1/1/ 2023~~ 13.5 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
		All other		~~10.4 EER 11.4 IEER before 1/1/ 2023~~ 13.3 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	

	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		~~9.5 EER 10.6 IEER before 1/1/2023~~ 12.5 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
		All other		~~9.3 EER 10.4 IEER before 1/1/2023~~ 12.3 IEER ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	~~All~~	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~8.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023~~ 7.5 HSPF2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~8.0 HSPF before 1/1/2023~~ 6.7 HSPF2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Space constrained, air cooled (heating mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	~~All~~	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023~~ 6.3 HSPF2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023~~ 6.3 HSPF2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
Small duct high velocity, air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	~~All~~	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	~~7.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023~~ 6.1 HSPF2 ~~after 1/1/2023~~	~~**AHRI 210/ 240—2017**~~ ~~before 1/1/2023~~ **AHRI 210/ 240—2023** ~~after 1/1/2023~~
Air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	~~All~~	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	~~3.30 COP_H before 1/1/2023~~ 3.40 COP_H ~~after 1/1/2023~~	**AHRI 340/360**
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	~~3.20 COP_H before 1/1/2023~~ 3.30 SOP_H ~~after 1/1/2023~~	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	

	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.20 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, US air-cooled heat pumps less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations **DOE 10 CFR 430**. SEER, SEER2 and HSPF values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy.
c. **DOE 10 CFR 430** Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 ~~that will be incorporated~~ documented in **AHRI 210/240—2023**.
~~d. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-2 Electrically Operated Air-Cooled Unitary Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(3)
LIQUID-CHILLING PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a, b, e, f]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	PATH A	PATH B	TEST PROCEDURE[c]
Air cooled	< 150 tons	EER (Btu/Wh)	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	**AHRI 550/590**
			≥ 13.700 IPLV.IP	≥ 15.800 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons		≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700FL	
			≥ 14.000 IPLV.IP	≥ 16.100 IPLV.IP	
Air cooled without condenser, electrically operated	All capacities	EER (Btu/Wh)	Air-cooled without condenser must be rated with matching condensers and comply with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements		**AHRI 550/590**
Liquid-cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.750 FL	≤ 0.780 FL	**AHRI 550/590**
			≤ 0.600 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons		≤ 0.720 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	
			≤ 0.560 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.490 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.660 FL	≤ 0.680 FL	
			≤ 0.540 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.625 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.410 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
Liquid-cooled, electrically operated centrifugal	< 150 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.695 FL	**AHRI 550/590**
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
	≥150 tons and <300 tons		≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.635 FL	
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.400 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.595 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.390 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	

Air cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.600 FL	NA[d]	**AHRI 560**
Liquid-cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.700 FL	NA[d]	**AHRI 560**
Absorption double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL ≥ 0.150 IPLV.IP	NA[d]	**AHRI 560**
Absorption double effect, direct fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL ≥ 1.000 IPLV	NA[d]	**AHRI 560**

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. The requirements for centrifugal chillers shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions per **Section C403.3.2.1,** and are applicable only for the range of conditions listed there. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.
c. Both the full-load and IPLV.IP requirements must be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. When there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.
d. NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B, and only Path A can be used for compliance.
e. FL is the full-load performance requirements, and IPLV.IP is for the part-load performance requirements.
~~f. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-3 Water-Chilling Packages—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(4)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[e]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
PTAC (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air [c]	11.9 EER	**AHRI 310/380**
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTAC (cooling mode) nonstandard size[a]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb o utdoor air [c]	9.4 EER	**AHRI 310/380**
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.9 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.7 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air [c]	11.9 EER	**AHRI 310/380**
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) nonstandard size[b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air [c]	9.3 EER	**AHRI 310/380**
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.8 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.6 EER	
PTHP (heating mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	**AHRI 310/380**

	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		3.7 – (0.052 × Cap/1,000) COP_H [d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.90 COP_H	
PTHP (heating mode) nonstandard size [b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	2.7 COP_H	**AHRI 310/380**
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		2.9 – (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP_H [d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.5 COP_H	
SPVAC (cooling mode) single and three phase	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air [c]	11.0 EER	**AHRI 390**
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air [c]	11.0 EER	**AHRI 390**
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10. 0 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	**AHRI 390**
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	

Room air conditioners without reverse cycle with louvered sides for applications outside US [d]	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	10.9 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	10.7 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h and < 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
	≥ 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 CEER	
Room air conditioners without louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 11,000 Btu/h	—	9.6 CEER	
	≥ 11,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.5 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
Room air conditioners with reverse cycle, with louvered sides for applications outside US [d]	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	

Room air conditioners with reverse cycle without louvered sides for applications outside US [d]	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	**ANSI/AHAM RAC-1**
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.7 CEER	
Room air conditioners, casement only for applications outside US [d]	All	—	9.5 CEER	**ANSI/AHAM RAC-1**
Room air conditioners, casement slider for applications outside US [d]	All	—	10.4 CEER	**ANSI/AHAM RAC-1**

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

"Cap" = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit's capacity is less than 7,000 Btu/h, use 7,000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Nonstandard size units must be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR NONSTANDARD SIZE APPLICATIONS ONLY; NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW STANDARD PROJECTS." Nonstandard size efficiencies apply only to units being installed in existing sleeves having an external wall opening of less than 16 inches (406 mm) high or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) wide and having a cross-sectional area less than 670 square inches (0.43 m^2).
c. The cooling-mode wet bulb temperature requirement only applies for units that reject condensate to the condenser coil.
d. Room air conditioners are regulated as consumer products by 10 CFR 430. For U.S. applications of room air conditioners, refer to Informative Appendix F, Table F-3, for the U.S. DOE minimum efficiency requirements for U.S. applications.
e. "Cap" in EER and COPH equations for PTACs and PTHPs means cooling capacity in Btu/h at 95°F outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
~~f This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-4 Electrically Operated Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners, Packaged Terminal Heat Pumps, Single-Package Vertical Air Conditioners, Single-Package Vertical Heat Pumps, Room Air Conditioners, and Room Air-Conditioner Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(5)
WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS [g]

DESCRIPTION	FUEL	ELECTRIC POWER PHASE	APPLICATION LOCATION	HEATING CAPACITY (INPUT), Btu/h[b]	COMBO-UNIT COOLING CAPACITY, Btu/h	SUBTYPE	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Warm-air furnace	Gas	1	Inside U.S.	< 225,000	<65,000	See Informative Appendix F, Table F-4[f]		
Warm-air furnace	Gas	1	Inside U.S.	< 225,000	≥65,000	Nonweatherized	80% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
						Weatherized	81% AFUE or 80% E_t[c]	Appendix N[g]
								ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace	Gas	1	Outside U.S.	< 225,000	All	Nonweatherized	80% AFUE	Appendix N [g]
						Weatherized	81% AFUE or 80% E_t[c]	Appendix N[g]
								ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace	Gas	3	All	< 225,000	All	Nonweatherized	80% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
						Weatherized	81% AFUE or 80% E_t[c]	Appendix N[g]
								ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace	Gas	All	All	≥225,000 and ≤400,000	All	All	~~80%E_t[c] before 1/1/2023~~ 81% E_t[c] ~~after 1/1/2023~~	ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace	Gas	All	Inside U.S.	>400,000	All	All	80%E_t[c] before 1/1/2023 81% E_t[c] after 1/1/2023	ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace	Gas	All	Outside U.S.	>400,000	All	All	80%Etc before 1/1/2023 81% Etc after 1/1/2023	ANSI Z21.47 or ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air furnace	Oil	1	Inside U.S.	<225,000	<65,000	See Informative Appendix F, Table F-4[f]		
Warm-air furnace	Oil	1	Inside U.S.	<225,000	≥65,000	Nonweatherized	83% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
						Weatherized	78% AFUE or 80% E_t[d]	Appendix N[g]
								Section 42 UL 727
Warm-air furnace	Oil	1	Outside U.S.	<225,000	All	Nonweatherized	83% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
						Weatherized	78% AFUE or 80% E_t[d]	Appendix N[g]
								Section 42 UL 727
Warm-air furnace	Oil	3	All	<225,000	All	Nonweatherized	83% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
						Weatherized	78% AFUE or 80%E_t[d]	Appendix N[g]
								Section 42 UL 727

Warm-air furnace	Oil	All	All	≥225,000	All	All	~~81% E_t[d] before 1/1/2023~~ 82% E_t[d] ~~after 1/1/2023~~	Section 42 UL 727
Warm-air furnace	Electric	1	Inside U.S.	<225,000	<65,000	See Informative Appendix F, Table F-4[f]		
Warm-air furnace	Electric	1	Inside U.S.	<225,000	≥65,000	All	96% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
Warm-air furnace	Electric	1	Outside U.S.	<225,000	All	All	96% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
Warm-air furnace	Electric	3	All	<225,000	All	All	96% AFUE	Appendix N[g]
Warm-air duct furnaces	Gas	All	All	All	All	All	80% E_c[d]	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters	Gas	All	All	All	All	All	80% E_c[d,e]	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters	Oil	All	All	All	All	All	80% E_c[d,e]	Section 40 UL 731
~~Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired~~				~~All capacities~~		~~Maximum capacity[e]~~	~~80% E_c[e, f]~~	~~Section 2.10, Efficiency, **ANSI Z83.8**~~
~~Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired~~				~~All capacities~~		~~Maximum capacity[e]~~	~~80% E_c[e, f]~~	~~Section 40, Combustion, **UL 731**~~

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.For this table, the following applies:

- Appendix N = 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
- ANSI Z21.47 = Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
- ANSI Z83.3 = Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.3
- UL 727 = Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
- UL 731 = Section 40, Combustion, UL 731

b. Compliance of multiple firing rate units shall be at the maximum firing rate.

c. E_t = thermal efficiency. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID), have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the *conditioned space* .

d. E_c = combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

e. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID) and have either power venting or an *automatic* flue damper.

f. Includes combination units with cooling capacity <65,000 Btu/h. For U.S. applications of federally covered <225,000 Btu/h products, see Informative Appendix F, Table F-4.

g. 10 CFR 430 is limited to-single phase equipment that is not contained within the same cabinet with a central air conditioner whose rated cooling capacity is above 65,000 Btu/h but for the test and rating procedures are not impacted for three-phase and can be used for AFUE ratings for ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 three-phase products and single-phase products with a cooling capacity greater than 65,000 Btu/h.

~~h. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-5 Warm-Air Furnaces and Combination Warm-Air Furnaces/Air-Conditioning Units, Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, and Unit Heaters—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(6)
GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS [i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE[b]	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Boilers, hot water	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g, h] for applications outside US	84% AFUE	**DOE 10 CFR 430** Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	84% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b] and ≤10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	82% E_c[c]	
		>10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	82% E_c[c]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g,h] for applications outside US	86% AFUE	**DOE 10 CFR 430** Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	82% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b] and ≤10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	84% E_c[c]	
		>10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	84% E_c[c]	
Boilers, steam	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	**DOE 10 CFR 430** Appendix N
	Gas fired—all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	79% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b] and ≤10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t[d]	
		>10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t[d]	
	Gas fired—natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	79% E_t[d]	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t[d]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	**DOE 10 CFR 430** Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	84% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b] and ≤10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	81% E_t[d]	
		>10,000,000 Btu/h[b]	81% E_t[d]	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.
c. E_c = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).
d. E_t = Thermal efficiency.
e. Maximum capacity—minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.
f. Includes oil-fired (residual).
g. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant burning pilot light.
h. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water-heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.
~~i. Prior to March 2, 2022, for natural draft very large gas-fired steam commercial packaged boilers, a minimum thermal efficiency level of 77 percent is permitted and meets Federal commercial packaged boiler energy conservation standards~~

TABLE C403.3.2(7)
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS [i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	TOTAL SYSTEM HEAT-REJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION[h]	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[a,b, c, f, g]	TEST PROCEDURE[d, e]
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	**CTI ATC-105** and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	**CTI ATC-105** and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	**CTI ATC-105S** and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	**CTI ATC-105S** and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan dry coolers (air-cooled fluid coolers)	All	115°F entering water 105°F leaving water 95°F entering wb	≥ 4.5 gpm/hp	**CTI ATC-105DS**
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 160,000 Btu/h × hp	**CTI ATC-106**

Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h × hp	**CTI ATC-106**
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 137,000 Btu/h × hp	**CTI ATC-106**
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h × hp	**CTI ATC-106**
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F condensing temperature 190°F entering gas temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h × hp	**AHRI 460**

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, L/s × kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2550.7), db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. For purposes of this table, open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the fan motor nameplate power.
b. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump motor nameplate power.
c. For purposes of this table, dry-cooler performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the unit at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit, and air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit.
d. Section 13 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
e. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of separate wet and dry heat exchange sections. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling

towers.

f. All cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories and/or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.

g. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table, divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.

h. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-448A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-448A must meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed with R-448A as the test fluid. For ammonia, the condensing temperature is defined as the saturation temperature corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance. For R-448A, which is a zeotropic refrigerant, the condensing temperature is defined as the arithmetic average of the dew point and the *bubble point* temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance.

~~i. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-7 Performance Requirements for Heat Rejection Equipment—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(8)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h Three-phase for applications in the U.S. and single- and three-phase for applications outside the U.S.	All	VRF multisplit system	13.0 SEER	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 210/240-2023
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	10.5 EER 15.5 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	10.3 EER 14.9 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	9.5 EER 13.9 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
~~b. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-8 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(9)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h Three-phase for applications in the U.S. and single- and three-phase for applications outside the U.S.	All	VRF multisplit system	~~13.0 SEER~~SEER2 = 13.4	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 210/240-2023
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	~~11.0~~10.3 EER 14.6 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	~~10.8 EER 12.7 IEER 14.4 IEER~~10.1 EER 14.4 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	~~10.6 EER 12.3 IEER 13.9 IEER~~9.9 EER 14.4 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	~~10.4 EER 12.1 IEER 13.7 IEER~~9.7 EER 13.9 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	~~9.5 EER 11.0 IEER 12.7 IEER~~9.1 EER 12.7 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	~~9.3 EER 10.8 IEER 12.5 IEER~~8.9 EER 12.5 IEER	AHRI 1230-2021
VRF water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit systems 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021
VRF water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit systems with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021

	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 14.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 13.8 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 12.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 11.8 IEER	
VRF groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	16.2 EER	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	16.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	13.8 EER	

			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	13.6 EER	
VRF ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	13.4 EER	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	13.2 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	11.0 EER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	10.8 EER	
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)Three-phase for applications in the U.S. and single- and three-phase for applications outside the U.S.		VRF multisplit system	~~7.7 HSPF~~HSPF2=7.5	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 210/240-2023
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	AHRI 1230-2021
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP_H	

			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	
VRF water source (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	~~4.2 COP_H~~ 4.3 COP_H	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	~~4.2 COP_H~~ 4.3 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	~~3.9 COP_H~~ 4.0 COP_H	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	3.9 COP_H	
VRF groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.6 COP_H	~~AHRI 1230~~AHRI 1230-2021
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.3 COP_H	
VRF ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	**AHRI 1230**AHRI 1230-2021
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	2.8 COP_H	

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

~~b. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-9 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow and Applied Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(10)
FLOOR-MOUNTED AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE
Air cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 2)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.16	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.89		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Air cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		

	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.09	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.99		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Water cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.82	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.73		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.67		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.79		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.70		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.64		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.43	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.32		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.20		

	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.79	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		
Water cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.77	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.61		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.74		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.65		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.35	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.71	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.54		
Glycol cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.56	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.53		

		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Upflow, nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.08	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.90		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.48	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.51	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.19		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.15		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.48		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.16		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.00	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.82		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.44	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	

		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

~~a. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-10 Floor-Mounted Air Conditioners and Condensing Units Serving Computer Rooms—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(11)
VAPOR-COMPRESSION-BASED INDOOR POOL DEHUMIDIFIERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE
Single package indoor (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A or C	3.5 MRE	AHRI 910
Single package indoor water-cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	
Single package indoor air-cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	
Split system indoor air-cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	

Chapter 6

~~a. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-12 Vapor-Compression-Based Indoor Pool Dehumidifiers—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(12)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITHOUT ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	3.8 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	3.8 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	4.7 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	2.05 ISCOP2	**AHRI 920**
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed and open loop[b]	4.6 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
	Water source	3.8 ISMRE2	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed and open loop[b]	2.13 ISCOP2	**AHRI 920**
	Water source	2.13 ISCOP2	

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. ~~For minimum efficiency compliance purposes, open~~ Open loop systems ~~shall be~~ are rated using closed-loop test conditions.

TABLE C403.3.2(13)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED D X-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITH ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	5.0 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	5.0 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	5.1 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	3.2 ISCOP2	**AHRI 920**
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed and open loop[b]	5.0 ISMRE2	**AHRI 920**
	Water source	4.6 ISMRE2	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed and open loop[b]	3.5 ISCOP2	**AHRI 920**
	Water source	4.04 ISCOP2	

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. ~~For minimum efficiency compliance purposes, open~~Open loop systems ~~shall be~~ are rated using closed-loop test conditions.

TABLE C403.3.2(14) ELECTRICALLY OPERATED WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS [b, c]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water-to-air, water loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	**ISO 13256-1**
	≥ 17,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
Water-to-air, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	**ISO 13256-1**
Brine-to-air, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	**ISO 13256-1**
Water-to-water, water loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	**ISO 13256-2**
Water-to-water, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	**ISO 13256-2**
Brine-to-water, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	12.1 EER	**ISO 13256-2**
Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP_H	**ISO 13256-1**
Water-to-air, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	**ISO 13256-1**
Brine-to-air, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	3.2 COP_H	**ISO 13256-1**

Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	**ISO 13256-1**
Water-to-water, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	**ISO 13256-2**
Brine-to-water, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	2.5 COP_H	**ISO 13256-2**

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, U.S. air-cooled heat pumps <65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by 10 CFR 430. SEER, SEER2, HPSF and HPSF2 values for single-phase products are set by the U.S. DOE. Informative Note: See Informative Appendix F for the U.S. DOE minimum.
~~c. This table is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-15 Electrically Operated Water-Source Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(15)
HEAT-PUMP AND HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[g]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY REFRIGERATING CAPACITY[n], ton_R	COOLING OPERATION EFFICIENCY[a,d,e,j] AIR-SOURCE EER (FL/IPLV), Btu/W × h LIQUID-SOURCE POWER INPUT PER CAPACITY (FL/IPLV), kW/ton_R		HEATING OPERATION EFFICIENCY[b,e,j] HEATING SOURCE CONDITIONS (leaving liquid) OR OAT (db/wb), °F	HEAT-PUMP HEATING FULL-LOAD HEATING EFFICIENCY (COP_H)[f,h], W/W				SIMULTANEOUS COOLING AND HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{SHC}) [b,i], W/W				HEAT RECOVERY HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{HR})[c,j],W/W				Test Procedure[a]
					Entering/Leaving Heating Liquid Temperature				Entering/Leaving Heating Liquid Temperature				Entering/Leaving Heating Liquid Temperature				
					Low	Medium	High	Boost	Low	Medium	High	Boost	Low	Medium	Hot-Water 1	Hot-Water 2	
		Path A	Path B		95°F/ 105°F	105°F/ 120°F	120°F/ 140°F	120°F/ 140°F	95°F/ 105°F	105°F/ 120°F	120°F/ 140°F	120°F/ 140°F	95°F/ 105°F	105°F/ 120°F	90°F/ 140°F	120°F/ 140°F	
Air source	<150.0	≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.02 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.01 IPLV.IP	47 db 43 wb[1]	≥ 3.290	≥ 2.770	≥ 2.310	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	AHRI 550/ 590
				17 db 15 wb[1]	≥ 2.029	≥ 1.775	≥ 1.483	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥150.0	≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.30 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.30 IPLV.IP	47 db 43 wb[1]	≥3.290	≥ 2.770	≥ 2.310	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
				17 db 15 wb[1]	≥2.029	≥ 1.775	≥ 1.483	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
Liquid-source electrically operated positive displacement	≥11.25[q] and <150	≤ 0.7895 FL ≤ 0.6316 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.8211 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	AHRI 550/ 590
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.7579 FL ≤ 0.5895 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7895 FL ≤ 0.5158 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 300 and < 400	≤ 0.6947 FL ≤ 0.5684 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7158 FL ≤ 0.4632 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 400 and < 600	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6579 FL ≤ 0.4316 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA[p]	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA[p]	≥8.900	≥6.980	≥5.500	≥5.000	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.900	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥6.850	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA[p]	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA[p]	≥8.900	≥6.980	≥5.500	≥5.000	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.900	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥6.850	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
Liquid-source electrically operated centrifugal	≥11.25[q] and <150	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5789 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7316 FL ≤ 0.4632 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	AHRI 550/ 590
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.6190 FL ≤ 0.5748 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6684 FL ≤ 0.4211 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 300 and < 400	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5526 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6263 FL ≤ 0.4105 IPLV.IP	44[m]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA[p]	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA[p]	≥8.330	≥6.410	≥4.862	≥4.420	
				65[m]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 3.550	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	≥ 6.150	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	

	≥ 400 and < 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	44 [m]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA [p]	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA [p]	≥8.900	≥6.980	≥5.500	≥5.000	
				65 [m]	NA [p]	NA [p]	NA [p]	≥ 3.900	NA [p]	NA [p]	NA [p]	≥ 6.850	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	44 [m]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA [p]	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA [p]	≥8.900	≥6.980	≥5.500	≥5.000	
				65 [m]	NA [p]	NA [p]	NA [p]	≥ 3.900	NA [p]	NA [p]	NA [p]	≥ 6.850	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	NA[p]	

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Cooling rating conditions are standard rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590 (I-P), Table 4, except for liquid-cooled centrifugal chilling packages which can adjust cooling efficiency for nonstandard rating conditions using K_{adj} procedure in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 Section 6.4.1.2.1.
b. Heating full-load rating conditions are at standard rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590 (I-P), Table 4; includes the impact of defrost for air source heating ratings.
c. For liquid-source heat recovery chilling packages that have capabilities for heat rejection to a heat recovery condenser and a tower condenser the COP_{HR} applies to operation at full load with 100% heat recovery (no tower rejection). Units that only have capabilities for partial heat recovery shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-3.
d. For cooling operation, compliance with both the FL and IPLV is required, but only compliance with Path A or Path B cooling efficiency is required.
e. For units that operate in both cooling and heating, compliance with both the cooling and heating efficiency is required.
f. For applications where the chilling package is installed to operate only in heating, compliance only with the heating performance COP_H is required at only one of the heating AHRI 550/590 (I-P) standard rating conditions of Low, Medium, High, or Boost. Compliance with cooling performance is not required.
g. For air source heat pumps, compliance with both the 47.00°F and 17.00°F heating source outdoor air temperature (OAT) rating efficiency is required for heating.
h. For heat-pump chilling package applications where the cooling capacity is not being used for conditioning, compliance with the heating performance COP_H is only required at one of the four heating AHRI 550/590 standard ratings conditions of Low, Medium, High, or Boost. Compliance with the cooling performance is required as defined in footnotes (a) and (d), except as noted in footnote (f).
i. For simultaneous cooling and heating chillers applications where there is simultaneous cooling and heating, compliance with the simultaneous cooling performance heat recovery COP_{SHC} is only required at one of the four simultaneous cooling and heating AHRI 550/590 (I-P) standard ratings conditions of Low, Medium, High, or Boost. Compliance with the cooling only performance is required as defined in footnotes (a) and (d).
j. For heat recovery heating chilling package applications where there is simultaneous cooling and heating, compliance with the heating performance heat recovery COP_{HR} is only required at one of the four heating AHRI 550/590 (I-P) standard ratings conditions of Low, Medium, Hot-Water 1, or Hot-Water 2. Compliance with the cooling only performance is required as defined in footnotes a and d.
k. Chilling packages employing a freeze-protection liquid in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 Section 6.4.1.2.2 shall be tested or rated with water for the purpose of compliance with the requirements of this table.
l. Outdoor air entering dry-bulb (db) temperature and wet-bulb (wb) temperature.
m. Source-leaving liquid temperature.
   - The cooling evaporator liquid flow rate used for the heating rating for a reverse cycle air-to-water heat pump shall be the flow rate determined during the full-load cooling rating.
   - The cooling evaporator liquid flow rate for the simultaneous cooling and heating and heat recovery liquid cooled chilling packages rating shall be the liquid flow rates from the cooling operation full load rating.
   - For heating-only fluid-to-fluid chiller packages, the evaporator flow rate obtained with an entering liquid temperature of 54.00°F and a leaving liquid temperature of 44.00°F shall be used.
n. The size category is the full-load net refrigerating cooling mode capacity, which is the capacity of the evaporator available for cooling of the thermal load external to the chilling package.
o. A heat recovery condenser at its maximum load point must remove enough heat from the refrigerant to cool the refrigerant to remove all superheat energy and begin condensation of the refrigerant. A heat recovery system where only the superheat is reduced is not covered by ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-16 and is considered a desuperheater, and the chiller package must comply with ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-3.
p. "NA" means the requirements are not applicable.
q. Water-to-water heat pumps with a capacity less than 135,000 Btu/h are covered by ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-15.
r. ~~This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-16 Heat Pump and Heat Recovery Water-Chilling Packages-Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

TABLE C403.3.2(16)
CEILING-MOUNTED COMPUTER-ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/ dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.05	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.02		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.92		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.08		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.05		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.94		
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.01	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.97		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.87		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.89		
Air cooled with ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.86	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**

		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.83		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.89		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.86		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.75		
Air cooled with fluid economizer and ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.82	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.68		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.85		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.70		
Water cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.38	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.28		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.41		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.31		

		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.20		
Water cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.33	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.23		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.13		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.36		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.26		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.16		
Glycol cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.97	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.98		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.92	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	**AHRI 1360**
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.88		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.95		

		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.76		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

a. **Chapter 6** contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

~~b. This is a replica of **ASHRAE 90.1** Table 6.8.1-17 Ceiling-Mounted Computer-Room Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.~~

C403.3.2.1 Water-cooled centrifugal chilling packages. Equipment not designed for operation at AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44.00°F leaving and 54.00°F entering chilled-fluid temperatures, and with 85.00°F entering and 94.30°F leaving condenser-fluid temperatures, shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load rating requirements adjusted using the following equations:

$$FL_{adj} = FL / K_{adj} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-5)}$$

$$PLV_{adj} = IPLV.IP / K_{adj} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-6)}$$

where:

$K_{adj} = A \times B$

FL = Full-load kW/ton value from Table C403.3.2(3).

FL_{adj} = Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

IPLV.IP = *IPLV.IP* value from Table C403.3.2(3).

PLV_{adj} = Maximum *NPLV* rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

$A = 0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 - 0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 - 0.147199 \times (LIFT) + 3.93073$

$B = 0.0015 \times L_{vg}E_{vap} + 0.934$

$LIFT = L_{vg}Cond - L_{vg}E_{vap}$

$L_{vg}Cond$ = Full-load condenser leaving fluid temperature (°F).

$L_{vg}E_{vap}$ = Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F).

The FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} values are applicable only for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

- 36.00°F ≤ $L_{vg}E_{vap}$ ≤ 60.00°F
- $L_{vg}Cond$ ≤ 115.00°F
- 20.00°F ≤ $LIFT$ ≤ 80.00°F

Manufacturers shall calculate the FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} before determining whether to label the chiller. Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these ranges are not covered by this code.

C403.3.2.2 Positive displacement (air- and water-cooled) chilling packages. Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of the tables in **Section C403.3.2,** when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

C403.3.3 Hot gas bypass limitation. Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in **Table C403.3.3**, as limited by **Section C403.5.1,** .

TABLE C403.3.3
MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY

RATED CAPACITY	MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)
≤ 240,000 Btu/h	50
> 240,000 Btu/h	25

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C403.3.4 Boilers. Boiler Systems shall comply with the following:

1. Combustion air positive shut-off shall be provided on all newly installed boiler systems that meet one or more of the following conditions:
   1.1 The total input capacity is no less than 2,500,000 Btu/h (732 kW) and one or more of the boilers are designed to operate with a nonpositive vent static pressure.
   1.2 Any stack serving the boiler system is connected to two or more boilers with a total combined input capacity of not less than 2,500,000 Btu/h (732 kW).
2. Newly installed boilers or boiler systems with a combustion air fan motor *nameplate horsepower* rating of 10 horsepower (7.46 kW) or more shall comply with one of the following :
   2.1 The fan motor shall be variable speed, or
   2.2 The fan motor shall include controls that modulate fan airflow as a function of the load to a speed 50 percent or less of design air volume.

C403.3.4.1 Boiler oxygen concentration controls. Newly installed boilers with an input capacity of 5,000,000 Btu/h (1465 kW) and steady state full-load less than 90 percent shall maintain stack-gas oxygen concentrations not greater than the values specified in Table C403.3.4.1. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to measured flue gas oxygen concentration. The use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is not permitted.

Exception: These concentration limits do not apply where 50 percent or more of the *boiler system* capacity serves Group R-2 occupancies.

TABLE C403.3.4.1
BOILER OXYGEN CONCENTRATIONS

Boiler Application	Maximum stack-gas oxygen concentration[a]
Commercial boilers or where ≤ 10% of the boiler system capacity is used for process applications at design conditions	5%
Process boilers	3%

a. Concentration levels measured by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 to 100 percent.

Exception: These concentration limits do not apply 50 percent or more of the boiler system capacity serves Group R-2 occupancies.

C403.3.4.2 Boiler turndown. *Boiler systems* with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in **Table C403.3.4.2**.

The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single-input boilers, one or more *modulating boilers* or a combination of single-input and *modulating boilers*.

TABLE C403.3.4.2
BOILER TURNDOWN

BOILER SYSTEM DESIGN INPUT (Btu/h)	MINIMUM TURNDOWN RATIO
≥ 1,000,000 and ≤ 5,000,000	3 to 1
> 5,000,000 and ≤ 10,000,000	4 to 1
> 10,000,000	5 to 1

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C403.4 Heating and cooling system controls. Heating and cooling system shall be provided with controls in accordance with **Sections C403.4.1,** through C403.4.8.

C403.4.1 Thermostatic controls. The supply of heating and cooling energy to each *zone* shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the *zone*. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, not fewer than one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

Exception: Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only *building thermal envelope* heat losses, gains or both serving one or more perimeter *zones* also served by an interior system provided that both of the following conditions are met:

1. The perimeter system includes not fewer than one thermostatic control *zone* for each *building* exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within ±45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet (15 240 mm).
2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by thermostats located within the *zones* served by the system.

C403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having supplementary electric resistance heat shall have controls that limit supplemental heat operation to only those times when one of the following applies:

1. The vapor compression cycle cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the *thermostat* setting.
2. The heat pump is operating in defrost mode.
3. The vapor compression cycle malfunctions.
4. The *thermostat* malfunctions.

C403.4.1.2 Deadband. Where used to control both heating and cooling, *zone* thermostatic controls shall: ~~be configured to provide a temperature range or deadband of not less than 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zone* is shut off or reduced to a minimum.~~

1. Have separate set points for heating and cooling, each individually adjustable,
2. Be capable of and initially configured to provide a temperature range or dead band between the two set points of not less than 5°F (3°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the zone is shut off or reduced to a minimum, and
3. Have a minimum dead band of not less than 1°F (0.5°C) when set points are adjusted.

Exceptions:

1. Thermostats requiring *manual* changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications where applicable codes or accreditation standards requiring precision in indoor temperature control ~~as *approved* by the *code official*.~~ shall be permitted to be initially configured to not less than 1°F (0.5°C) deadband.

C403.4.1.3 Set point adjustment and display. Where thermostatic control set points are capable of being adjusted by occupants or HVAC system operators, the adjustment shall be independent for the heating set point and the cooling set point; when one set point is changed, the other shall not change except as needed to maintain the minimum dead band required by Section C403.4.1.2. For thermostatic controls that display set points, both the heating and cooling set points shall be displayed simultaneously, or the set point of the currently active mode (heating or cooling) shall be displayed along with an indication of that mode.

~~C403.4.1.3~~**C403.4.1.4 Setpoint overlap restriction.** Where heating and cooling to a *zone* are controlled by ~~has a~~ separate ~~heating and a separate cooling~~zone thermostatic ~~control~~controls located within the *zone*, mechanical or software means shall be provided ~~a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be configured~~ to prevent the heating setpoint minus the deadband required by ~~from exceeding the cooling setpoint and to maintain a deadband in accordance with~~ **Section C403.4.1.2**, .

~~C403.4.1.4~~**C403.4.1.5 Heated or cooled vestibules.** The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a *thermostat* located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

Exception: Control of heating or cooling provided by site-recovered energy or transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

~~C403.4.1.5~~**C403.4.1.6 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control.** Hot water boilers that supply heat to the *building* through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

C403.4.2 Off-hour controls. Each *zone* shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an *automatic* time clock or programmable control system.

Exceptions:

1. *Zones* that will be operated continuously.
2. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a *manual* shutoff switch located with *ready access*.

C403.4.2.1 Thermostatic setback. Thermostatic setback controls shall be configured to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

C403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and shutdown. *Automatic* time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for not fewer than 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a *manual* override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

C403.4.2.3 Optimum start and stop. Optimum start and stop controls shall be provided for each heating and cooling system with direct control of individual zones. The optimum start controls shall be configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the heating and cooling system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy. The optimum stop controls shall be configured to reduce the heating and cooling system's heating temperature setpoint and increase the cooling temperature setpoint by not less than 2°F (1.11ºC) before scheduled unoccupied periods based on the thermal lag and acceptable drift in space temperature that is within comfort limits.

Exception: Dwelling units and sleeping units are not required to have optimum start controls.

C403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls. The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with **Sections C403.4.3.1,** through **C403.4.3.3,** . Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include *automatic* controls configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems composed of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146.5 kW) input design capacity shall include either a multistaged or modulating burner.

C403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system. Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

C403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system. Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a deadband between changeover from one mode to the other of not less than 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for not less than 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be not more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

C403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems. Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with **Sections C403.4.3.3.1,** through **C403.4.3.3.3,** .

C403.4.3.3.1 Temperature deadband. Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of not less than 20°F (11°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

Exception: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, deadbands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.

C403.4.3.3.2 Heat rejection. The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems in Climate Zones 3 through 8:

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an *automatic* valve shall be installed to bypass the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for any flow necessary for freeze protection, or low-leakage positive-closure dampers shall be provided.
2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an *automatic* valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open-circuit cooling tower.

3. Where an open-circuit or closed-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

C403.4.3.3.3 Two-position valve. Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 hp (7.5 kW) shall have a two-position *automatic* valve interlocked to shut off the water flow when the compressor is off.

C403.4.4 Part-load controls. Hydronic systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h (87.9 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that are configured to do all of the following:

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying *building* heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature, *building*-return water temperature or outside air temperature. The temperature shall be reset by not less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.
2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp (1.5 kW) or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment by valves that modulate or step open and close, or pumps that modulate or turn on and off as a function of load.
3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating-water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
   3.1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.
   3.2. Where pumps have *automatic* direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when *zone* heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in **Table C403.4.4** based on the *climate zone* and system served.
4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open or to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

Exceptions:

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.
2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.
3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.
4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than

50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

TABLE C403.4.4
VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND-CONTROLLED PUMPS

CHILLED WATER AND HEAT REJECTION LOOP PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	HEATING WATER PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	VSD REQUIRED FOR MOTORS WITH RATED OUTPUT OF:
0A, 0B, 1A, 1B, 2B	—	≥ 2 hp
2A, 3B	—	≥ 3 hp
3A, 3C, 4A, 4B	7, 8	≥ 5 hp
4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B	3C, 5A, 5C, 6A, 6B	≥ 7.5 hp
—	4A, 4C, 5B	≥ 10 hp
7, 8	4B	≥ 15 hp
—	2A, 2B, 3A, 3B	≥ 25 hp
—	0B, 1B	≥ 100 hp
—	0A, 1A	≥ 200 hp

For SI: 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C403.4.5 Pump isolation. Chilled water plants including more than one chiller shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

Boiler systems including more than one boiler shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the *boiler system* when a boiler is shut down.

C403.4.6 Demand responsive controls. Electric heating and cooling systems shall be provided with demand responsive controls capable of executing the following actions in response to a *demand response signal*:

1. Automatically increasing the *zone* operating cooling set point by the following values: 1°F (0.5°C), 2°F (1°C), 3°F (1.5°C), and 4°F (2°C).
2. Automatically decreasing the *zone* operating heating set point by the following values: 1°F (0.5°C), 2°F (1°C), 3°F (1.5°C), and 4°F (2°C).

Where a *demand response signal* is not available the heating and cooling system controls shall be capable of performing all other functions. Where thermostats are controlled by direct digital control including, but not limited to, an energy management system, the system shall be capable of *demand responsive control* and capable of adjusting all thermal set-points to comply. The demand responsive controls shall comply with either Section C403.4.6.1 or Section C403.4.6.2

Exceptions:

1. Group I occupancies
2. Group H occupancies
3. Controls serving *data center* systems
4. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature control as *approved* by the *code official*
5. *Buildings* that comply with Load Management measure G02 in Section C406.3.3
6. *Buildings* with energy storage with the capacity for not less than a 25 percent load reduction at peak load for a period of not less than 3 hours.

C403.4.6.1 Air conditioners and heat pumps with two or more stages of control and cooling capacity of less than 65,000 Btu/h. Thermostats for air conditioners and heat pumps with two or more stages of control and a cooling capacity less than 65,000 Btu/h (19 kW) shall be provided with a *demand responsive control* that complies with the communication and performance requirements of AHRI 1380.

C403.4.6.2 All other heating and cooling systems. Thermostats for heating and cooling systems shall be provided with a *demand responsive control* that complies with one of the following:

1. Certified OpenADR 2.0a VEN, as specified under Clause 11, Conformance
2. Certified OpenADR 2.0b VEN, as specified under Clause 11, Conformance
3. Certified by the manufacturer as being capable of responding to a *demand response signal* from a certified OpenADR 2.0b VEN by automatically implementing the control functions requested by the VEN for the equipment it controls
4. IEC 62746-10-1
5. The communication protocol required by a controlling entity, such as a utility or

service provider, to participate in an automated demand response program
6. The physical configuration and communication protocol of CTA 2045-A or CTA 2045-B.

C403.4.7 Heating and cooling system controls for operable openings to the outdoors. All doors from a *conditioned space* to the outdoors and all other operable openings from a *conditioned space* to the outdoors that are larger than 40 square feet (3.7 m^2) when fully open, shall have *automatic* controls interlocked with the heating and cooling system. The controls shall be configured to do the following within 5 minutes of opening:

1. Disable mechanical heating to the *zone* or reset the space heating temperature setpoint to 55°F (12.7°C) or less.
2. Disable mechanical cooling to the *zone* or reset the space cooling temperature setpoint to 90°F (32°C) or more. Mechanical cooling can remain enabled if the outdoor air temperature is below the space temperature.

Exceptions:

1. *Building* entrances with *automatic* closing devices.
2. Emergency exits with an *automatic* alarm that sounds when open.
3. Operable openings and doors serving enclosed spaces without a *thermostat* or heating or cooling temperature sensor.
4. Separately zoned areas associated with the preparation of food that contain appliances that contribute to the heating or cooling loads of a restaurant or similar type of occupancy.
5. Warehouses that utilize operable openings for the function of the occupancy where *approved* by the *code official* .
6. The first entrance doors where located in the *exterior wall* and are part of a vestibule system.
7. Operable openings into spaces served by radiant heating and cooling systems.
8. Alterations where walls would have to be opened solely for the purpose of meeting this requirement and where *approved* .
9. Doors served by air curtains meeting the requirements of Section C402.6.6.

C403.4.8 Humidification and dehumidification controls. Humidification and dehumidification controls shall be in accordance with this section.

C403.4.8.1 Dehumidification. *Humidistatic controls* shall not use mechanical cooling to reduce the humidity below the lower of a dew point of 55° For relative humidity of 60 percent in the coldest *zone* served by the system. Lower humidity shall be permitted where mechanical cooling is being used for temperature control.

Exceptions:

1. Where *approved* , systems serving zones where specific humidity levels are required, such as museums and hospitals, and where *humidistatic controls* are capable of and configured to maintain a dead band of at least 10 percent relative humidity where no active humidification or dehumidification takes place.
2. Systems serving zones where humidity levels are required to be maintained with precision of not more than ±5 percent relative humidity to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards or as *approved* by the authority

having jurisdiction.

C403.4.8.2 Humidification. *Humidistatic controls* shall not use fossil fuels or electricity to produce relative humidity above 30 percent in the warmest *zone* served by the system.

Exceptions:

1. Where *approved*, systems serving zones where specific humidity levels are required, such as museums and hospitals, and where *humidistatic controls* are capable of and configured to maintain a dead band of at least 10 percent relative humidity where no active humidification or dehumidification takes place.
2. Systems serving zones where humidity levels are required to be maintained with precision of not more than ±5 percent relative humidity to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards or as *approved* by the authority having jurisdiction.

C403.4.8.3 Control interlock. Where a *zone* is served by a system or systems with both humidification and dehumidification capability, means such as limit switches, mechanical stops, or, for DDC systems, software programming shall be provided capable of and configured to prevent simultaneous operation of humidification and dehumidification equipment.

Exception: Systems serving zones where humidity levels are required to be maintained with precision of not more than ±5 percent relative humidity to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards or as *approved* by the authority having jurisdiction.

C403.5 Economizers. Economizers shall comply with **Sections C403.5.1,** through **C403.5.5,** . An air or water economizer shall be provided for the following cooling systems:

1. Chilled water systems with a total cooling capacity, less cooling capacity provided with air economizers, as specified in **Table C403.5(1)**.
2. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 54,000 Btu/h (15.8 kW) in buildings having other than a *Group R* occupancy,

   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the *building* or 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW), whichever is greater.
3. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 270,000 Btu/h (79.1 kW) in buildings having a *Group R* occupancy.

   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the *building* or 1,500,000 Btu/h (440 kW), whichever is greater.

Exceptions: Economizers are not required for the following systems.

1. Individual fan systems not served by chilled water for buildings located in *Climate Zones* 0A, 0B, 1A and 1B.
2. Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to

spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.

3. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week.
4. Systems serving supermarket areas with open refrigerated casework.
5. Where the cooling efficiency is greater than or equal to the efficiency requirements in **Table C403.5(2)**.
6. Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with **Section C403.11.5, .**
7. Direct-expansion fancoils or unitary equipment with a capacity less than 54,000 Btu/h (15.8 kW) and multiple stages of compressor capacity installed with a dedicated outdoor air system.

TABLE C403.5(1)
MINIMUM CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY FOR DETERMINING ECONOMIZER COOLING REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONES (COOLING)	TOTAL CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM CAPACITY LESS CAPACITY OF COOLING UNITS WITH AIR ECONOMIZERS	
	Local water-cooled chilled-water systems	Air-cooled chilled-water systems or district chilled-water systems
0A, 1A	Economizer not required	Economizer not required
0B, 1B, 2A, 2B	960,000 Btu/h	1,250,000 Btu/h
3A, 3B, 3C, 4A, 4B, 4C	720,000 Btu/h	940,000 Btu/h
5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	1,320,000 Btu/h	1,720,000 Btu/h

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE C403.5(2)
EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCY PERFORMANCE EXCEPTION FOR ECONOMIZERS

CLIMATE ZONES	COOLING EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT (EER OR IPLV)
2A, 2B	10% efficiency improvement
3A, 3B	15% efficiency improvement
4A, 4B	20% efficiency improvement

C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling systems by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100-percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).
2. Direct expansion (DX) units that control 75,000 Btu/h (22 kW) or greater of rated capacity of the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
3. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with **Table C403.5.1**.

TABLE C403.5.1
DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS

RATING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF MECHANICAL COOLING STAGES	MINIMUM COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT[a]
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% of full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. For mechanical cooling stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact. HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase *building* heating energy use during normal operation.

Exception: Economizers on variable air volume (VAV) systems that cause *zone* level heating to increase because of a reduction in supply air temperature.

C403.5.3 Air economizers. Where economizers are required by **Section C403.5,** , air economizers shall comply with **Sections C403.5.3.1,** through **C403.5.3.5,** .

C403.5.3.1 Design capacity. Air economizer systems shall be configured to modulate outdoor air and return air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as outdoor air for cooling.

C403.5.3.2 Control signal. Economizer controls and dampers shall be configured to sequence the dampers with the mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed-air temperature.

Exception: The use of mixed-air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems controlled from space temperature (such as single-*zone* systems).

C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff. Air economizers shall be configured to automatically reduce outdoor air intake to the design minimum outdoor air quantity when outdoor air intake will not reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types for specific climates shall be chosen from **Table C403.5.3.3**. High-limit shutoff control settings for these control types shall be those specified in **Table C403.5.3.3**.

TABLE C403.5.3.3
HIGH-LIMIT SHUTOFF CONTROL SETTING FOR AIR ECONOMIZERS[b]

DEVICE TYPE	CLIMATE ZONE	REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (ECONOMIZER OFF WHEN):	
		Equation	Description
Fixed dry bulb	0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
	5A, 6A	$T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F
	0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4A	$T_{OA} > 65°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 65°F
Differential dry bulb	0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Fixed enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperatures	All	$h_{OA} > 28$ Btu/lb[a] or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[a] or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
Differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperature	All	$h_{OA} > h_{RA}$ or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

For SI: °C = (°F – 32)/1.8, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.

a. At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.
b. Devices with selectable setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air. Systems shall provide one of the following means to relieve excess outdoor air during air economizer operation to prevent overpressurizing the *building*.

1. Return or relief fan(s) meeting the requirements of Section C403.11.1.
2. Barometric or motorized damper relief path with a total pressure drop at design relief airflow rate less than 0.10 inches water column (25 Pa) from the occupied space to outdoors. Design relief airflow rate shall be the design supply airflow rate minus any continuous exhaust flows, such as toilet exhaust fans, whose makeup is provided by the economizer system.

The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid recirculation into the *building*.

C403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers. Return, exhaust/relief and outdoor air dampers used in economizers shall comply with **Section C403.7.7,** .

C403.5.4 Water-side economizers. Where economizers are required by **Section C403.5,** , water-side economizers shall comply with **Sections C403.5.4.1,** and **C403.5.4.2,** .

C403.5.4.1 Design capacity. Water economizer systems shall be configured to cool supply air by indirect evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at outdoor air temperatures of not greater than 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb.

Exceptions:

1. Systems primarily serving computer rooms in which 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 40°F (4°C) dry bulb/35°F (1.7°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.
2. Systems primarily serving computer rooms with dry cooler water economizers that satisfy 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 35°F (1.7°C) dry bulb.
3. Systems where dehumidification requirements cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb and where 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 45°F (7°C) dry bulb/40°F (4°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.

C403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system shall either have a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (45 kPa) of water or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (noneconomizer) mode.

C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics. Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units listed in the tables in **Section C403.3.2,** and variable refrigerant flow (VRF) units that are equipped with an economizer in accordance with **Sections C403.5,** through **C403.5.4,** shall include a fault detection and diagnostics system complying with the following:

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
   1.1. Outside air.
   1.2. Supply air.
   1.3. Return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).

3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
    4.1. Free cooling available.
    4.2. Economizer enabled.
    4.3. Compressor enabled.
    4.4. Heating enabled.
    4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
    4.6. The current value of each sensor.
5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for *access* by day-to-day operating or service personnel, or annunciated locally on *zone* thermostats.
7. The fault detection and diagnostics system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
    7.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
    7.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
    7.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
    7.4. Damper not modulating.
    7.5. Excess outdoor air.

C403.6 Requirements for mechanical systems serving multiple zones. **Sections C403.6.1,** through **C403.6.9,** shall apply to mechanical systems serving multiple zones.

C403.6.1 Variable air volume and multiple-zone systems. Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that have *zone* controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, recooled or mixed in each *zone* to one of the following:

1. Thirty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems without *direct digital control* (DDC) .
2. Systems with DDC where all of the following apply:
    2.1. The airflow rate in the deadband between heating and cooling does not exceed the highest of the allowed rates under Items 3, 4, 5, or 6 of this section.
    2.2. The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.
    2.3. The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.
3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum *ventilation* requirements of **Chapter 4** of the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. The minimum primary airflow rate required to meet the Simplified Procedure *ventilation* requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.1 for the *zone* and is permitted to be the average airflow rate as allowed by ASHRAE Standard 62.1
5. Any higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the system as *approved* by the *code official* .

6. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

Exception: The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

1. *Zones* or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a site-recovered, including condenser heat, or site-solar energy source.
2. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.

C403.6.2 Single-duct VAV systems, terminal devices. Single-duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

C403.6.3 Dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices. Systems that have one warm air *duct* and one cool air *duct* shall use terminal devices that are configured to reduce the flow from one *duct* to a minimum before mixing of air from the other *duct* takes place.

C403.6.4 Single-fan dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, economizers. Individual dual-duct or mixing heating and cooling systems with a single fan and with total capacities greater than 90,000 Btu/h [(26.4 kW) 7.5 tons] shall not be equipped with air economizers.

C403.6.5 Supply-air temperature reset controls. Multiple-zone HVAC systems shall include controls that are capable of and configured to automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative *building* loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be configured to reset the supply air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature. Controls that adjust the reset based on zone humidity are allowed in Climate Zones 0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C and 4 through 8. HVAC zones that are expected to experience relatively constant loads shall have maximum airflow designed to accommodate the fully reset supply-air temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent of the energy for reheating is from site-recovered or site-solar energy sources.
3. Systems in Climate Zones 0A, 1A and 3A with less than 3,000 cfm (1500 L/s) of design outside air.
4. Systems in *Climate Zone* 2A with less than 10,000 cfm (5000 L/s) of design outside air.
5. Systems in Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A and 3A with not less than 80 percent outside air and employing exhaust air energy recovery complying with **Section C403.7.4,** .

C403.6.5.1 Dehumidification control interaction. In Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A and 3A, the system design shall allow supply-air temperature reset while dehumidification is provided. When dehumidification control is active, air economizers shall be locked out.

C403.6.6 Multiple-zone VAV system *ventilation* optimization control. Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have *automatic* controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system *ventilation* efficiency (E_v) as defined by the ***International Mechanical Code***.

Exceptions:

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fan-powered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

C403.6.7 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control. Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have *automatic* controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for *ventilation* .
2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
   3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
   3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

C403.6.8 Setpoints for direct digital control. For systems with direct digital control of individual zones reporting to the central control panel, the static pressure setpoint shall be reset based on the *zone* requiring the most pressure. In such case, the setpoint is reset lower until one *zone* damper is nearly wide open. The direct digital controls shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. *Automatic* detection of any *zone* that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generation of an alarm to the system operational location.
3. Allowance for an operator to readily remove one or more *zones* from the reset algorithm.

C403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location. Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller setpoint is not greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major *duct* splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

C403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems. In addition to other requirements of **Section C403,** applicable to the provision of *ventilation* air or the exhaust of air, *ventilation* and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with **Sections C403.7.1,** through C403.7.9.

C403.7.1 Demand control ventilation. Demand control *ventilation* (DCV) shall be provided for the following:

1. Spaces with *ventilation* provided by single-zone systems where an air-side economizer is provided in accordance with Section C403.5.
2. Spaces larger than 250 square feet (23.2 m^2) in climate zones 5A, 6, 7, and 8 and

spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) in other climate zones which have a design occupant load of 15 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area, as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the International Mechanical Code, and are served by systems with one or more of the following:
2.1 An air-side economizer.
2.2 Automatic modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
2.3 A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s)

Exceptions:

1. Spaces served by systems with energy recovery in accordance with **Section C403.7.4.2,** and that have a floor area less than:
   1.1 6000 square feet (2600 m^2) in climate zone 3C.
   1.2 2000 square feet (190 m^2) in climate zones 1A, 3B, and 4B.
   1.3 1000 square feet (90 m^2) in climate zones 2A, 2B, 3A, 4A, 4C, 5 and 6.
   1.4 400 square feet (40 m^2) in climate zones 7 and 8.
2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. Spaces served by multiple-zone systems with a system design outdoor airflow less than 750 cfm (354 L/s).
4. Spaces where more than 75 percent of the space design outdoor airflow is required for makeup air that is exhausted from the space or transfer air that is required for makeup air that is exhausted from other spaces.
5. Spaces with one of the following occupancy classifications as defined in **Table 403.3.1.1** of the *International Mechanical Code*: correctional cells, education laboratories, barber, beauty and nail salons, and bowling alley seating areas.
6. Spaces where the *registered design professional* demonstrates an engineered *ventilation* system design that ~~complies with the following~~:
   6.1 ~~It prevents~~ Prevents the maximum concentration of contaminants from ~~exceeding~~ being more than that obtainable by the required rate of outdoor air *ventilation*, and
   6.2 ~~It allows~~ Allows the required minimum design rate of outdoor air to be reduced by no less than 15 percent.

C403.7.2 Parking garage ventilation systems . *Ventilation* systems employed in enclosed parking garages shall comply with Section 404.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* and the following:

1. Separate *ventilation* systems and control systems shall be provided for each *parking garage section*.
2. Control systems for each *parking garage section* shall be capable of and configured to reduce fan airflow to not less than 0.05 cfm per square foot [0.00025 m^3 /(s x m^2)] of the floor area served and not more than 20 percent of the design capacity.
3. The *ventilation* system for each *parking garage section* shall have controls and devices that result in fan motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

Exception: Garage *ventilation* systems serving a single *parking garage section* having a total *ventilation* system motor *nameplate horsepower* (*ventilation* system motor nameplate kilowatt) not exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) at *fan system design conditions* and where the *parking garage section* has no mechanical cooling or mechanical heating.

Nothing in this section shall be construed to require more than one *parking garage section* in any parking structure.

C403.7.3 Ventilation air heating control. Units that provide *ventilation* air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative *building* loads or outdoor air temperatures indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

Exception: Units that heat the airstream using only series energy recovery when representative *building* loads or outdoor air temperature indicate that the majority of zones require cooling in Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, and 4A.

C403.7.4 Energy recovery systems. Energy recovery *ventilation* systems shall be provided as specified in either **Section C403.7.4.1,** or **C403.7.4.2,** , as applicable.

C403.7.4.1 Nontransient dwelling units. Nontransient dwelling units shall be provided with outdoor air energy recovery *ventilation* systems complying with not less than one of the following:

1. The system shall have an enthalpy recovery ratio of not less than 50 percent at cooling design condition and not less than 60 percent at heating design condition.
2. The system shall have a sensible recovery efficiency (SRE) that is not less than 65 percent at 32 °F (0 °C) and, in climate zones 0A, 1A, 2A, and 3A, shall have a net moisture transfer (NMT) that is not less than 40 percent at 95 °F (35 °C). SRE and NMT shall be determined from a *listed* value or from interpolation of *listed* values, at an airflow not less than the design airflow, based on testing in accordance with CAN/CSA C439.

Exceptions:

1. Nontransient dwelling units in *Climate Zone* 3C.
2. Nontransient dwelling units with not more than 500 square feet (46 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* that are located in Climate Zones 0, 1, 2, 3, 4C and 5C .
3. *Enthalpy recovery ratio* requirements at heating design condition in Climate Zones 0, 1 and 2.
4. *Enthalpy recovery ratio* requirements at cooling design condition in Climate Zones 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8.

C403.7.4.2 Spaces other than nontransient dwelling units. Where the supply airflow rate of a fan system serving a space other than a nontransient *dwelling unit* exceeds the values specified in **Tables C403.7.4.2(1)** and **C403.7.4.2(2)**, the system shall include an energy recovery system. The energy recovery system shall provide an *enthalpy recovery ratio* of not less than 50 percent at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass or controls that permit operation of the economizer as required by **Section C403.5,** .

Exception: An energy recovery *ventilation* system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are prohibited by the ***International Mechanical Code*** .

2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include not fewer than one of the following features:
   2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems configured to reduce exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.
   2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to or greater than 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated not warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) above room setpoint, cooled to not cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) below room setpoint, with no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.
3. Systems serving spaces that are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C) and that are not cooled.
4. Heating energy recovery where more than 60 percent of the outdoor heating energy is provided from site-recovered or site-solar energy in Climate Zones 5 through 8.
5. *Enthalpy recovery ratio* requirements at heating design condition in *Climate Zones* 0, 1 and 2.
6. *Enthalpy recovery ratio* requirements at cooling design condition in *Climate Zones* 3C, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.
7. Systems in Climate Zones 0 through 4 requiring dehumidification that employ series energy and have a minimum SERR of 0.40.
8. Where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the *building* exterior is less than 75 percent of the design outdoor air flow rate.
9. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week at the outdoor air percentage covered by **Table C403.7.4.2(1)**.
10. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.
11. Commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(1)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
0B, 1B, 2B, 5C	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥ 26,000	≥ 12,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000
6B	≥ 28,000	≥ 26,5000	≥ 11,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,500
0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4A, 5A, 6A	≥ 26,000	≥ 16,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	> 120
7, 8	≥ 4,500	≥ 4,000	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,000	> 140	> 120	> 100	> 80

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

NR = Not Required.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(2)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating not less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3C	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 4C, 5C	NR	≥ 19,500	≥ 9,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000	≥ 3,000	≥ 1,500	≥ 120
0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B	≥ 2,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	≥ 500	≥ 140	≥ 120	≥ 100	≥ 80
4A, 5A, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	≥ 200	≥ 130	≥ 100	≥ 80	≥ 70	≥ 60	≥ 50	≥ 40

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

NR = Not Required.

C403.7.5 Kitchen exhaust systems. Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space shall not exceed the greater of the following:

1. The *ventilation* rate required to meet the space heating or cooling load.
2. The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent space where available transfer air is considered to be that portion of outdoor *ventilation* air not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, and not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces.

Kitchen exhaust hood systems serving Type I exhaust hoods shall be provided with demand control kitchen *ventilation* (DCKV) controls where a kitchen or kitchen/dining facility has a total Type I kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s) . DCKV systems shall be configured to provide a minimum of 50 percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates. Systems shall include controls necessary to modulate exhaust and replacement air system airflows in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle operation. Each hood shall be a factory-built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory and shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in **Table C403.7.5** .

Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

Exceptions:

1. UL 710 *listed* exhaust hoods that have a design maximum exhaust flow rate not greater than 250 cfm per linear foot of hood that serve kitchen or kitchen/dining facilities with a total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate less than 5000 cfm (2360 L/s).
2. Where allowed by the *International Mechanical Code*, an energy recovery *ventilation* system is installed on the kitchen exhaust with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust hood airflow.

TABLE C403.7.5
MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE, CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH

TYPE OF HOOD	LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT	MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT	HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT	EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT
Wall-mounted canopy	140	210	280	385
Single island	280	350	420	490
Double island (per side)	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	NA	NA
Backshelf/ Pass-over	210	210	280	NA

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NA = Not Allowed.

C403.7.6 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms. In Group R-1 buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of **Sections C403.7.6.1,** and **C403.7.6.2,** .

C403.7.6.1 Temperature setpoint controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured with three modes of temperature control.

1. When the guestroom is rented but unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint and lower the heating setpoint by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant setpoint within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom.
2. When the guestroom is unrented and unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating setpoint to not higher than 60°F (16°C). Unrented and unoccupied guestroom mode shall be initiated within 16 hours of the guestroom being continuously occupied or where a *networked guestroom control system* indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 20 minutes. A *networked guestroom control system* that is capable of returning the *thermostat* setpoints to default occupied setpoints 60 minutes prior to the time a guestroom is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cooling that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a setpoint not lower than 65-percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.
3. When the guestroom is occupied, HVAC setpoints shall return to their occupied setpoints once occupancy is sensed.

C403.7.6.2 Ventilation controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the *ventilation* and exhaust fans within 20 minutes of the occupants leaving the guestroom, or *isolation devices* shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

Exception: Guestroom *ventilation* systems are not precluded from having an *automatic* daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air *ventilation* during unrented periods at the design *ventilation* rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

C403.7.7 Shutoff dampers. Outdoor air intake and exhaust openings and stairway and shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. The dampers shall have an *air leakage* rate not greater than 4 cfm/ft^2 (20.3 L/s × m^2) of damper surface area at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) and shall be *labeled* by an *approved agency* when tested in accordance with **AMCA 500D** for such purpose.

Outdoor air intake and exhaust dampers shall be installed with *automatic* controls configured to close when the systems or spaces served are not in use or during unoccupied period warm-up and setback operation, unless the systems served require outdoor or exhaust air in accordance with the ***International Mechanical Code*** or the dampers are opened to provide intentional economizer cooling.

Stairway and elevator shaft vent dampers shall be installed with *automatic* controls configured to open upon the activation of any fire alarm initiating device of the *building*'s fire alarm system or the interruption of power to the damper, or by thermostatic control systems.

Exception: Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall be an alternative to motorized dampers for exhaust and relief openings as follows:

1. In buildings less than three stories in height above grade plane.
2. In buildings of any height located in *Climate Zones* 0, 1, 2 or 3.
3. Where the design exhaust capacity is not greater than 300 cfm (142 L/s).

Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall have an *air leakage* rate not greater than 20 cfm/ft^2 (101.6 L/s × m^2) where not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension and 40 cfm/ft^2 (203.2 L/s × m^2) where less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension. The rate of *air leakage* shall be determined at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with **AMCA 500D** for such purpose. The dampers shall be *labeled* by an *approved agency*.

C403.7.8 Occupied standby controls The following spaces shall be equipped with occupied ~~Occupied~~ standby controls~~,~~ in accordance with C403.7.8.1, ~~shall be required~~ for each ventilation *zone* ~~of a system that complies with the following~~:

~~1. All spaces served by the *zone* are required to have occupant sensor lighting controls in accordance with Section C405.2.1.~~

~~2. ASHRAE Standard 62.1 Ventilation Rate Procedure allows the ventilation air to be reduced to zero in all spaces served by the zone during occupied standby mode. Spaces meeting these criteria include:~~

~~2.1~~1. Post-secondary classrooms/lecture/training rooms
~~2.2~~2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms
~~2.3~~3. Lounges/breakrooms
~~2.4~~4. Enclosed offices
~~2.5~~5. Open plan office areas
~~2.6~~6. Corridors

Exception: Zones that are part of a multiple zone system without *automatic* zone flow control dampers.

C403.7.8.1 Occupied Standby Zone Controls Within five (5) minutes of all spaces in that *zone* entering *occupied-standby mode*, the *zone* control shall operate as follows:

1. Active heating set point shall be setback by not less than 1°F (0.55°C).
2. Active cooling set point shall be setup by not less than 1°F(0.55°C).
3. All airflow supplied to the *zone* shall be shut off whenever the space temperature is between the active heating and cooling set points.
4. Multiple *zone* systems shall comply with C403.7.8.1.1

C403.7.8.1.1 Multiple zone system controls. Multiple zone systems required to automatically reset the effective minimum outdoor air setpoint, per Section C403.6.6 shall reset the effective minimum outdoor air set-point based on a zone outdoor air requirement of zero for all zones in *occupied-standby mode*. Sequences of operation for system outside air reset shall comply with an *approved* method.

C403.7.9 Dwelling unit ventilation system A fan that is the air mover for a heating or cooling system that serves an individual *dwelling unit* shall not be used to provide outdoor air.

Exception: Where the fan efficacy is not less than 1.2 cfm of outdoor airflow per watt when there is no demand for heating or cooling.

C403.8 Fans and fan controls. Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with **Sections C403.8.1,** through **C403.8.6.1,** .

C403.8.1 Allowable fan horsepower. Where the summed fan system motor *nameplate horsepower* of an HVAC fan system is greater than 5 hp (3.7 kW) at *fan system design conditions*, it shall not be greater than the allowable total *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1) or fan system bhp (Option 2) specified in Table C403.8.1(1). Such summed HVAC fan system motor *nameplate horsepower* shall include supply fans, exhaust fans, return or relief fans, and fan-powered terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single-zone variable air volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation.

Exceptions:

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.
2. Individual exhaust fans with motor *nameplate horsepower* of 1 hp (0.746 kW) or less are exempt from the allowable fan horsepower requirement.

TABLE C403.8.1(1)
FAN POWER LIMITATION

-	LIMIT	CONSTANT VOLUME	VARIABLE VOLUME
OPTION 1: FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP	ALLOWABLE NAMEPLATE MOTOR HP	HP ≤ CFMs x 0.0011	HP ≤ CFMs x 0.0015
OPTION 2: FAN SYSTEM BHP	ALLOWABLE FAN SYSTEM BHP	BHP ≤ CFMs x 0.00094 + A	BHP ≤ CFMs x 0.0013 + A

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

where:
CFMs =The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute.
HP = The maximum combined motor *nameplate horsepower*.
BHP = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.
A = Sum of [PD × CFMd / 4131].where:
PD = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.
CFMd = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

TABLE C403.8.1(2)
FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT

DEVICE	ADJUSTMENT
CREDITS	-
Return air or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)
Return and exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15	0.9 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2 times the clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream, (2.2 x energy recovery effectiveness - 0.5) inch w.c.
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system service fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.
Deductions	-
Systems without central cooling device	-0.6 inch w.c.
Systems without central heating device	-0.3 inch w.c.
Systems with central electric resistance heat	-0.2 inch w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.w.c. = Water Column, NC = Noise Criterion

~~TABLE C403.8.1(3)~~

	~~<5,000~~	~~5,000 to <10,000~~	~~≥10,000~~	~~<5,000~~	~~5,000 to <10,000~~	~~≥10,000~~
~~W/cfm~~						
	~~0.413~~	~~0.472~~	~~0.480~~	~~0.243~~	~~0.267~~	~~0.248~~
	~~0.094~~	~~0.079~~	~~0.073~~	~~0.097~~	~~0.084~~	~~0.075~~
	~~0.210~~	~~0.177~~	~~0.165~~	~~0.217~~	~~0.185~~	~~0.168~~
	~~0.347~~	~~0.292~~	~~0.277~~	~~0.357~~	~~0.304~~	~~0.278~~
	~~0.047~~	~~0.050~~	~~0.055~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.053~~	~~0.057~~
	~~0.047~~	~~0.050~~	~~0.055~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.042~~	~~0.038~~
	~~0.071~~	~~0.060~~	~~0.073~~	~~0.061~~	~~0.063~~	~~0.075~~
	~~0.117~~	~~0.099~~	~~0.092~~	~~0.122~~	~~0.104~~	~~0.094~~
	~~0.141~~	~~0.118~~	~~0.110~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.141~~	~~0.118~~	~~0.110~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.164~~	~~0.138~~	~~0.128~~	~~0.170~~	~~0.145~~	~~0.131~~
	~~0.047~~	~~0.040~~	~~0.037~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.042~~	~~0.038~~
	~~0.141~~	~~0.118~~	~~0.110~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.233~~	~~0.196~~	~~0.184~~	~~0.241~~	~~0.205~~	~~0.186~~
	~~0.141~~	~~0.118~~	~~0.110~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.166~~	~~0.140~~	~~0.130~~	~~0.172~~	~~0.147~~	~~0.133~~
	~~0.191~~	~~0.161~~	~~0.151~~	~~0.198~~	~~0.169~~	~~0.153~~
	~~0.217~~	~~0.182~~	~~0.171~~	~~0.224~~	~~0.191~~	~~0.173~~
	~~0.242~~	~~0.204~~	~~0.191~~	~~0.250~~	~~0.213~~	~~0.193~~
	~~0.267~~	~~0.225~~	~~0.212~~	~~0.276~~	~~0.235~~	~~0.213~~
	~~0.292~~	~~0.246~~	~~0.232~~	~~0.301~~	~~0.257~~	~~0.234~~
	~~0.141~~	~~0.118~~	~~0.110~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.233~~	~~0.196~~	~~0.184~~	~~0.241~~	~~0.205~~	~~0.186~~
	~~0.049~~	~~0.042~~	~~0.038~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.043~~	~~0.039~~
	~~0.000~~	~~0.000~~	~~0.000~~	~~0.073~~	~~0.104~~	~~0.112~~
	~~0.000~~	~~0.000~~	~~0.000~~	~~0.073~~	~~0.104~~	~~0.094~~
	~~0.047~~	~~0.040~~	~~0.037~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.042~~	~~0.038~~
	~~0.035~~	~~0.030~~	~~0.027~~	~~0.036~~	~~0.032~~	~~0.029~~
	~~-0.500~~	~~-0.500~~	~~-0.500~~	~~-0.100~~	~~-0.100~~	~~-0.100~~

~~TABLE C403.8.1(4)~~

		~~All Other Fan Systems Airflow (cfm)~~			
~~<5,000~~	~~5,000 TO <10,000~~	~~≥10,000~~	~~<5,000~~	~~5,000 to <10,000~~	~~≥10,000~~
~~0.231~~	~~0.256~~	~~0.248~~	~~0.194~~	~~0.192~~	~~0.200~~
~~0.049~~	~~0.042~~	~~0.038~~	~~0.049~~	~~0.043~~	~~0.039~~
~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.128~~	~~0.114~~
~~0.173~~	~~0.148~~	~~0.133~~	~~0.173~~	~~0.150~~	~~0.135~~
~~0.199~~	~~0.170~~	~~0.153~~	~~0.199~~	~~0.173~~	~~0.155~~
~~0.225~~	~~0.192~~	~~0.173~~	~~0.226~~	~~0.196~~	~~0.176~~
~~0.250~~	~~0.214~~	~~0.193~~	~~0.252~~	~~0.218~~	~~0.196~~
~~0.276~~	~~0.236~~	~~0.213~~	~~0.277~~	~~0.240~~	~~0.216~~
~~0.302~~	~~0.258~~	~~0.234~~	~~0.303~~	~~0.263~~	~~0.236~~
~~0.146~~	~~0.125~~	~~0.112~~	~~0.146~~	~~0.128~~	~~0.114~~
~~0.122~~	~~0.105~~	~~0.094~~	~~0.122~~	~~0.107~~	~~0.096~~
~~0.122~~	~~0.105~~	~~0.094~~	~~0.122~~	~~0.107~~	~~0.096~~
~~0.061~~	~~0.053~~	~~0.047~~	~~0.061~~	~~0.054~~	~~0.048~~
~~0.085~~	~~0.074~~	~~0.066~~	~~0.085~~	~~0.075~~	~~0.067~~
~~0.241~~	~~0.206~~	~~0.186~~	~~0.242~~	~~0.210~~	~~0.188~~
~~0.241~~	~~0.206~~	~~0.186~~	~~0.242~~	~~0.210~~	~~0.188~~
~~0.036~~	~~0.032~~	~~0.029~~	~~0.036~~	~~0.032~~	~~0.029~~

~~TABLE C403.8.1(5)~~

~~TABLE C403.8.1(6)~~

	~~0.96~~	~~0.89~~
	~~1.38~~	~~1.29~~
	~~1.84~~	~~1.72~~
	~~2.73~~	~~2.57~~
	~~4.38~~	~~4.17~~
	~~6.43~~	~~6.15~~
	~~8.46~~	~~8.13~~
	~~12.47~~	~~12.03~~
	~~16.55~~	~~16.04~~
	~~20.58~~	~~19.92~~
	~~24.59~~	~~23.77~~
	~~32.74~~	~~31.70~~
	~~40.71~~	~~39.46~~
	~~48.50~~	~~47.10~~
	~~60.45~~	~~58.87~~
	~~80.40~~	~~78.17~~

C403.8.1.1

C403.8.1.2

C403.8.2 Motor nameplate horsepower. For each fan, the fan brake horsepower (bhp) shall be indicated on the *construction documents* and the selected motor shall be not larger than the first available motor size greater than the following:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp (4476 W), 1.5 times the fan brake horsepower.
2. For fans 6 bhp (4476 W) and larger, 1.3 times the fan brake horsepower.

Exceptions:

1. Fans equipped with electronic speed control devices to vary the fan airflow as a function of load.
2. Fans with a fan nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
3. Systems complying with **Section C403.8.1,** *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1).
4. Fans with motor *nameplate horsepower* less than 1 hp (746 W).

C403.8.3 Fan efficiency. Each fan and *fan array* shall have a fan energy index (FEI) of not less than 1.00 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with **AMCA 208** by an *approved* independent testing laboratory and *labeled* by the manufacturer. Each fan and *fan array* used for a variable-air-volume system shall have an FEI of not less than 0.95 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with **AMCA 208** by an *approved* independent testing laboratory and *labeled* by the manufacturer. The FEI for fan arrays shall be calculated in accordance with **AMCA 208** Annex C.

Exceptions: The following fans are not required to have a fan energy index:

1. Fans that are not embedded fans with motor *nameplate horsepower* of less than 1.0 hp (0.75 kW) or with a nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
2. Embedded fans that have a motor *nameplate horsepower* of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less, or with a *fan system electrical input power* of 4.1 kW or less.
3. Multiple fans operated in series or parallel as the functional equivalent of a single fan that have a combined motor *nameplate horsepower* of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less or with a *fan system electrical input power* of 4.1 kW or less.
4. Fans that are part of equipment covered in **Section C403.3.2,** .
5. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an *approved agency* for air or energy performance.
6. Ceiling fans, which are defined as nonportable devices suspended from a ceiling or overhead structure for circulating air via the rotation of the blades.
7. Fans used for moving gases at temperatures above 482°F (250°C).
8. Fans used for operation in explosive atmospheres.
9. Reversible fans used for tunnel *ventilation*.
10. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.
11. Fans outside the scope of **AMCA 208**.

C403.8.4 Fractional hp fan motors. Motors for fans that are not less than $^{1}/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) and are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent, rated in accordance with **DOE 10 CFR 431**. These motors shall have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. The use of belt-driven fans to sheave adjustments for airflow balancing instead of a varying motor speed shall be permitted.

Exceptions: The following motors are not required to comply with this section

1. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that only provide heating to the space served.
2. Motors in space-conditioning equipment that comply with **Section C403.3.2,** or **Sections C403.8.1,** . through **C403.8.3,** .
3. Motors that comply with **Section C405.8,** .

C403.8.5 Low-capacity ventilation fans. Mechanical *ventilation* system fans with motors less than $^{1}/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) in capacity shall meet the efficacy requirements of **Table C403.8.5,** at one or more rating points. Airflow shall be tested in accordance with the test procedure referenced by Table C403.8.5 and listed. The airflow shall be reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy shall be reported in the product listing or shall be derived from the input power and airflow values reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ERV, balanced, and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.2 inch w.c. (49.85 Pa). Fan efficacy for ducted range hoods, bathroom, and utility room fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.1 inch w.c. (24.91 Pa).

Exceptions:

1. Where *ventilation* fans are a component of a *listed* heating or cooling appliance.
2. Dryer exhaust *duct* power ventilators, domestic range hoods and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.
3. Fans in radon mitigation systems.
4. Fans not covered within the scope of the test methods referenced in Table C403.8.5.
5. Ceiling fans regulated under 10 CFR 430 Appendix U.

TABLE C403.8.5
LOW-CAPACITY VENTILATION FAN EFFICACY[a]

SYSTEM TYPE	AIRFLOW RATE (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/ WATT)	TEST PROCEDURE
Balanced ventilation system without heat or energy recovery	Any	1.2[a]	ASHRAE Standard 51 (ANSI/AMCA Standard 210)
HRV, ERV	Any	1.2	CAN/CSA 439-18
Range hood	Any	2.8	ASHRAE 51 (ANSI/AMCA Standard 210)
In-line supply or exhaust fan	Any	3.8	
Other exhaust fan	≤90	2.8	
	≥90 and <200	3.5	
	≥200	4.0	

For SI: 1 cfm/ft = 0.47 L/s.

a. For balanced systems, HRVs, and ERVs, determine the efficacy as the outdoor airflow divided by the total fan power.

C403.8.6 Fan control. Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with **Section C403.8.6.1,** and as required for specific systems provided in **Section C403,** .

C403.8.6.1 Fan airflow control. Each cooling system listed in **Table C403.8.6.1** shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control. Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and *ventilation*-only operation.
2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed the fan system shall draw not more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and *ventilation*-only operation.
3. Units that include an air-side economizer in accordance with **Section C403.5,** shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

Exceptions:

1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide *ventilation air* and the indoor fan cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the ***International Mechanical Code*** at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined in **Section C403.8.6,** , the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required *ventilation air*.

TABLE C403.8.6.1
COOLING SYSTEMS

COOLING SYSTEM TYPE	FAN MOTOR SIZE	MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY
DX cooling	Any	≥ 65,000 Btu/h
Chilled water and evaporative cooling	≥ $^{1}/_{4}$ hp	Any

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C403.8.6.2 Intermittent exhaust control for bathrooms and toilet rooms Where an exhaust system serving a bathroom or toilet room is designed for intermittent operation, the exhaust system shall be provided with *manual*-on capability and one or more of the following controls:

1. A timer control that has a minimum setpoint not greater than 30 minutes.
2. An *occupant sensor control* that automatically turns off exhaust fans within 30 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
3. A humidity control capable of *manual* or *automatic* adjustment from a minimum setpoint not greater than 50 percent to a maximum setpoint not greater than 80 percent relative humidity.
4. A contaminant control that responds to a particle or gaseous concentration.

Exception: Bathroom and toilet room exhaust systems serving as an integral component of an outdoor air *ventilation* system in Group R-2, R-3, and R-4 occupancies shall not be required to provide controls other than *manual* on capability.

An off setpoint shall not be used to comply with a minimum setpoint requirement.

C403.9 Large-diameter ceiling fans. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and *labeled* in accordance with **AMCA 230** and shall meet the efficiency requirements of Table C403.9 and Section C403.9.1.

TABLE C403.9
CEILING FAN EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

Equipment Type	Minimum Efficiency[b,c]	Test procedure
Large-diameter ceiling fan for applications outside the U.S.[c]	CFEI ≥ 1.00 at high (maximum) speed CFEI ≥ 1.31 at 40% of high speed or the nearest speed that is not less than 40% of high speed	10 CFR 430 Appendix U or AMCA Standard 230 and AMCA Standard 208 (for FEI calculations)
Large-diameter ceiling fan	CFEI ≥ 1.00 at high (maximum) speed; and CFEI ≥ 1.31 at 40% of high speed or the nearest speed that is not less than 40% of high speed	10 CFR 430 Appendix U

a. The minimum efficiency requirements at both high speed and 40% of maximum speed shall be met or exceeded to comply with this code.
b. Ceiling fans are regulated as consumer products by 10 CFR 430.
c. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

C403.9.1 Ceiling Fan Energy Index (CFEI). The Ceiling Fan Energy Index shall be calculated as the ratio of the electric input power of a reference large-diameter ceiling fan to the electric input power of the actual *large-diameter ceiling fan* as calculated in accordance with AMCA 208 with the following modifications to the calculations for the reference fan: using an airflow constant (Q) of 26,500 cfm (12.507 m^3/s), a pressure constant (P) of 0.0027 in. of water (0.6719 Pa), and fan efficiency constant (η) of 42 percent.

C403.10 Buildings with High-Capacity Space-Heating Gas Boiler Systems. Gas hot-water boiler systems for space heating with system input ~~capacity~~ capacities of ~~at least~~ not less than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) ~~but not more~~ and not greater than 10,000,000 Btu/h (2931 kW) in new buildings shall comply with Sections C403.10.1 and C403.10.2

Exceptions:

1. Where 25 percent of the annual space heating requirement is provided by *on-site renewable energy*, site-recovered energy, or heat recovery chillers.
2. Space heating boilers installed in individual dwelling units.
3. Where 50 percent or more of the design heating load is served using perimeter convective heating, radiant ceiling panels, or both.
4. Individual gas boilers with input capacity less than 300,000 Btu/h (87 kW) shall not be included in the calculations of the total system input or total system efficiency.

C403.10.1 Boiler Efficiency. Gas hot-water boilers shall have a thermal efficiency (E_t) of not less than 90 percent where rated in accordance with the test procedures in Table C403.3.2(6). Systems with multiple boilers are allowed to meet this requirement where the space heating input provided by equipment with thermal efficiency (E_t) above or below 90 percent provides an input capacity-weighted average thermal efficiency of not less than 90 percent. For boilers rated only for combustion efficiency, the calculation for the input capacity-weighted average thermal efficiency shall use the combustion efficiency value.

C403.10.2 Hot-Water Distribution System Design. The hot-water distribution system shall be designed to meet the following:

1. Coils and other heat exchangers shall be selected so that at design conditions the hot water return temperature entering the boilers is 120°F (48.9 ºC) or less.
2. Under all operating conditions, the water temperature entering the boiler is not greater than 120°F (48.9 ºC), or the flow rate of supply hot water that recirculates directly into the return system, such as by three-way valves or minimum flow bypass controls, shall be no greater than 20 percent of the design flow of the boilers.

C403.11 Heat rejection equipment. Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, open-circuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

Exception: Heat rejection devices where energy usage is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in **Tables C403.3.2(6)** and **C403.3.2(7)**.

C403.11.1 Fan speed control. Each fan system powered by an individual motor or array of motors with connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Fans serving multiple refrigerant or fluid cooling circuits.
2. Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

C403.11.2 Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment. Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall be controlled to operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components and so that all fans operate at the same fan speed required for the instantaneous cooling duty, as opposed to staged on and off operation. The minimum fan speed shall be the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive system in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C403.11.3 Limitation on centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers. Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 1,100 gpm (4164 L/m) or greater at 95°F (35°C) condenser water return, 85°F (29°C) condenser water supply, and 75°F (24°C) outdoor air wet-bulb temperature shall meet the energy efficiency requirement for axial fan open-circuit cooling towers listed in ~~**Table C403.3.2(8).**~~ Table C403.3.2(7).

Exception: Centrifugal open-circuit cooling towers that are designed with inlet or discharge ducts or require external sound attenuation.

C403.11.4 Tower flow turndown. Open-circuit cooling towers used on water-cooled chiller systems that are configured with multiple- or variable-speed condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all open-circuit cooling tower cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump at its minimum expected flow rate or at 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

C403.11.5 Heat recovery for service water heating. Condenser heat recovery shall be installed for heating or reheating of service hot water provided that the facility operates 24 hours a day, the total installed heat capacity of water-cooled systems exceeds 6,000,000 Btu/hr (1758 kW) of heat rejection, and the design *service water heating* load exceeds 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW).

The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of the following:

1. Sixty percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions.
2. The preheating required to raise the peak service hot water draw to 85°F (29°C).

Exceptions:

1. Facilities that employ condenser heat recovery for space heating or reheat purposes with a heat recovery design exceeding 30 percent of the peak water-cooled condenser load at design conditions.
2. Facilities that provide 60 percent of their *service water heating* from site solar or site recovered energy or from other sources.

C403.11.6 Heat recovery for space conditioning in healthcare facilities. Where heated water is used for space heating, a heat pump chiller meeting the requirements of Table

C403.3.2(15) for heat recovery that uses the cooling system return water as the heat source shall be installed where the following are true:

1. The *building* is a Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancy.
2. The total design chilled water capacity for the Group I-2,Condition 2 occupancy, either air cooled or water cooled, required at cooling design conditions exceeds 3,600,000 Btu/h (1100 kw) of cooling.
3. Simultaneous heating, including reheat, and cooling occurs above 60°F (16°C) outdoor air temperature.

The heat recovery system shall have a cooling capacity of not less than 7 percent of the total design chilled water capacity of the Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancy at peak design conditions.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings that provide 60 percent or more of their reheat energy from *on-site renewable energy* or other site-recovered energy. *On-site renewable energy* used to meet Sections C405.15.1 or C406.3.1 shall not be used to meet this exception.
2. Buildings in Climate Zones 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.

C403.12 Refrigeration equipment performance. Refrigeration equipment performance shall be determined in accordance with **Sections C403.12.1,** and **C403.12.2,** for commercial refrigerators, freezers, refrigerator-freezers, walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers and refrigeration equipment. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

Exception: Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers regulated under federal law in accordance with Subpart R of **DOE 10 CFR 431**.

C403.12.1 Commercial refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers and refrigeration. Refrigeration equipment, defined in **DOE 10 CFR Part 431.62**, shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of **Table C403.12.1** when tested and rated in accordance with **AHRI Standard 1200**.

TABLE C403.12.1
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS AND REFRIGERATION

EQUIPMENT CATEGORY	CONDENSING UNIT CONFIGURATION	EQUIPMENT FAMILY	RATING TEMP., °F	OPERATING TEMP., °F	EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATION[a, c]	MAXIMUM DAILY ENERGY CONSUMPTION, kWh/day[d, e]	TEST STANDARD
Remote condensing commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers	Remote (RC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.RC.M	0.64 × TDA + 4.07	**AHRI 1200**
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.RC.M	0.66 × TDA + 3.18	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.RC.M	0.35 × TDA + 2.88	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	0.55 × TDA + 6.88	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.RC.M	0.15 × TDA + 1.95	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.RC.L	0.49 × TDA + 2.61	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.RC.M	0.16 × TDA + 0.13	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.RC.L	0.34 × TDA + 0.26	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.RC.M	0.44 × TDA + 0.11	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.RC.L	0.93 × TDA + 0.22	
Self-contained commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers with and without doors	Self-contained (SC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.SC.M	1.69 × TDA + 4.71	**AHRI 1200**
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.SC.L	4.25 × TDA + 11.82	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.SC.M	1.70 × TDA + 4.59	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.SC.L	4.26 × TDA + 11.51	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.SC.M	0.72 × TDA + 5.55	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	1.90 × TDA + 7.08	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.SC.M	0.10 × V + 0.86	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.SC.L	0.29 × V + 2.95	

		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 1.36	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.SC.L	0.22 × V + 1.38	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.SC.M	0.06 × V + 0.37	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.SC.L	0.08 × V + 1.23	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 0.91	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.SC.L	0.06 × V + 1.12	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.SC.M	0.52 × TDA + 1.00	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.SC.L	1.10 × TDA + 2.10	
Self-contained commercial refrigerators with transparent doors for pull-down temperature applications	Self-contained (SC)	Pull-down (PD)	38 (M)	≥ 32	PD.SC.M	0.11 × V + 0.81	**AHRI 1200**
Commercial ice cream freezers	Remote (RC)	Vertical open (VOP)	-15 (I)	≤ -5[b]	VOP.RC.I	2.79 × TDA + 8.70	**AHRI 1200**
		Semivertical open (SVO)			SVO.RC.I	2.79 × TDA + 8.70	
		Horizontal open (HZO)			HZO.RC.I	0.70 × TDA + 8.74	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)			VCT.RC.I	0.58 × TDA + 3.05	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)			HCT.RC.I	0.40 × TDA + 0.31	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)			VCS.RC.I	0.25 × V + 0.63	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)			HCS.RC.I	0.25 × V + 0.63	
		Service over counter (SOC)			SOC.RC.I	1.09 × TDA + 0.26	
	Self-contained (SC)	Vertical open (VOP)			VOP.SC.I	5.40 × TDA + 15.02	**AHRI 1200**
		Semivertical open (SVO)			SVO.SC.I	5.41 × TDA + 14.63	
		Horizontal open (HZO)			HZO.SC.I	2.42 × TDA + 9.00	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)			VCT.SC.I	0.62 × TDA + 3.29	

		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)			HCT.SC.I	0.56 × TDA + 0.43	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)			VCS.SC.I	0.34 × V + 0.88	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)			HCS.SC.I	0.34 × V + 0.88	
		Service over counter (SOC)			SOC.SC.I	1.53 × TDA + 0.36	

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m³, °C = (°F – 32)/1.8.

a. The meaning of the letters in this column is indicated in the columns to the left.
b. Ice cream freezer is defined in DOE 10 CFR 431.62 as a commercial freezer that is designed to operate at or below -5 °F and that the manufacturer designs, markets or intends for the storing, displaying or dispensing of ice cream.
c. Equipment class designations consist of a combination [in sequential order separated by periods (AAA).(BB).(C)] of the following:
   - (AAA)—An equipment family code (VOP = vertical open, SVO = semivertical open, HZO = horizontal open, VCT = vertical closed transparent doors, VCS = vertical closed solid doors, HCT = horizontal closed transparent doors, HCS = horizontal closed solid doors, and SOC = service over counter);
   - (BB)—An operating mode code (RC = remote condensing and SC = self-contained); and
   - (C)—A rating temperature code [M = medium temperature (38°F), L = low temperature (0°F), or I = ice cream temperature (-15°F)].
   - For example, “VOP.RC.M” refers to the “vertical open, remote condensing, medium temperature” equipment class.
d. V is the volume of the case (ft^3) as measured in **AHRI 1200**, Appendix C.
e. TDA is the total display area of the case (ft^2) as measured in **AHRI 1200**, Appendix D.

C403.12.2 Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers. *Walk-in cooler* and *walk-in freezer* refrigeration systems, except for walk-in process cooling refrigeration systems as defined in **DOE 10 CFR 431.302**, shall meet the requirements of ~~**Tables C403.11.2.1(1)**, **C403.11.2.1(2)** and **C403.11.2.1(3)**.~~ Tables C403.12.2.1(1), C403.12.2.1(2) and C403.12.2.1(3).

C403.12.2.1 Performance standards. *Walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall meet the requirements of ~~**Tables C403.11.2.1(1)**, **C403.11.2.1(2)** and **C403.11.2.1(3)**.~~ Tables C403.12.2.1(1), C403.12.2.1(2), and C403.12.2.1(3).

TABLE C403.12.2.1(1)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER DISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]	TEST PROCEDURE
Display door, medium temperature	DD, M	$0.04 \times A_{dd} + 0.41$	10 CFR 431
Display door, low temperature	DD, L	$0.15 \times A_{dd} + 0.29$	10 CFR 431

a. A_{dd} is the surface area (ft^2)of the display door.

TABLE C403.12.2.1(2)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER NONDISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]	TEST PROCEDURE
Passage door, medium temperature	PD, M	$0.05 \times A_{nd} + 1.7$	10 CFR 431
Passage door, low temperature	PD, L	$0.14 \times A_{nd} + 4.8$	10 CFR 431
Freight door, medium temperature	FD, M	$0.04 \times A_{nd} + 1.9$	10 CFR 431
Freight door, low temperature	FD, L	$0.12 \times A_{nd} + 5.6$	10 CFR 431

a. A_{nd} is the surface area (ft^2)of the nondisplay door.

TABLE C403.12.2.1(3)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER REFRIGERATION SYSTEM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MINIMUM ANNUAL WALK-IN ENERGY FACTOR AWEF (Btu/W-h)[a]	TEST PROCEDURE
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, indoor system	DC.M.I	5.61	AHRI 1250
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, outdoor system	DC.M.O	7.60	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, < 6,500	$9.091 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 1.81$	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, ≥ 6,500	2.40	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, < 6,500	$6.522 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 2.73$	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, ≥ 6,500	3.15	
Unit cooler, medium	UC.M	9.00	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) < 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, < 15,500	$1.575 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 3.91$	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, ≥ 15,500	4.15	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. q_{net} is net capacity (Btu/h) as determined in accordance with **AHRI 1250**.

C403.12.3 Refrigeration systems. Refrigerated display cases, *walk-in coolers* or *walk-in freezers* that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a *condensing unit*, shall comply with **Sections C403.12.3.1,** and **C403.12.3.2,** .

Exception: Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and super-critical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

C403.12.3.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems. Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design *saturated condensing temperatures* for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for low-*temperature refrigeration systems*, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for *medium temperature refrigeration systems* where the *saturated condensing temperature* for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.
2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.
3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air- or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:
   3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.
   3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wet-bulb temperature.
4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.
5. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

C403.12.3.2 Compressor systems. Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

   Exception: Controls are not required for the following:
   1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.
   2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low-temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The sub-cooled

liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature setpoint of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate compressor suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.

2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with ~~**Table C403.12.3**, .~~Table C403.13.3(1) or Table C403.13.3(2).

3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

C403.13 Construction of HVAC system elements. Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with **Sections C403.13.1,** through **C403.13.3.1,** .

C403.13.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing. Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with not less than R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces and where located outside the *building* with not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 0 through 4 and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8. Ducts located underground beneath buildings shall be insulated as required in this section or have an equivalent thermal distribution efficiency. Underground ducts utilizing the thermal distribution efficiency method shall be *listed* and *labeled* to indicate the *R*-value equivalency. Where located within a *building thermal envelope* assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the *building* exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 0 through 4 and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8.

Exceptions:

1. Where located within equipment.
2. Where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the *duct* or plenum is not greater than 15°F (8°C).

Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with **Section 603.9,** of the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.13.2 Duct construction. Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the ***International Mechanical Code***.

C403.13.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the *duct* system shall be clearly indicated on the *construction documents* in accordance with the ***International Mechanical Code***.

Exception: Locking-type longitudinal joints and seams, other than the snap-lock and button-lock types, need not be sealed as specified in this section.

C403.13.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) but less than

3 inches w.g. (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with **Section C403.13.1,** . Pressure classifications specific to the *duct* system shall be clearly indicated on the *construction documents* in accordance with the ***International Mechanical Code.***

C403.13.2.3 High-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with **Section C403.13.1,** . In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of *air leakage* (CL) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-10.

$$CL = F / P^{0.65}$$

(Equation 4-10)

where:

F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of *duct* surface.
P = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the *duct* area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

C403.13.3 Piping insulation. Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.13.3(1) or Table C403.13.3(2).

Exceptions:

1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to **AHRI 440** (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and **AHRI 840**, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).
7. In radiant heating systems, sections of piping intended by design to radiate heat.

TABLE C403.13.3(1)
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS (in inches or R value)[a, c]

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY			NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	Conductivity Btu × in./(h × ft^2 × °F)[b]	Mean Rating Temperature, °F	Inches R Value	< 1	1 to < 1 $^1/_2$	1$^1/_2$ to < 4	4 to < 8	> 8
				Minimum Insulation Thickness (inches)				
> 350	0.32–0.34	250	Inches	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
			R Value	R32	R36	R34	R26	R21
251–350	0.29–0.32	200	Inches	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
			R Value	R20	R29	R32	R24	R20
201–250	0.27–0.30	150	Inches	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
			R Value	R17	R17	R17	R15	R13
141–200	0.25–0.29	125	Inches	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
			R Value	R9	R9	R11	R10	R9
105–140	0.21–0.28	100	Inches	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
			R Value	R5	R9	R8	R8	R7
40–60	0.21–0.27	75	Inches	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
			R Value	R2	R2	R5	R5	R4
< 40	0.20–0.26	50	Inches	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5
			R Value	R6	R9	R9	R8	R7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. For piping smaller than 1$^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch (25.4 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b but not to a thickness less than 1 inch (25.4 mm).

b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:

$$T = r\,[(1 + t/r)^{Kk} - 1]$$

where:
T = Minimum insulation thickness.
r = Actual outside radius of pipe.
t = Insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size.

K = Conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu × in/h × ft^2 × °F).
k = The upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch (25.4 mm).

TABLE C403.13.3(2)
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION R-Value[a]

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	<1	1 TO <1 1/2	1 1/2 TO <4	4 TO <8	≥8
Minimum Insulation R-Value					
>350	R32	R36	R34	R26	R21
251-350	R20	R29	R32	R24	R20
201-250	R17	R17	R17	R15	R13
141-200	R9	R9	R11	R10	R9
105-140	R5	R9	R8	R8	R7
40-60	R2	R2	R5	R5	R4
≤40	R6	R9	R9	R8	R7

For SI: R-1 = RSI-0.176228, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. The R-value of cylindrical piping insulation shall be determined as follows:

R=(ro(In(ro/ri)))/k

where:

R = The interior R-value of the cylindrical piping insulation in Btu x ft^2 x °F/h

ro = The outer radius of the piping insulation in inches

ri = The inner radius of the piping insulation in inches

k = the thermal conductivity of the insulation material in Btu x in/h x ft^2 x °F

C403.13.3.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to the weather shall be protected from physical damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind . The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. The protection shall be removable and reuseable for not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the connection to the equipment piping for maintenance. Adhesive tape shall not be permitted as a means of insulation protection.

C403.14 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope. Mechanical systems providing heat outside of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with **Sections C403.14.1,** through **C403.14.4,** .

C403.14.1 Heating outside a building. Systems installed to provide heat outside a *building* shall be radiant systems.

Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically de-energized when occupants are not present.

C403.14.2 Snow- and ice-melt system controls. Snow- and ice-melting systems shall include *automatic* controls configured to shut off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an *automatic* or *manual* control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C).

C403.14.3 Roof and gutter deicing controls. Roof and gutter deicing systems, including but not limited to self-regulating cable, shall include *automatic* controls that are configured to shut off the system when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C) and that include one of the following:

1. A moisture sensor configured to shut off the system in the absence of moisture, or
2. A daylight sensor or other means configured to shut off the system between sunset and sunrise.

C403.14.4 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include *automatic* controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

C403.15 Dehumidification in spaces for plant growth and maintenance. Equipment that dehumidifies *indoor grow* and greenhouse spaces shall be one or more of the following:

1. Dehumidifiers tested in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 430 and DOE 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix X or X1.
2. *Integrated HVAC system* with on-site heat recovery designed to fulfill not less than 75 percent of the annual energy for dehumidification reheat;
3. Chilled water system with on-site heat recovery designed to fulfill not less than 75 percent of the annual energy for dehumidification reheat; or
4. Solid or liquid desiccant dehumidification system for system designs that require dewpoint of not more than 50°F (10°C).

C403.16 Service Water Pressure-Booster Systems. Service water pressure-booster systems shall be designed such that the following apply:

1. One or more pressure sensors shall be used to vary pump speed and/or start and

stop pumps. The sensors shall either be located near the critical fixtures that determine the pressure required, or logic shall be employed that adjusts the set point to simulate operation of remote sensors.

2. No devices shall be installed for the purpose of reducing the pressure of all of the water supplied by any booster system pump or booster system, except for safety devices.
3. No booster system pumps shall operate when there is no service water flow.

C403.17 Clean water pumps. Clean water pumps meeting all the following criteria shall achieve a PEI rating not greater than 1.0:

1. Shaft input power is greater than or equal to 1.0 hp (0.75 kW) and less than or equal to 200 hp (149.1 kW) at its BEP.
2. Designated as either an End suction Close-coupled, End Suction Frame Mounted, In-line, Radially Split Vertical, or Submersible Turbine pump.
3. A flow rate of 25 gal/min (1.58 L/s) or greater at its best efficiency point (BEP) at full impeller diameter
4. Maximum head of 459 ft at its BEP at full impeller diameter and the number of stages required for testing
5. Design temperature range from 14°F (-10°C) to 248°F (120°C)
6. Designed to operate with either:
   6.1 A 2- or 4-pole induction motor, or
   6.2 a non-induction motor with a speed of rotation operating range that includes speeds of rotation between 2880 and 4320 rpm and/or 1440 and 2160 rpm, and
   6.3 in either (1) or (2), the driver and impeller must rotate at the same speed
7. For submersible turbine pumps, a 6 inch (152 mm) or smaller bowl diameter
8. For end-suction close-coupled pumps and end-suction frame-mounted/own bearings pumps, specific speed less than or equal to 5000 rpm when calculated using U.S. customary units

Exceptions: The following pumps are exempt from these requirements:

1. Fire pumps
2. Self-priming pumps
3. Prime-assisted pumps
4. Magnet-driven pumps
5. Pumps designed to be used in a nuclear facility subject to 10 CFR 50, “Domestic Licensing of Production and Utilization Facilities.”
6. Pumps meeting the design and construction requirements set forth in U.S. Military Specification MIL-P-17639F, “Pumps, Centrifugal, Miscellaneous Service, Naval Shipboard Use” (as amended); MIL-P-17881D, “Pumps, Centrifugal, Boiler Feed, (Multi-Stage)” (as amended); MIL-P-17840C, “Pumps, Centrifugal, Close-Coupled, Navy Standard (For Surface Ship Application)” (as amended); MIL-P-18682D, “Pump, Centrifugal, Main Condenser Circulating, Naval Shipboard” (as amended); MIL-P-18472G, “Pumps, Centrifugal, Condensate, Feed Booster, Waste Heat Boiler, And Distilling Plant” (as amended).

SECTION C404
SERVICE WATER HEATING

C404.1 General. This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency. Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of **Table C404.2**. The efficiency shall be verified through data furnished by the manufacturer of the equipment or through certification under an *approved* certification program. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of **Table C404.2**.

TABLE C404.2
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	DRAW PATTERN	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[a]	TEST PROCEDURE[b]
Electric Table-top water heaters[c]	≤12 kW	≥ 20 gal ≤ 120 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.6323 – (0.0058 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9188 – (0.0031 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9577 – (0.0023 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9884 – (0.0016 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
Electric Storage water heaters[e,f]: resistance and heat pump	≤12 kW	≥ 20 gal ≤ 55 gal[f]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.8808 – (0.0008 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9254 – (0.0003 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9307 – (0.0002 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9349 – (0.0001 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	≤12 kW	> 55 gal ≤120 gal[f]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 1.9236 – (0.0011 × Vr) UEF ≥ 2.0440 – (0.0011 × Vr) UEF ≥ 2.1171 – (0.0011 × Vr) UEF ≥ 2.2418 – (0.0011 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
Electric Storage water heaters[e,f,l]	> 12 kW	-	-	(0.3 + 27/Vm), %h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106 App B
Grid-enabled water heaters[g]	-	>75 gal d	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 1.0136 – (0.0028 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9984 – (0.0014 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9853 – (0.0010 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.9720 – (0.0007 × Vr)	10 CFR 430 Appendix E
Electric Instantaneous water heaters[h]	≤12 kW	< 2 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.91 UEF ≥ 0.91 UEF ≥ 0.91 UEF ≥ 0.92	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	>12 kW & ≤ 58.6 kW[i]	≤ 2 gal & ≤180ºF	All	UEF ≥ 0.80	DOE 10 CFR Part 430

Gas Storage water heaters[e,l]	≤ 75,000 Btu/h	≥20 gal & ≤ 55 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.3456 – (0.0020 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.5982 – (0.0019 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.6483 – (0.0017 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.6920 – (0.0013 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	≤ 75,000 Btu/h	> 55 gal & ≤ 100 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.6470 – (0.0006 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.7689 – (0.0005 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.7897 – (0.0004 × Vr) UEF ≥ 0.8072 – (0.0003 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	> 75,000 Btu/h and ≤ 105,000 Btu/h[j,k]	≤ 120 gal & ≤180ºF	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.2674-0.0009 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.5362-0.0012 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.6002-0.0011 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.6597-0.0009 x Vr	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	> 105,000 Btu/h[k]	-	-	80% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Gas Instantaneous water heaters[i]	> 50,000 Btu/h and < 200,000 Btu/h[k]	< 2 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.80 UEF ≥ 0.81 UEF ≥ 0.81 UEF ≥ 0.81	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h[k]	< 10 gal	-	80% Et	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h[k]	≥10 gal	-	80% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	

Oil Storage water heaters[e,l]	≤ 105,000 Btu/h	≤ 50 gal[d]	Very small Low Medium High	UEF = 0.2509 – (0.0012 × Vr) UEF = 0.5330 – (0.0016 × Vr) UEF = 0.6078 – (0.0016 × Vr) UEF = 0.6815 – (0.0014 × Vr)	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	> 105,000 Btu/h and ≤ 140,000 Btu/h[l]	≤ 120 gal & ≤180ºF	Very small Low Medium High	UEF ≥ 0.2932-0.0015 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.5596-0.0018 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.6194-0.0016 x Vr UEF ≥ 0.6740-0.0013 x Vr	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	>140,000 Btu/h	All	-	80% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Oil Instantaneous water heaters[h,l]	≤ 210,000 Btu/h	< 2 gal	-	80% Et EF ≥ 0.59 - 0.0005 x V	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. E
	> 210,000 Btu/h	< 10 gal	-	80% Et	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 10 gal	-	78% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil[h]	≥300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	< 10 gal	-	80% Et	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Hot water supply boilers, gas[i,l]	≥300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 10 gal	-	80% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Hot water supply boilers, oil[h,l]	≥300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 10 gal	-	78% Et SL ≤ (Q/800 +110√V), Btu/h	DOE 10 CFR 431.106
Pool heaters, gas[d]	All	_[f]	-	82% Et	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. P

Heat pump pool heaters	All	50°F db 44.2°F wb outdoor air 80.0°F entering water	-	4.0 COP	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 App. P
Unfired storage tanks	All	-	-	Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h-ft2-°F)/Btu	(none)

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

a. Thermal efficiency (Et) is a minimum requirement, while standby loss is a maximum requirement. In the standby loss equation, V is the rated volume in gallons and Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. Vm is the measured volume in the tank in gallons. Standby loss for electric water heaters is in terms of %/h and denoted by the term "S," and standby loss for gas and oil water heaters is in terms of Btu/h and denoted by the term "SL" Draw pattern (DP) refers to the water draw profile in the Uniform Energy Factor (UEF) test. UEF and Energy Factor (EF) are minimum requirements. In the UEF standard equations, Vr refers to the rated volume in gallons.

b. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification, including the year version, of the referenced test procedure.

c. A tabletop water heater is a storage water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than three feet (0.91 m) in height and has a ratio of input capacity (Btu/h) to tank volume (gal) < 4000.

d. Water heaters or gas pool heaters in this category are regulated as consumer products by the U.S.DOE as defined in 10 CFR 430.

e. Storage water heaters have a ratio of input capacity (Btu/h) to tank volume (gal)<4000.

f. Efficiency requirements for electric storage water heaters ≤ 12 kW apply to both electric resistance and heat pump water heaters. There are no minimum efficiency requirements for electric heat pump water heaters greater than 12kW or for gas heat pump water heaters.

g. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric resistance water heater that meets all of the following:

1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons (284 L).
2. Is manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:

    4.1 Is made of material not adversely affected by water.

    4.2 Is attached by means of non-water soluble adhesive

    4.3 Advises purchasers and end-users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: "IMPORTANT INFORMATION: This water heater is intended only for use as a part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product."

h. Instantaneous water heaters and hot water supply boilers have an input capacity (Btu/h) divided by storage volume (gal) ≥ 4000 Btu/h-gal.

i. Electric instantaneous water heaters with input capacity >12 kW and ≤58.6 kW that have either (1) a storage volume >2 gal(7.6L); or (2) is designed to provide outlet hot water at temperatures greater than 180°F(82ºC); or (3) uses three-phase power has no efficiency standard.

j. Gas storage water heaters with input capacity >75,000 Btu/h (21.98 kW) and ≤105,000 Btu/h (30.77 kW) must comply with the requirements for the >105,000 Btu/h (30.77 kW) if the water heater either (1) has a storage volume >120 gal (454L); (2) is designed to provide outlet hot water at temperatures greater than 180°F (82ºC); or (3) uses three-phase power.

k. Refer to Section C404.2.1 for additional requirements for gas storage and instantaneous water heaters and gas hot-water supply boilers.l. Oil storage water heaters with input capacity>105,000 Btu/h (30.77 kW) and ≤140,000 Btu/h (41.03 kW) must comply with the requirements for the >140,000 Btu/h (41.03 kW) if the water heater either (1) has a storage volume > 120 gal(454L); (2) is designed to provide outlet hot water at temperatures greater than 180ºF (82ºC); or (3) uses three-phase power.

l. Water heaters and hot water supply boilers ~~having~~ with more than 140 gallons (530L) of storage capacity need not meet the standby loss requirement ~~if~~where: (1) The tank surface area is thermally insulated to R-12.5 or more; (2) ~~a~~ there is no standing pilot light ~~is not used~~; and (3) for gas or oil-fired storage water heaters, ~~they have~~ the heater is equipped with a fire damper or fan-assisted combustion.

C404.2.1 High input service water-heating systems. Gas-fired *water heaters* installed in new buildings where the total input capacity provided by *high-capacity gas-fired water heaters* is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater shall comply with either or both of the following requirements.

1. Where a singular piece of *high-capacity gas-fired water heater* is installed, the *water heater* shall have a thermal efficiency, Et, of not less than 92 percent.
2. Where multiple pieces of *high-capacity gas-fired water heaters* are connected to the same service water-heating system, the combined input-capacity-weighted-average thermal efficiency, Et, shall not be less than 90 percent and a minimum of 30 percent of the input to the *high-capacity gas-fired water heaters* in the service water-heating system shall have a thermal efficiency of not less than 92 percent.

Exceptions:

1. The input rating of water heaters installed in individual dwelling units shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a *building*.
2. The input rating of water heaters with an input rating of not greater than 105,000 Btu/h (30.8 kW) shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a *building*.
3. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual service water heating requirement is provided by *on-site renewable energy* or site-recovered energy, the minimum thermal efficiency requirements of this section shall not apply. *On-site renewable energy* used to meet Sections C405.15.1 or C406.3.1 shall not be used to meet this exception.

C404.3 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks. Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at those inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.

C404.4 Service water heating system piping insulation. *Service water heating* system piping shall be surrounded by uncompressed insulation. The wall thickness of the insulation shall be not less than the thickness shown in Table C404.4.1. Where the insulation thermal conductivity is not within the range in the table, the following equation shall be used to calculate the minimum insulation thickness:

$$t = r * [(1 + t_{table} / r)\, k_{alt}/k_{upper} - 1] \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-8)}$$

t_{alt}= minimum insulation thickness of the alternate material (in.) (mm)
r = actual outside radius of pipe (in.) (mm)
t_{table} = insulation thickness listed in this table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size
k_{alt} = thermal conductivity of the alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature [Btu·in/h·ft^2·°F] [W(m·°C)]
k_{upper} = the upper value of the thermal conductivity range listed in this table for the applicable fluid temperature [Btu·in/h·ft^2·°F] [W (m·°C)]

For nonmetallic piping thicker than Schedule 80 and having thermal resistance greater than that of steel pipe, reduced insulation thicknesses are permitted if documentation is provided showing that the pipe with the proposed insulation has no more heat transfer per foot (meter) than a steel pipe of the same size with the insulation thickness shown in the table.

Exception: Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. Factory-installed piping within water heaters and hot water storage tanks.
2. Valves, pumps, and strainers in piping that is not greater than 1 inch (25 mm) in nominal diameter.
3. Piping that conveys hot water that has not been heated through the use of fossil fuels or electricity
4. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
5. Cold-water piping of a *demand recirculation water system*.
6. Piping in existing buildings where alterations are made to existing *service water heating* systems where there is insufficient space or access to meet the requirements.
7. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
8. Where piping passes through a framing member if it requires increasing the size of the framing member.

C404.4.1 Installation requirements The following piping shall be insulated per the requirements of this section:

1. Recirculating system piping, including the supply and return piping
2. The first 8 feet (2.4m) of outlet piping from:
   2.1 Storage water heaters
   2.2 Hot water storage tanks
   2.3 Any *water heater* and hot water supply boiler containing not less than 10 gallons (37.9 L) of water heated by a direct heat source, an indirect heat source, or both a direct heat source and an indirect heat source.
3. The first 8 feet (2.4m) of branch piping connecting to recirculated, heat traced, or impedance heated piping.
4. The make-up water inlet piping between heat traps and the storage water heaters and the storage tanks they are serving, nonrecirculating service water heating storage-system.
5. Hot water piping between multiple water heaters, between multiple hot water storage tanks, and between water heaters and hot water storage tanks.
6. Piping that is externally heated (such as heat trace or impedance heating).
7. For direct-buried *service water heating* system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by 1.5 inches (38.1 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Section C404.4) but not to thicknesses less than 1 in (25.4 mm).

TABLE C404.4.1
MINIMUM PIPING INSULATION THICKNESS FOR SERVICE WATER HEATING SYSTEMS[a]

Service Hot-water Temperature Range	Insulation Thermal Conductivity		Nominal Pipe or Tube Size, in.				
	Conductivity, Btu·in/h·ft2·°F	Mean Rating Temperature,°F	<1	1 to <1-1/2	1-1/2 to <4	4 to <8	≥8
			Insulation Thickness, in.				
105°F to 140°F	0.22 to 0.28	100	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
>140°F to 200°F	0.25 to 0.29	125	1.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
>200°F	0.27 to 0.30	150	1.5	1.5	2.5	3.0	3.0

a. These thicknesses are based on energy efficiency considerations only. Additional insulation may be necessary for safety.

C404.5 Heated water supply piping. Heated water supply piping shall be in accordance with **Section C404.5.1,** or **C404.5.2,** . The flow rate through $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate through $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m).

C404.5.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method. The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in **Table C404.5.1**.

1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the "Public lavatory faucets" column in **Table C404.5.1**.
2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the "Other fixtures and appliances" column in **Table C404.5.1**.

TABLE C404.5.1
PIPING VOLUME AND MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTHS

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	VOLUME (liquid ounces per foot length)	MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTH (feet)	
		Public lavatory faucets	Other fixtures and appliances
$^{1}/_{4}$	0.33	6	50
$^{5}/_{16}$	0.5	4	50
$^{3}/_{8}$	0.75	3	50
$^{1}/_{2}$	1.5	2	43
$^{5}/_{8}$	2	1	32
$^{3}/_{4}$	3	0.5	21
$^{7}/_{8}$	4	0.5	16
1	5	0.5	13
$1^{1}/_{4}$	8	0.5	8
$1^{1}/_{2}$	11	0.5	6
2 or larger	18	0.5	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 gallon = 128 ounces.

C404.5.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method. The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with **Section C404.5.2.1,** . Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered to be sources of heated water.

The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:

1. For a public lavatory faucet: not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).
2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances; not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).

C404.5.2.1 Water volume determination. The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the "Volume" column in **Table C404.5.1** or from **Table C404.5.2.1**. The volume contained within fixture shutoff valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.

TABLE C404.5.2.1
INTERNAL VOLUME OF VARIOUS WATER DISTRIBUTION TUBING

OUNCES OF WATER PER FOOT OF TUBE									
Nominal Size (inches)	Copper Type M	Copper Type L	Copper Type K	CPVC CTS SDR 11	CPVC SCH 40	CPVC SCH 80	PE-RT SDR 9	Composite ASTM F1281	PEX CTS SDR 9
$^{3}/_{8}$	1.06	0.97	0.84	N/A	1.17	—	0.64	0.63	0.64
$^{1}/_{2}$	1.69	1.55	1.45	1.25	1.89	1.46	1.18	1.31	1.18
$^{3}/_{4}$	3.43	3.22	2.90	2.67	3.38	2.74	2.35	3.39	2.35
1	5.81	5.49	5.17	4.43	5.53	4.57	3.91	5.56	3.91
$1^{1}/_{4}$	8.70	8.36	8.09	6.61	9.66	8.24	5.81	8.49	5.81
$1^{1}/_{2}$	12.18	11.83	11.45	9.22	13.20	11.38	8.09	13.88	8.09
2	21.08	20.58	20.04	15.79	21.88	19.11	13.86	21.48	13.86

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 oz/ft^2 = 305.15 g/m^2.

N/A = Not Available.

C404.6 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with **Section C404.6.1,** . Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with **Section C404.6.2,** . Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with **Section C404.6.3,** . *Automatic* controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with *access*. *Manual* controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

C404.6.1 Circulation systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems are prohibited. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe. Controls shall be configured to automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is not a demand for hot water.Where a circulation pump serves multiple risers or piping zones, controls shall include self-actuating thermostatic balancing valves or another means of flow control to automatically balance the flow rate through each riser or piping zone.

C404.6.1.1 Demand recirculation controls. Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture, or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

C404.6.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with **IEEE 515.1**. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is not a demand for hot water.

C404.6.3 Controls for hot water storage. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a *water heater* and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

C404.7 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with **CSA B55.2**. Potable water-side pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For *Group R* occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with **CSA B55.1**.

C404.8 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas. The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in **Sections C404.8.1,** through **C404.8.3,** .

C404.8.1 Heaters. The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater in a location with *ready access*. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater *thermostat*. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

C404.8.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

C404.8.3 Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover or other *approved* vapor-retardant means.

Exception: Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operating season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from a heat pump or an *on-site renewable energy* system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required. *On-site renewable energy* used to meet Sections C405.15.1 or C406.3.1 shall not be used to meet this exception.

C404.9 Portable spas. The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of **APSP 14**.

C404.10 Demand responsive water heating. Electric storage water heaters with a rated water storage volume of 40 gallons (150L) to 120 gallons (450L) and a nameplate input rating equal to or less than 12kW shall be provided with demand responsive controls in accordance with Table C404.10 ~~or another equivalent *approved* standard~~.

Exceptions:

1. Water heaters that provide a hot water delivery temperature of 180°F (82°C) or greater.
2. Water heaters that comply with Section IV, Part HLW or Section X of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
3. Water heaters that use 3-phase electric power.

TABLE C404.10
DEMAND RESPONSIVE CONTROLS FOR WATER HEATING

Equipment Type	Controls	
	Manufactured before 7/1/2025	Manufactured on or after 7/1/2025
Electric storage water heaters	AHRI Standard 1430 or ANSI/CTA-2045-B Level 1 and also capable of initiating water heating to meet the temperature set point in response to a *demand response signal*.	AHRI Standard 1430 ~~ANSI/ CTA-2045-B Level 2, except "Price Stream Communication" functionality as defined in the standard.~~

SECTION C405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

C405.1 General. Electrical power and lighting systems and generation shall comply with this section. *General lighting* shall consist of all lighting included when calculating the total connected interior lighting power in accordance with **Section C405.3.1,** and which does not require specific application controls in accordance with **Section C405.2.5,** .

Exception: *Dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that comply with Section C405.2.10, Section C405.3.3 and Section C405.6.

C405.2 Lighting controls. Lighting systems in *interior parking areas* shall be provided with controls that comply with Section C405.2.9. All other lighting systems powered through the energy service for the *building* and building site lighting for which the *building owner* is responsible shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.8.

Exceptions: Lighting controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces where an *automatic* shutoff could endanger occupant safety or security.
2. Interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways.
3. Emergency lighting that is automatically off during normal operations.
4. Emergency lighting required by the *International Building Code* in exit access components which are not provided with fire alarm systems.
5. Up to 0.02 watts per square foot (0.06 W/m^2) of lighting in exit access components which are provided with fire alarm systems.

C405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant *sensor controls* shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. *Computer room*, *data center*
3. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
4. Copy/print rooms.
5. Lounges/breakrooms.
6. Medical supply room in a healthcare facility
7. Enclosed offices.
8. Laundry/washing area
9. Open plan office areas.
10. Restrooms.
11. Storage rooms.
12. Telemedicine room in a healthcare facility
13. Locker rooms.
14. Corridors.
15. Warehouse storage areas.
16. Other spaces 300 square feet (28 m^2) or less that are enclosed by floor-to-ceiling height partitions.

Exception: Luminaires tha t are required to have specific application controls in accordance with **Section C405.2.5,** .

C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensor controls in warehouse storage areas shall comply with **Section C405.2.1.2,** . Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with **Section C405.2.1.3,** . Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall comply with **Section C405.2.1.4,** . Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces specified in **Section C405.2.1,** shall comply with the following:

1. They shall automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. They shall be *manual* on or controlled to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50-percent power.
3. They shall incorporate a *manual* control to allow occupants to turn off lights.

Exception: Full automatic-on controls with no manual control shall be permitted in interior parking areas, stairways, restrooms, locker rooms, lobbies, library stacks and areas where manual operation would endanger occupant safety or security.

C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouse storage areas. Lighting in warehouse storage areas shall be controlled as follows:

1. Lighting in each aisleway shall be controlled independently of lighting in all other aisleways and open areas.
2. Occupant sensors shall automatically reduce lighting power within each controlled area to an unoccupied setpoint of not more than 50 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the controlled area.
3. Lights that are not turned off by occupant sensors shall be turned off by time-switch control complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** .
4. A *manual* control shall be provided to allow occupants to turn off lights in the space.

C405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet (28 m^2) in area shall comply with **Section C405.2.1.1,** . Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. The controls shall be configured so that *general lighting* can be controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet (55 m^2) within the open plan office space.
2. *General lighting* in each control zone shall be permitted to automatically turn on upon occupancy within the control zone. *General lighting* in other unoccupied zones within the open plan office space shall be permitted to turn on to not more than 20 percent of full power or remain unaffected.
3. The controls shall automatically turn off *general lighting* in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.

   Exception: Where *general lighting* is turned off by time-switch control complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** .
4. *General lighting* in each control zone shall turn off or uniformly reduce lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint of not more than 20 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the control zone.

C405.2.1.4 Occupant sensor control function in corridors. Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall uniformly reduce lighting power to an occupied setpoint not more than 50 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.

Exception: Corridors provided with less than two footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on.

C405.2.2 Time-switch controls. Each area of the *building* that is not provided with *occupant sensor controls* complying with **Section C405.2.1.1,** shall be provided with *time-switch controls* complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** .

Exceptions:

1. Luminaires that are required to have specific application controls in accordance with **Section C405.2.4,** .
2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.

C405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function. Time-switch *controls* shall comply with all of the following:

1. Programmed to automatically turn off lights when the space is scheduled to be unoccupied.
2. Have a minimum 7-day clock.
3. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
4. Incorporate an *automatic* holiday "shutoff" feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for not fewer than 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.
5. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for not fewer than 10 hours, if power is interrupted.
6. Include an override switch that complies with the following:
   6.1. The override switch shall be a *manual* control.
   6.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.
   6.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2).
7. For spaces where schedules are not available, time switch controls are programmed to a schedule that turns lights off not less than 12 hours per day.

Exception: Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities and sports arenas:

1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the switch is a captive key device.
2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet (1860 m^2).

C405.2.3 Dimming controls. Dimming controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1 are required for *general lighting* in the following space types:

1. Classroom / lecture hall / training room.
2. Conference / multipurpose / meeting room.
3. In a dining area for bar/lounge or leisure, family dining.
4. Laboratory.
5. Lobby.
6. Lounge/ Break room.
7. Offices.
8. Gymnasium/ fitness center.

9. Library reading room.
10. In a health care facility for imaging rooms, exam rooms, nursery, and nurses' station.
11. Spaces not provided with occupant sensor controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. Luminaires controlled by special application controls complying with **Section C405.2.5,** .

C405.2.3.1 Dimming control function. Spaces required to have dimming control shall be provided with *manual* controls that allow lights to be dimmed from full output to 10 percent of full power or lower with continuous dimming, as well as turning lights off. *Manual* control shall be provided within each room to dim lights.

Exceptions: *Manual* dimming control is not required in spaces where *high-end trim* lighting controls are provided which comply with the following:

1. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for ready access only by authorized personnel. Occupant sensors will be required in more space types for base code compliance.
2. Lighting controls with ready access for users cannot increase the lighting power above the maximum level established by the high-end trim controls.

C405.2.4 Daylight-responsive controls. *Daylight-responsive controls* complying with **Section C405.2.4.1,** shall be provided to control the *general lighting* within *daylight zones* in the following spaces:

1. Spaces with a total of more than 75 watts of *gen eral lighting* within primary sidelit daylight zones complying with **Section C405.2.4.2,** .
2. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of *general lighting* within sidelit daylight zones complying with **Section C405.2.4.2,** .
3. Spaces with a total of more than 75 watts of *general lighting* within toplit daylight zones complying with **Section C405.2.4.3,** .

Exceptions: Daylight responsive controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.
2. Sidelit daylight zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies.
3. Enclosed office spaces less than 250 square feet (23.2 m^2).

C405.2.4.1 Daylight-responsive control function. Where required, *daylight-responsive controls* shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in *toplit daylight zones* in accordance with **Section C405.2.4.3,** shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit daylight zones in accordance with **Section C405.2.4.2,** .
2. Lights in the primary sidelit *daylight zone* shall be controlled independently of lights in the secondary sidelit *daylight zone* .
3. *Daylight responsive controls* within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.

4. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with *ready access*.
5. *Daylight responsive controls* shall dim lights continuously from full light output to 15 percent of full light output or lower.
6. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights.
7. When occupant sensor controls have reduced the lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint in accordance with **Sections C405.2.1.2,** through **C405.2.1.4,** , daylight responsive controls shall continue to adjust electric light levels in response to available daylight, but shall be configured to not increase the lighting power above the specified unoccupied setpoint.
8. Lights in *sidelit daylight zones* in accordance with **Section C405.2.4.2,** facing different cardinal orientations [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of due north, east, south, west] shall be controlled independently of each other.

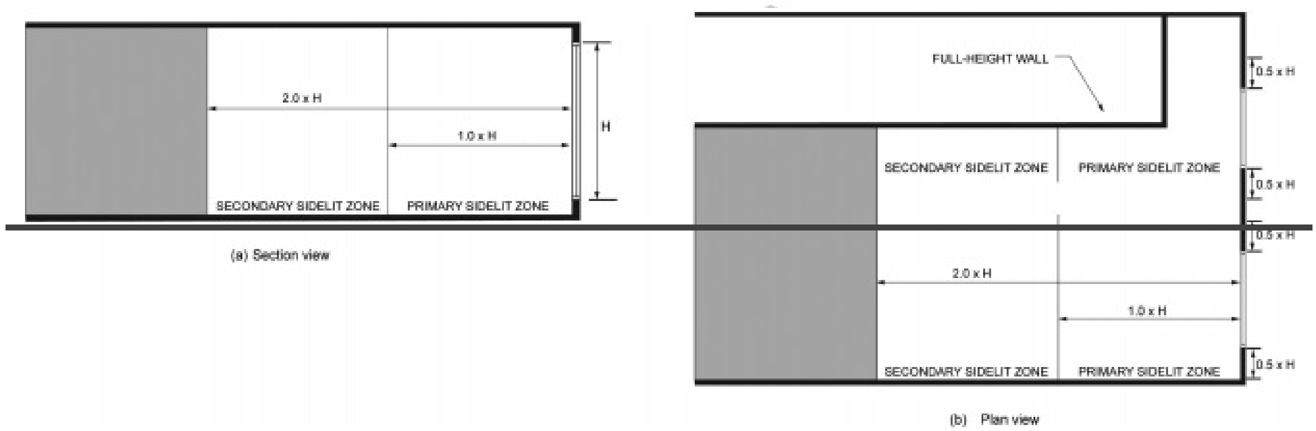
Exceptions:

1. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the primary sidelit *daylight zone* is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a primary sidelit *daylight zone* facing a different cardinal orientation.
2. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the secondary sidelit *daylight zone* is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a secondary sidelit *daylight zone* facing a different cardinal orientation.

C405.2.4.2 Sidelit daylight zone. The sidelit *daylight zone* is the floor area adjacent to vertical *fenestration* that complies with all of the following:

1. Where the *fenestration* is located in a wall, the primary sidelit *daylight zone* shall extend laterally to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the *fenestration*, and longitudinally from the edge of the *fenestration* to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 0.5 times the height from the floor to the top of the *fenestration*, whichever is less, as indicated in **Figure C405.2.4.2(1)**.
2. Where the *fenestration* is located in a *rooftop monitor*, the primary sidelit *daylight zone* shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the *fenestration*, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the *fenestration* to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the *fenestration*, whichever is less, as indicated in **Figures C405.2.4.2(2)** and **C405.2.4.2(3)**.
3. Where the *fenestration* is located in a wall the secondary sidelit *daylight zone* is directly adjacent to the primary sidelit *daylight zone* and shall extend laterally to 2.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the *fenestration* or to the nearest full height wall, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the *fenestration* to the nearest full height wall, or up to 0.5 times the height from the floor to the top of the *fenestration*, whichever is less, as indicated in **Figure C405.2.4.2(1)**.
4. The area of the *fenestration* is not less than 24 square feet (2.23 m^2).
5. The distance from the *fenestration* to any *building* or geological formation that would block *access to* daylight is greater than one-half of the height from the bottom of the *fenestration* to the top of the *building* or geologic formation.
6. The visible transmittance of the *fenestration* is not less than 0.20.
7. The projection factor (determined in accordance with **Equation 4-4**) for any overhanging projection that is shading the *fenestration* is not greater than 1.0 for

fenestration oriented 45 degrees or less from true north and not greater than 1.5 for all other orientations.



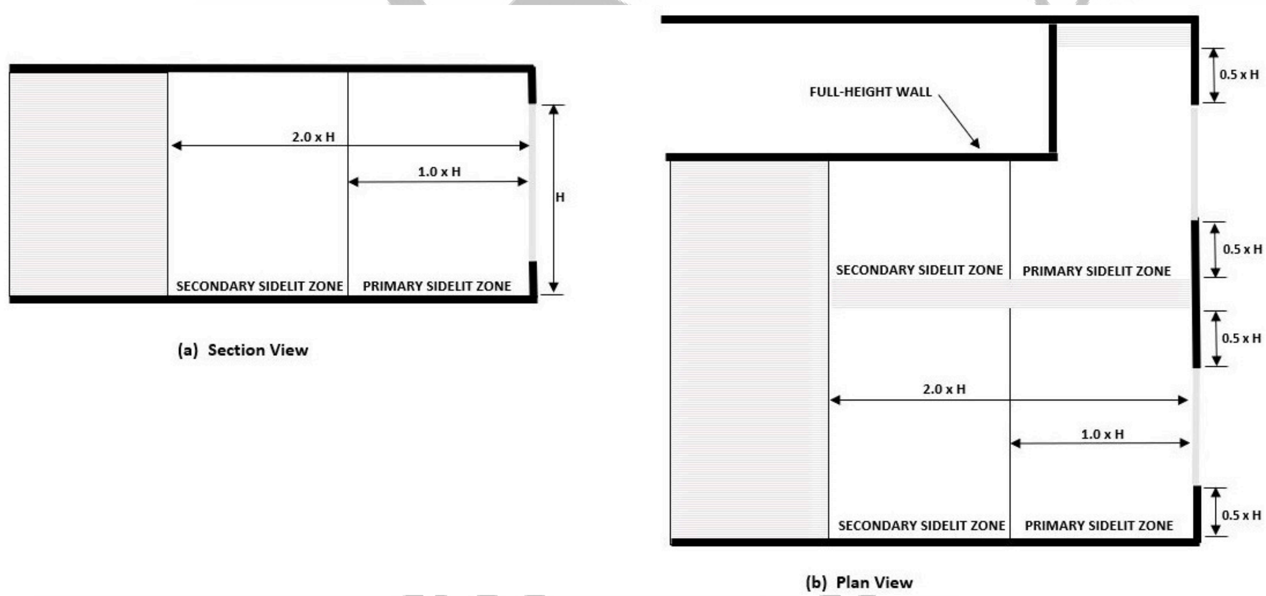
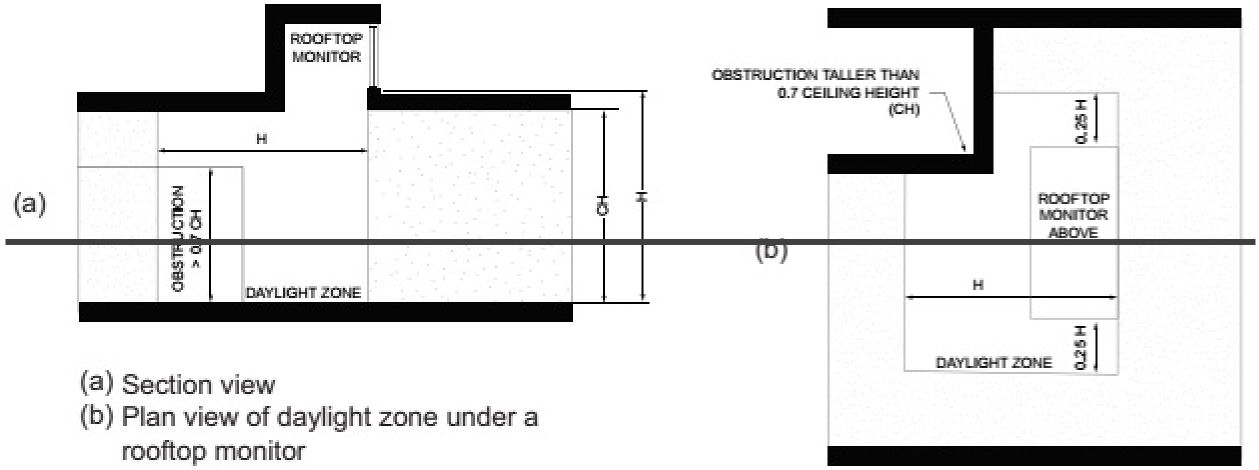


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(1)
PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SIDELIT DAYLIGHT ZONES



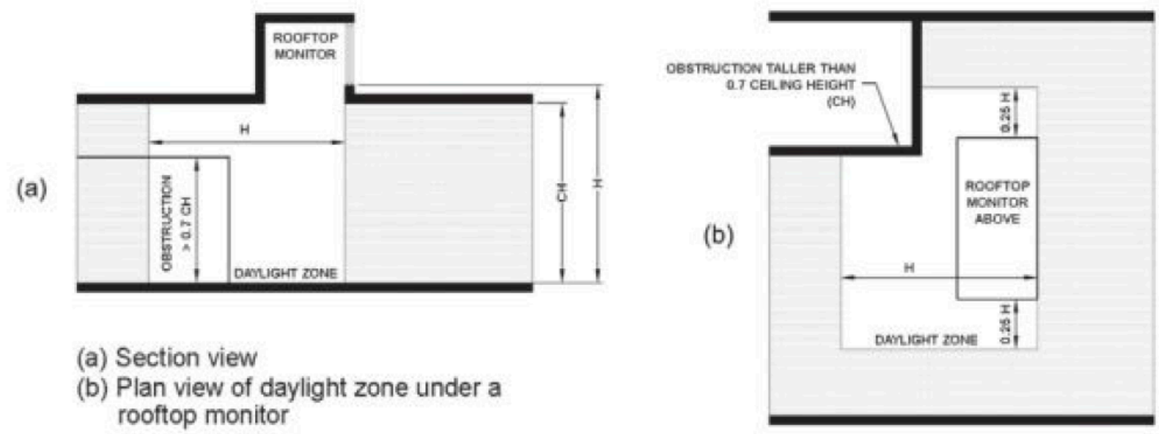
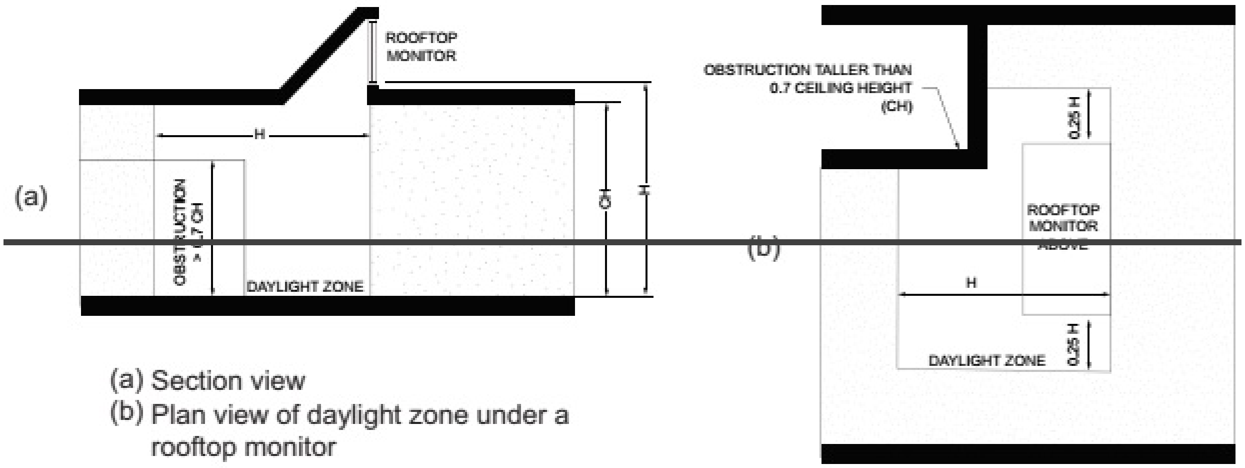


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(2)
DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP MONITOR



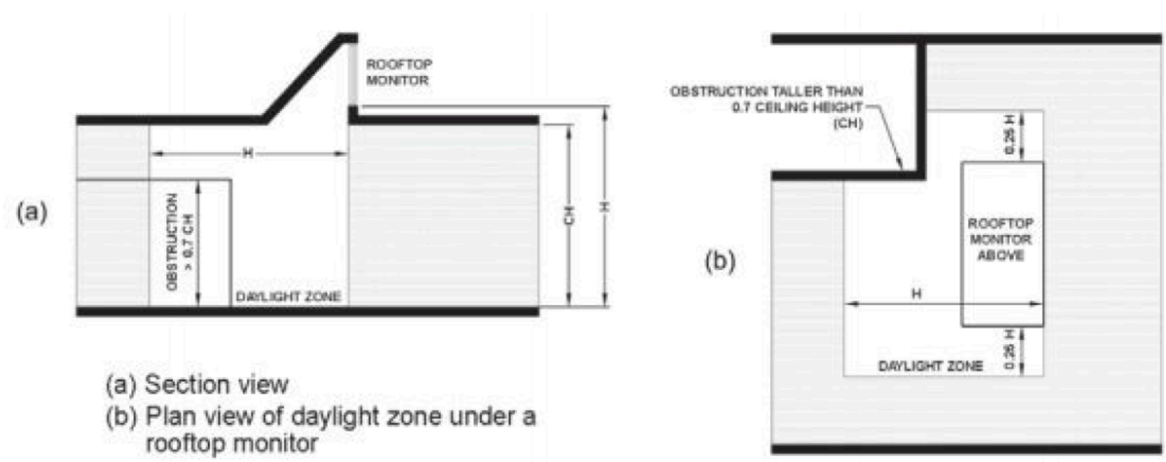
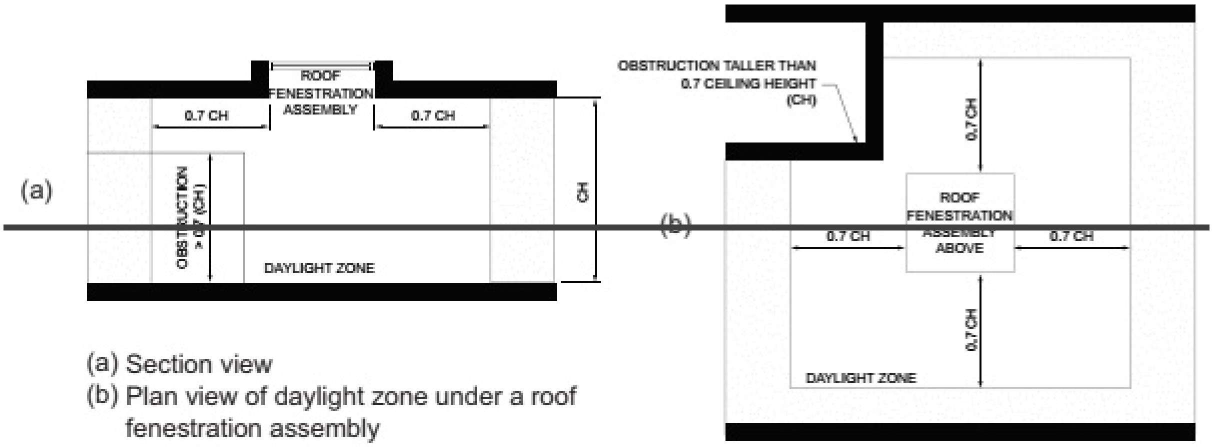


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(3)
DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A SLOPED ROOFTOP MONITOR

C405.2.4.3 Toplit *daylight* zone. The *toplit daylight zone* is the floor area underneath a roof *fenestration* assembly that complies with all of the following:

1. The toplit daylight zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof *fenestration* assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is less, as indicated in **Figure C405.2.4.3**.
2. Direct sunlight is not blocked from hitting the roof *fenestration* assembly at the peak solar angle on the summer solstice by buildings or geological formations.
3. The product of the visible transmittance of the roof *fenestration* assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof *fenestration* assembly divided by the area of the *toplit* zone is not less than 0.008.



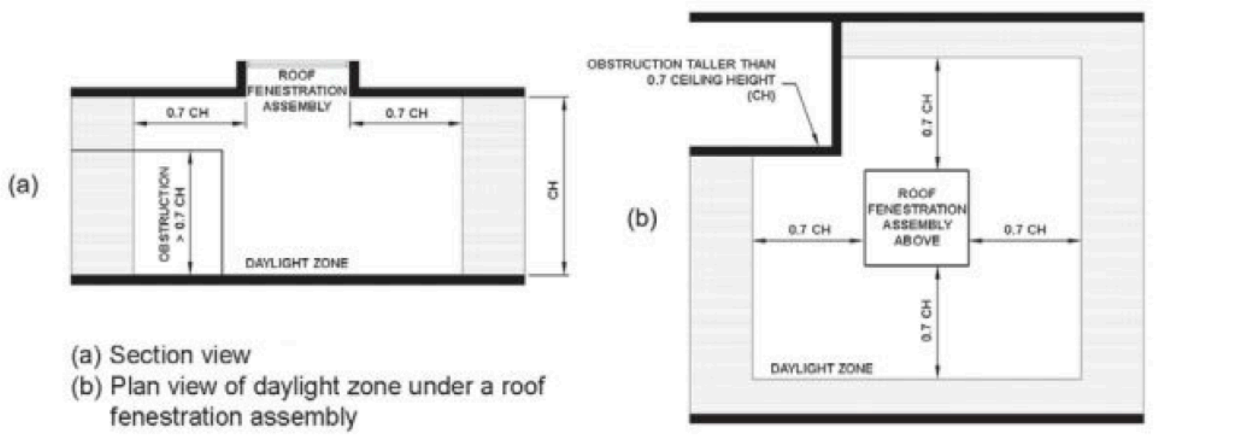
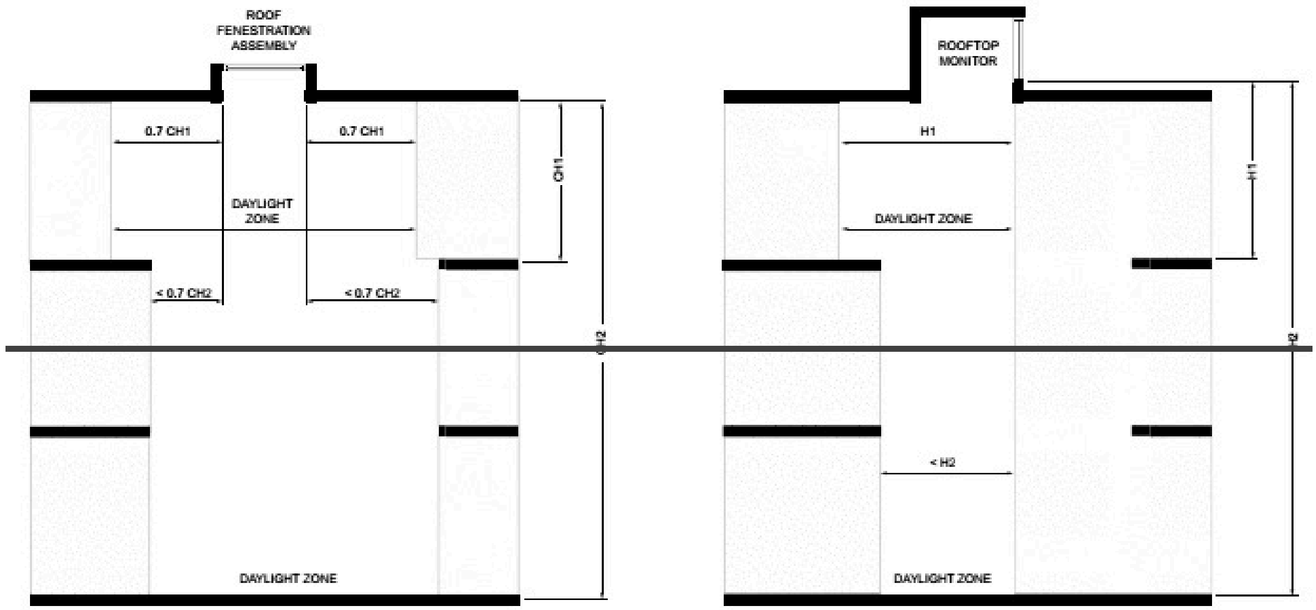


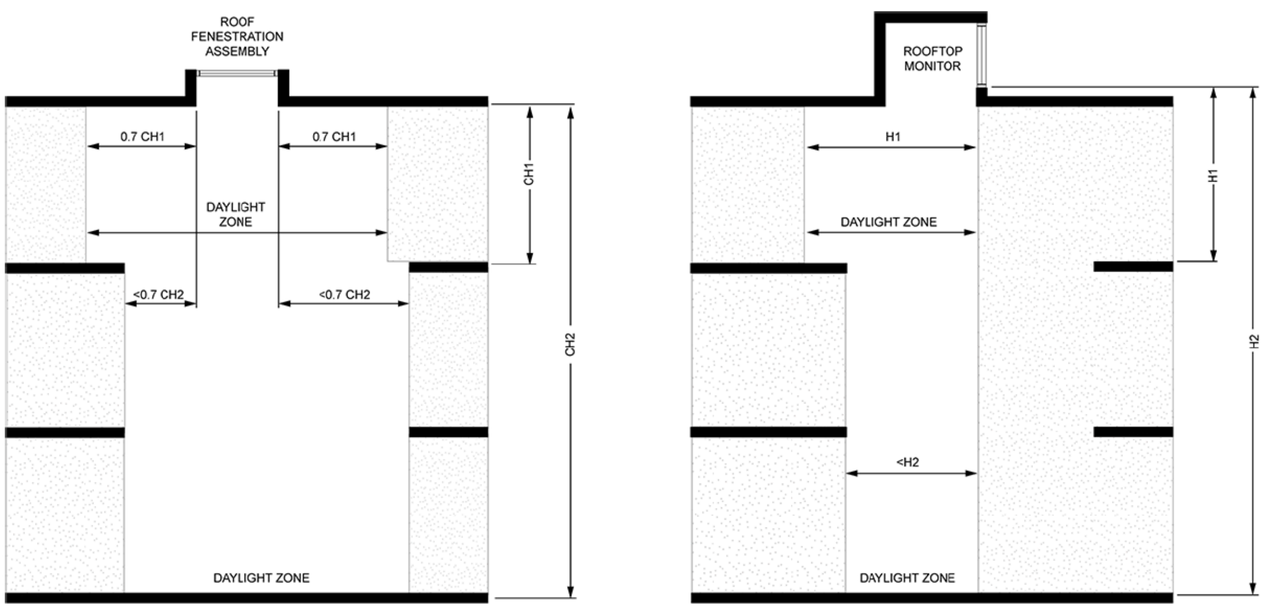
FIGURE C405.2.4.3
TOPLIT DAYLIGHT ZONE

C405.2.4.4 Atriums. Daylight zones at atrium spaces shall be established at the top floor surrounding the atrium and at the floor of the atrium space, and not on intermediate floors, as indicated in **Figure C405.2.4.4**.



(a) Section view of roof fenestration assembly at atrium

(b) Section view of roof monitor at atrium



(a) Section view of roof fenestration assembly at atrium

(b) Section view of roof monitor at atrium

FIGURE C405.2.4.4
DAYLIGHT ZONES AT A MULTISTORY ATRIUM

C405.2.5 Specific application controls. Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with **Section C405.2.1.1,** or a time-switch control complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** . In

addition, a *manual* control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the *general lighting* in the space:

1.1. Luminaires for which additional lighting power is claimed in accordance with **Section C405.3.2.2.1,** .
1.2. Display and accent lighting, including lighting in display cases.
1.3 Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
1.4 Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.

2. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a *time switch control* complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.
3. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to *general lighting* shall be provided with a *manual control*.
4. Lighting integrated into range hoods and exhaust fans shall be controlled independently of fans.

C405.2.6 Manual controls. Where required by this code, *manual* controls for lights shall comply with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with *ready access* to occupants.
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.

C405.2.7 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with **Sections C405.2.7.1,** through **C405.2.7.4,** .

Exceptions:

1. Lighting for vehicle entrances to buildings where required for eye adaptation.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

C405.2.7.1 Daylight shutoff. Lights shall be automatically turned off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.

C405.2.7.2 Building facade and landscape lighting. *Building* facade and landscape lighting shall automatically shut off from not later than 1 hour after *building* or business closing to not earlier than 1 hour before *building* or business opening.

C405.2.7.3 Lighting setback. Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with **Section C405.2.7.2,** shall comply with the following:

1. Be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:
   1.1. From not later than midnight to not earlier than 6 a.m.
   1.2. From not later than one hour after *building* or business closing to not earlier than one hour before *building* or business opening.
   1.3. During any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more.
2. Luminaires serving exterior parking areas and having a rated input wattage of greater than 40 watts and a mounting height of 24 feet (7315 mm) or less above

the ground shall be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent during any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more. Not more than 1,500 watts of lighting power shall be controlled together.

➡

C405.2.7.4 Exterior time-switch control function. Time-switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an *automatic* holiday setback feature.
4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of not less than 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

C405.2.8 Demand responsive lighting controls. Interior *general lighting* in group B, E, M, and S occupancies shall have *demand responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.8.1 in not less than 75 percent of the interior floor area.

Exceptions:

1. Where the combined interior floor area of group B, E, M, and S occupancies is less than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2).
2. *Buildings* where a *demand response signal* is not available from a controlling entity other than the *owner*.
3. Parking garages.
4. Ambulatory care facilities.
5. Outpatient clinics.
6. Physician or dental offices.

C405.2.8.1 Demand responsive lighting controls function. Demand responsive controls for lighting ~~controls~~ shall be capable of the following:

1. Automatically reducing the output of ~~*demand responsive*~~ controlled lighting to 80 percent or less of full power or light output upon receipt of a *demand response signal* .
2. Where *high end trim* has been set, automatically reducing the output of controlled lighting to 80 percent or less of the *high-end trim* set point upon receipt of a *demand response signal* .
3. Dimming controlled lights gradually and continuously over a period of not longer than 15 minutes to ~~get to~~achieve their demand response setpoint.
4. Returning controlled lighting ~~lights~~ to ~~their~~ its normal operational settings at the end of the demand response ~~event~~period.

Exception: Storage rooms and warehouse storage ~~Warehouse and retail storage *building*~~ areas shall be permitted to switch off 25 percent or more of *general lighting* power rather than dimming.

C405.2.9 Interior parking area lighting control. *Interior parking area* lighting shall be controlled by an *occupant sensor* complying with **Section C405.2.1.1,** or a *time-switch control* complying with **Section C405.2.2.1,** . Additional lighting controls shall be provided as follows:

1. Lighting power of each luminaire shall be automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent when there is no activity detected within a lighting zone for 20 minutes. Lighting zones for this requirement shall be not larger than 3,600 square feet (334.5 m^2).

   Exception: Lighting zones provided with less than 1.5 footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on are not required to have *automatic* light-reduction controls.

2. Where lighting for eye adaptation is provided at vehicle entrances to buildings , such lighting shall be separately controlled by a device that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 50 percent from sunset to sunrise.
3. The power to luminaires within 20 feet (6096 mm) of perimeter wall openings shall automatically reduce in response to daylight by at least 50 percent.

   Exceptions:
   1. Where the opening-to-wall ratio is less than 40 percent as viewed from the interior and encompassing the vertical distance from the driving surface to the lowest structural element.
   2. Where the distance from the opening to any exterior daylight blocking obstruction is less than one-half the height from the bottom of the opening or *fenestration* to the top of the obstruction.
   3. Where openings are obstructed by permanent screens or architectural elements restricting daylight entering the interior space.

C405.2.10 Sleeping unit and dwelling unit lighting and switched receptacle controls. *Sleeping units* and *dwelling units* shall be provided with lighting controls and switched receptacles as specified in Sections C405.2.10.1 and C405.2.10.2.

C405.2.10.1 Sleeping units and dwelling units in hotels, motels, and vacation timeshare properties. *Sleeping units* and *dwelling units* in hotels, motels and vacation timeshare properties shall be provided with the following:

1. ~~At least~~ Not less than two 125V, 15- and 20- amp switched receptacles ~~per~~ in each room, except for bathrooms, kitchens, foyers, hallways, and closets.
2. Lighting controls that automatically turn off all lighting and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

Exception: *Automatic* shutoff is not required where *captive key override* controls all lighting and switched receptacles in units with 5 or fewer permanently installed lights and switched receptacles.

C405.2.10.2 Sleeping units in congregate living facilities. *Sleeping units* in congregate living facilities shall be provided with the following controls:

1. Lighting in bathrooms shall be controlled by an *occupant sensor control* that automatically turns lights off within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. Each unit shall have a *manual* control by the entrance that turns off all lighting and switched receptacles in the unit, except for lighting in bathrooms and kitchens. The *manual* control shall be marked to indicate its function ~~*labeled*~~.

C405.3 Interior lighting power requirements. A *building* complies with this section where its total connected interior lighting power calculated under **Section C405.3.1,** is not greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under **Section C405.3.2,** . *Sleeping units* and *dwelling units* shall comply with Section C405.3.3.

C405.3.1 Total connected interior lighting power. The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-9.

$$TCLP = [LVL + BLL + LED + TRK + Other] \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-9)}$$

where:

TCLP = Total connected lighting power (watts).
LVL = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to *building* power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp.
BLL = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating that lamp.
LED = For light-emitting diode luminaires with either integral or remote drivers, the rated wattage of the luminaire.
TRK = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor, and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:

1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 8 W per linear foot (25 W/lin m).
2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.
3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.

1. Emergency lighting that is automatically off during normal operations.
2. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
3. Mirror lighting in makeup or dressing areas used for video broadcasting, video or film recording, or live theatrical and music performance.
4. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to *general lighting*.
5. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to *general lighting*.
6. Lighting in any location that is specifically used for video broadcasting, video or film recording, or live theatrical and music performance.
7. Lighting for photographic processes.
8. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.
9. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.
10. Advertising signage or directional signage.

11. Lighting for food warming.
12. Lighting equipment that is for sale.
13. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.
14. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
15. Lighting in retail display windows, provided that the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.
16. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.
17. Exit signs.
18. Antimicrobial lighting used for the sole purpose of disinfecting a space.
19. Lighting in sleeping units and dwelling units.
20. For exit access and exit stairways, ~~exit stairways and their~~ including landings, where the applicable ~~building~~ code ~~or life safety code~~ requires ~~a minimum~~ an illuminance of 10 footcandles or more on the walking surface, the power in excess of the allowed power calculated according to Section C405.3.2.2, is not included.

C405.3.2 Interior lighting power allowance. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for an entire *building* shall be determined according to **Table C405.3.2(1)** using the Building Area Method or **Table C405.3.2(2)** using the Space-by-Space Method. The interior lighting power allowance for projects that involve only portions of a *building* shall be determined according to **Table C405.3.2(2)** using the Space-by-Space Method. Buildings with unfinished spaces shall use the Space-by-Space Method.

TABLE C405.3.2(1)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (w/ft^2)
Automotive facility	0.73
Convention center	0.64
Courthouse	0.75
Dining: bar lounge/leisure	0.74
Dining: cafeteria/fast food	0.70
Dining: family	0.65
Dormitory	0.52
Exercise center	0.72
Fire station	0.56
Gymnasium	0.75
Health care clinic	0.77
Hospital[a]	0.92
Hotel/Motel	0.53
Library	0.83
Manufacturing facility	0.82
Motion picture theater	0.43
Multiple-family	0.46
Museum	0.56
Office	0.62
Parking garage	0.17
Penitentiary	0.65
Performing arts theater	0.82
Police station	0.62
Post office	0.64
Religious building	0.66
Retail	0.78
School/university	0.70
Sports arena	0.73
Town hall	0.67
Transportation	0.56
Warehouse	0.45
Workshop	0.86

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 watts per square meter.

TABLE C405.3.2(2)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Atrium	
Less than 40 feet in height	0.41
Greater than 40 feet in height	0.51
Audience seating area	
In an auditorium	0.57
In a gymnasium	0.23
In a motion picture theater	0.27
In a penitentiary	0.56
In a performing arts theater	1.09
In a religious building	0.72
In a sports arena	0.27
Otherwise	0.33
Banking activity area	0.56
Breakroom (See Lounge/breakroom)	
Classroom/lecture hall/training room	
In a penitentiary	0.74
Otherwise	0.72
Computer room, data center	0.75
Conference/meeting/multipurpose room	0.88
Copy/print room	0.56
Corridor	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	0.71
In a hospital	0.61
Otherwise	0.44
Courtroom	1.08
Dining area	
In bar/lounge or leisure dining	0.76
In cafeteria or fast food dining	0.36
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.22
In family dining	0.52

In a penitentiary	0.35
Otherwise	0.42
Electrical/mechanical room	0.71
Emergency vehicle garage	0.51
Food preparation area	1.19
Laboratory	
In or as a classroom	1.05
Otherwise	1.21
Laundry/washing area	0.51
Loading dock, interior	0.88
Lobby	
For an elevator	0.64
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.44
In a motion picture theater	0.20
In a performing arts theater	1.21
Otherwise	0.80
Locker room	0.43
Lounge/breakroom	
In a healthcare facility	0.77
Mother's Wellness Room	0.68
Otherwise	0.55
Office	
Enclosed	0.73
Open plan	0.56
Parking area daylight transition zone	1.06
Parking area, interior	0.11
Pharmacy area	1.59
Restroom	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff[b]	0.96
Otherwise	0.74
Sales area	0.85
Seating area, general	0.21
Security screening general areas	0.64

Security screening in transportation facilities	0.93
Security screening transportation waiting area	0.56
Stairwell	0.47
Storage room	0.35
Vehicular maintenance area	0.59
Workshop	1.17
BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES[a]	**LPD (watts/ft²)**
Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance area)	
Convention Center—exhibit space	0.50
Dormitory - living quarters	0.48
Facility for the visually impaired[b]	
In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)	0.58
In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)	1.20
Fire station - sleeping quarters	0.48
Gaming establishments	
High limits game	1.68
Slots	0.54
Sportsbook	0.82
Table games	1.09
Gymnasium/fitness center	
In an exercise area	0.82
In a playing area	0.82
Healthcare facility	
In an exam/treatment room	1.33
In an imaging room	0.94
In a medical supply room	0.56
In a nursery	0.87
In a nurse's station	1.07
In an operating room	2.26
In a patient room	0.78
In a physical therapy room	0.82
In a recovery room	1.18
In a telemedicine room	1.44
Library	
In a reading area	0.86

In the stacks	1.18
Manufacturing facility	
In a detailed manufacturing area	0.75
In an equipment room	0.73
In an extra-high-bay area (greater than 50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.36
In a high-bay area (25–50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.24
In a low-bay area (less than 25 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	0.86
Museum	
In a general exhibition area	0.31
In a restoration room	1.24
Performing arts theater—dressing room	0.39
Post office—sorting area	0.71
Religious buildings	
In a fellowship hall	0.50
In a worship/pulpit/choir area	0.75
Retail facilities	
In a dressing/fitting room	0.45
Hair salon	0.65
Nail salon	0.75
In a mall concourse	0.57
Massage space	0.81
Sports arena—playing area	
For a Class I facility[c]	2.86
For a Class II facility[d]	1.98
For a Class III facility[e]	1.29
For a Class IV facility[f]	0.86
Sports arena-Pools	
For a Class I facility	2.20
For a Class II facility	1.47
For a Class III facility	0.99
For a Class IV facility	0.59
Transportation facility	
Airport hanger	1.36
At a terminal ticket counter	0.40
In a baggage/carousel area	0.28

Passenger loading area	0.71
In an airport concourse	0.49
Warehouse—storage area	
For medium to bulky, palletized items	0.33
For smaller, hand-carried items	0.69

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 watts per square meter.

a. In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply.
b. A 'Facility for the Visually Impaired' is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.
c. Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semiprofessional, collegiate, or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.
d. Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semiprofessional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating for between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.
e. Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high school facilities with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.
f. Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high school facilities without provision for spectators.

C405.3.2.1 Building Area Method. For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is calculated as follows:

1. For each *building* area type inside the *building*, determine the applicable *building* area type and the allowed lighting power density for that type from **Table C405.3.2(1)**. For building area types not listed, select the building area type that most closely represents the use of that area. For the purposes of this method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type.
2. Determine the floor area for each *building* area type listed in **Table C405.3.2(1)** and multiply this area by the applicable value from **Table C405.3.2(1)** to determine the allowed lighting power (watts) for each building area type. Sleeping units and dwelling units are excluded from lighting power allowance calculations by application of Section C405.3.3. The area of sleeping units and dwelling units is not included in the calculation.
3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for the entire *building* is the sum of the lighting power from each *building* area type.

C405.3.2.2 Space-by-Space Method. Where a *building* has unfinished spaces, the lighting power allowance for the unfinished spaces shall be the total connected lighting power for those spaces, or 0.1 watts per square foot (1.08 w/m^2), whichever is less. For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is calculated as follows:

1. For each space enclosed by partitions that are not less than 80 percent of the ceiling height, determine the applicable space type from **Table C405.3.2(2)**. For space types not listed, select the space type that most closely represents the proposed use of the space. Where a space has multiple functions, that space may be divided into separate spaces.
2. Determine the total floor area of all the spaces of each space type and multiply by the value for the space type in **Table C405.3.2(2)** to determine the allowed lighting power (watts) for each space type. Sleeping units and dwelling units are excluded from lighting power allowance calculations by application of Section C405.3.3. The area of sleeping units and dwelling units is not included in the calculation.
3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) shall be the sum of the lighting power allowances for all space types.

C405.3.2.2.1 Additional interior lighting power. Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and controlled in accordance with **Section C405.2.5, .** These additional power allowances shall be used only for the luminaires serving the specific lighting function and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted in the following cases:

1. For lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise, the additional lighting power allowance shall be the connected lighting power of the luminaires specifically highlighting merchandise, calculated in accordance with Equation 4-9, or the additional power allowance calculated in accordance with Equation 4-10, whichever is less.

$$\text{Additional lighting power allowance} = 750\ \text{W} + (\text{Retail Area 1} \times 0.40\ \text{W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 2} \times 0.40\ \text{W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 3} \times 0.70\ \text{W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 4} \times 1.00\ \text{W/ft}^2) \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-10)}$$

For SI units:

$$\text{Additional lighting power allowance} = 750\ \text{W} + (\text{Retail Area 1} \times 4.3\ \text{W/m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 2} \times 4.3\ \text{W/m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 3} \times 7.5\ \text{W/m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 4} \times 10.8\ \text{W/m}^2)$$

Exception: Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast or other critical display is *approved* by the *code official*.

2. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to the *general lighting* for the purpose of decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, the additional lighting power allowance for that space shall be the smallest of the following:
   - 2.1. 0.66 W/ft^2 (7.1W/m^2) in lobbies,
   - 2.2. 0.55 W/ft^2 (5.9 W/m^2) in other spaces, or
   - 2.3 the connected lighting power of the luminaires specifically for decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, calculated according to Equation 4-9.

C405.3.3 Lighting power for sleeping units and dwelling units. *Sleeping units* in Group I-2 occupancies that are patient rooms shall comply with Sections C405.3.1 and C405.3.2. For all other *sleeping units* and *dwelling units*, permanently installed lighting including lighting integrated into range hoods and exhaust fans, shall be provided by lamps capable of operating with an efficacy of not less than 65 lm/W or luminaires capable of operating with an efficacy of not less than 45 lm/W.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting integral to other appliances .
2. Antimicrobial lighting used for the sole purpose of disinfecting.
3. Luminaires with an input rating of less than 3W.

C405.4 Horticultural lighting. Permanently installed luminaires shall have a photosynthetic photon efficacy of not less than 1.7 μmol/J for *horticultural lighting* in greenhouses and not less than 1.9 μmol/J for all other *horticultural lighting*. Luminaires for horticultural lighting in greenhouses shall be controlled by a device that automatically turns off the luminaire when sufficient daylight is available. Luminaires for *horticultural lighting* shall be controlled by a device that automatically turns off the luminaire at specific programmed times.

C405.5 Exterior lighting power requirements. The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance with **Section C405.5.1,** shall be not greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with **Section C405.5.2,** .

C405.5.1 Total connected exterior lighting power. The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all exterior lighting that is powered through the energy service for the *building* and *building site* lighting for which the *building owner* is responsible.

Exception: Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included.

1. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
2. Emergency lighting that is automatically off during normal operations .
3. Exit signs.
4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.
5. Advertising signage or directional signage.
6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by its manufacturer.
7. Lighting in any location that is specifically used for video broadcasting, video or film recording, or live theatrical and music performance.
8. Athletic playing areas.
9. Temporary lighting.
10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
12. Used to highlight features of art, public monuments and the national flag.
13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
14. Lighting controlled from within sleeping units and dwelling units, .
15. Lighting of the exterior means of egress as required by the *International Building Code*.

C405.5.2 Exterior lighting power allowance. The exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is calculated as follows:

1. Determine the Lighting Zone (LZ) for the *building* according to **Table C405.5.2(1)**, unless otherwise specified by the *code official*.
2. For each exterior area that is to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the *building* and *building site* lighting for which the *building owner* is responsible, determine the applicable area type from **Table C405.5.2(2)**. For area types not listed, select the area type that most closely represents the proposed use of the area.
3. Determine the total area or length of each area type and multiply by the value for the area type in **Table C405.5.2(2)** to determine the lighting power (watts) allowed for each area type.
4. The total exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is the sum of the base site allowance determined according to **Table C405.5.2(2)**, plus the watts from each area type.

TABLE C405.5.2(1)
EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

LIGHTING ZONE	DESCRIPTION
1	Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas
2	Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed-use areas
3	All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4
4	High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority

TABLE C405.5.2(2)
LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	**Zone 2**	**Zone 3**	**Zone 4**
Base Site Allowance	160 W	280 W	400 W	560 W
Parking area, exterior	0.015 W/ft^2	0.026 W/ft^2	0.037 W/ft^2	0.052 W/ft^2
Building Grounds				
Walkways and ramps less	0.50 W/linear foot	0.50 W/linear foot	0.55 W/linear foot	0.60 W/linear foot
Plaza areas	0.028 W/ft^2	0.049 W/ft^2	0.070 W/ft^2	0.098 W/ft^2
Dining areas	0.156 W/ft^2	0.273 W/ft^2	0.390 W/ft^2	0.546 W/ft^2
Stairways	Exempt	Exempt	Exempt	Exempt
Pedestrian tunnels	0.063 W/ft^2	0.110 W/ft^2	0.157 W/ft^2	0.220 W/ft^2
Landscaping	0.014 W/ft^2	0.025 W/ft^2	0.036 W/ft^2	0.050 W/ft^2
Building Entrances and Exits				
Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exits	5.6 W/linear foot of opening	9.8 W/linear foot of opening	14 W/linear foot of opening	19.6 W/linear foot of opening
Entry canopies	0.072 W/ft^2	0.126 W/ft^2	0.180 W/ft^2	0.252W/ft^2
Loading docks	0.104 W/ft^2	0.182 W/ft^2	0.260 W/ft^2	0.364 W/ft^2
Sales Canopies				
Free-standing and attached	0.20 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.50 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2
Outdoor Sales				
Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)	0.072 W/ft^2	0.126 W/ft^2	0.180 W/ft^2	0.252 W/ft^2
Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to “open area” allowance	No allowance	7.2 W/linear foot	10.3 W/linear foot	14.4 W/linear foot

1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 watts per square meter. W = watts.

TABLE C405.5.2(3)
INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

LIGHTING ZONES				
	Zone 1	**Zone 2**	**Zone 3**	**Zone 4**
Building facades	No allowance	0.075 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.113 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.15 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area
Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories	90 W per location plus 35W per additional ATM per location			
Uncovered entrances and gatehouse inspection stations at guarded facilities	0.144 W/ft^2 of area	0.252 W/ft^2 of area	0.360 W/ft^2 of area	0.504 W/ft^2 of area
Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles	0.104 W/ft^2 of area	0.182 W/ft^2 of area	0.260 W/ft^2 of area	0.364 W/ft^2 of area
Drive-up windows and doors	53 W per drive through	92 W per drive through	132 W per drive through	185 W per drive through
Parking area near 24-hour retail entrances.	80 W per main entry	140 W per main entry	200 W per main entry	280 W per main entry

For SI: For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 watts per square meter.

W = watts.

C405.5.2.1 Additional exterior lighting power. Additional exterior lighting power allowances are available for the specific lighting applications listed in **Table C405.5.2(3)**. These additional power allowances shall be used only for the luminaires serving these specific applications and shall not be used to increase any other lighting power allowance.

C405.5.3 Gas lighting. Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems.

C405.6 Dwelling electrical meter. Each *dwelling unit* located in a Group R-2 *building* shall have a separate electrical meter.

C405.7 Electrical transformers. Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of **Table C405.7** as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in **DOE 10 CFR 431**. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the transformer manufacturer.

Exceptions: The following transformers are exempt in accordance with the DOE definition of Distribution Transformers found in 10 CFR 431.192:

1. Transformers with tap range 20 percent or more .
2. Drive (isolation) transformers.
3. Rectifier transformers.
4. Auto-transformers.
5. Uninterruptible power supply transformers.
6. Special impedance transformers.
7. Regulating transformers.
8. Sealed transformers.
9. Machine tool (control) transformers.
10. Welding transformers.
11. Grounding transformers.
12. Testing transformers.
13. Nonventilated transformers.

TABLE C405.7
MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR DOE 10 CFR 431 LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

SINGLE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS[a]		THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS[a]	
kVA[b]	Efficiency (%)[c]	kVA[b]	Efficiency (%)[c]
15	97.70	15	97.89
25	98.00	30	98.23
37.5	98.20	45	98.40
50	98.30	75	98.60
75	98.50	112.5	98.74
100	98.60	150	98.83
167	98.70	225	98.94
250	98.80	300	99.02
333	98.90	500	99.14
—	—	750	99.23
—	—	1000	99.28

a. A *low-voltage dry-type distribution transformer* with a kVA rating not listed in the table shall have its minimum efficiency level determined by linear interpolation of the kVA and efficiency values listed in the table immediately above and below its kVA rating. Extrapolation shall not be used below the minimum values or above the maximum values shown for single-phase transformers and three-phase transformers.
b. kiloVolt-Amp rating.
c. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the **DOE 10 CFR 431** test procedure for low-voltage dry-type transformers.

C405.8 Electric motors. Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of **Tables C405.8(1)** through **C405.8(4)** when tested and rated in accordance with the **DOE 10 CFR 431**. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

Exception: The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors:

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.
6. Definite purpose machines within the scope of ANSI/NEMA MG 1-2021, Part 18.

TABLE C405.8(1)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN A, NEMA DESIGN B, AND IEC DESIGN N MOTORS (EXCLUDING FIRE PUMP) ELECTRIC MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016							
	2 Pole		4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	77.0	77.0	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	84.0	84.0	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	85.5	85.5	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	86.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	89.5	88.5	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	91.0	90.2	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	91.0	91.0	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	91.7	91.7	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	91.7	91.7	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	92.4	92.4	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	93.0	93.0	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	93.6	93.6	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	93.6	93.6	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	94.1	93.6	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.0	94.1	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	95.4	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1
250 (186)	95.8	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.0	95.0
300 (224)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
350 (261)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
400 (298)	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8	—	—	—	—
450 (336)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—
500 (373)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with **DOE 10 CFR 431**.
b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or

kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(2)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN C AND IEC DESIGN H MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016					
	4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with **DOE 10 CFR 431**.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(3)
MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY POLYPHASE SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	65.6	69.5	67.5
0.33	—	69.5	73.4	71.4
0.50	—	73.4	78.2	75.3
0.75	—	76.8	81.1	81.7
1	—	77.0	83.5	82.5
1.5	—	84.0	86.5	83.8
2	—	85.5	86.5	N/A
3	—	85.5	86.9	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with **DOE 10 CFR 431**.

TABLE C405.8(4)
MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR CAPACITOR-START CAPACITOR-RUN AND CAPACITOR-START INDUCTION-RUN SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	66.6	68.5	62.2
0.33	—	70.5	72.4	66.6
0.50	—	72.4	76.2	76.2
0.75	—	76.2	81.8	80.2
1	—	80.4	82.6	81.1
1.5	—	81.5	83.8	N/A
2	—	82.9	84.5	N/A
3	—	84.1	N/A	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with **DOE 10 CFR 431**.

C405.9 Data centers and computer rooms. Electrical equipment in data centers and computer rooms shall comply with this section.

C405.9.1 Data centers. Transformers, uninterruptable power supplies, motors and electrical power processing equipment in *data centers* shall comply with Section 8 of ASHRAE 90.4 in addition to this code.

C405.9.2 Computer rooms. Uninterruptable power supplies in computer rooms shall comply with the requirements in Tables 8.5 and 8.6 of ASHRAE 90.4 in addition to this code.

Exception: AC-output UPS that utilizes standardized NEMA 1-15P or NEMA 5-15P input plug, as specified in ANSI/NEMA WD-6-2016.

C405.10 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment. Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

C405.10.1 Elevator cabs. For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. *Ventilation* fans in elevators that do not have their own air-conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize *ventilation* fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

C405.10.2 Escalators and moving walks. Escalators and moving walks shall comply with **ASME A17.1/CSA B44** and shall have *automatic* controls that reduce speed as permitted in accordance with **ASME A17.1/CSA B44** and applicable local code.

Exception: A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions is an alternative to the reduced speed function.

C405.10.2.1 Energy recovery. Escalators shall be designed to recover electrical energy when resisting overspeed in the down direction.

C405.11 Voltage drop. The total *voltage drop* across the combination of customer-owned service conductors, feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors shall not exceed 5 percent.

C405.12 Automatic receptacle control. The following shall have *automatic* receptacle control complying with **Section C405.12.1**, :

1. At least 50 percent of all 125V, 15- and 20-amp receptacles installed in enclosed offices, conference rooms, rooms used primarily for copy or print functions, breakrooms, classrooms and individual workstations, including those installed in modular partitions and module office workstation systems.
2. At least 25 percent of branch circuit feeders installed for modular furniture not shown on the *construction documents*.

C405.12.1 Automatic receptacle control function. *Automatic* receptacle controls shall comply with the following:

1. Either split controlled receptacles shall be provided with the top receptacle controlled, or a controlled receptacle shall be located within 12 inches (304.8 mm) of each uncontrolled receptacle.
2. One of the following methods shall be used to provide control:

2.1. A scheduled basis using a time-of-day operated control device that turns receptacle power off at specific programmed times and can be programmed separately for each day of the week. The control device shall be configured to provide an independent schedule for each portion of the *building* of not more than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) and not more than one floor. The occupant shall be able to manually override an area for not more than 2 hours. Any individual override switch shall control the receptacles of not more than 5,000 feet (1524 m).

2.2. An *occupant sensor control* that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving a space.

2.3. An automated signal from another control or alarm system that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes after determining that the area is unoccupied.

3. All controlled receptacles shall be permanently marked in accordance with **NFPA 70** and be uniformly distributed throughout the space.
4. Plug-in devices shall not comply.

Exceptions: *Automatic* receptacle controls are not required for the following:

1. Receptacles specifically designated for equipment requiring continuous operation (24 hours per day, 365 days per year).
2. Spaces where an *automatic* control would endanger the safety or security of the room or *building* occupants.
3. Within a single modular office workstation, noncontrolled receptacles are permitted to be located more than 12 inches (304.8 mm), but not more than 72 inches (1828 mm) from the controlled receptacles serving that workstation.

C405.13 Energy monitoring. New *buildings* with a gross *conditioned floor area* of not less than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and report energy consumption ~~data~~ in ~~compliance~~ accordance with **Sections C405.13.1,** through **~~C405.13.5,~~** ~~.~~C405.13.6 for load categories indicated in Table C405.13.2 and Section C405.13.7 through C405.13.11 for end-use categories indicated in Table C405.13.8.~~A plan for quantifying annual energy type and end-use disclosure in compliance with Sections C405.13.1 through C405.13.8 shall be submitted with the *construction documents* .~~

Exceptions:

1. *Dwelling units* in R-2 occupancies
2. Individual tenant spaces are not required to comply with this section provided that the space has its own utility services and meters and has less than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* .

C405.13.1 Electrical energy metering. For ~~all~~ electrical energy supplied to the *building* and its associated site, including but not limited to site lighting, parking, recreational facilities and other areas that serve the *building* and its occupants, meters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by **Section C405.13.2,** .

C405.13.2 End-use electric metering categories. Meters or other *approved* measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category indicated in **Table C405.13.2**. Where multiple meters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the ~~measured~~design load for each of the end-use categories indicated in **Table C405.13.2** shall be permitted to be from a load that is not within that category.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water heating equipment serving only an individual *dwelling unit* shall not require end-use metering.
2. End-use metering shall not be required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.
3. End-use metering shall not be required for an individual tenant space having a floor area not greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) where a dedicated source meter complying with **Section C405.13.3,** is provided.

TABLE C405.13.2
ELECTRICAL ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

LOAD CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF ENERGY USE
Total HVAC system	Heating, cooling and ventilation, including but not limited to fans, pumps, boilers, chillers and water heating. Energy used by 120-volt equipment, or by 208/120-volt equipment that is located in a building where the main service is 480/277-volt power, is permitted to be excluded from total HVAC system energy use.
Interior lighting	Lighting systems located within the building.
Exterior lighting	Lighting systems located on the building site but not within the building.
Plug loads	Devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacle outlets.
Process load	Any single load that is not included in an HVAC, lighting or plug load category and that exceeds 5 percent of the peak connected load of the whole building, including but not limited to data centers, manufacturing equipment and commercial kitchens.
Electric vehicle charging	*Electric vehicle* charging loads that are powered through the *building*'s electrical service.
Building operations and other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to vertical transportation systems, automatic doors, motorized shading systems, ornamental fountains, ~~ornamental~~ fireplaces, swimming pools, ~~in-ground~~ spas and snow-melt systems.
Electric hot water heating for uses other than space conditioning	Electricity used to generate hot water. **Exception:** Electric water heating with design capacity that is less than 10 percent of building service rating

C405.13.3 Electrical meters. Meters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by **Section C405.13.4,** . Source meters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter. Lighting, HVAC or other *building* systems that can self-monitor their energy consumption shall be permitted instead of meters. Current sensors shall be permitted, provided that they have a tested accuracy of ±2 percent. Required metering systems and equipment shall have the capability to provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report in accordance with **Sections C405.13.4,** and **C405.13.5,** .Non-intrusive load monitoring (NILM) packages that extract energy consumption data from detailed electric waveform analysis shall be permitted to substitute for individual meters if the equivalent data is available for collection in Section C405.13.4 and reporting in Section C405.13.5.

C405.13.4 Electrical energy data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices for a minimum of 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real-time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section **C405.13.2,** .The data acquisition system shall have the capability of providing *building* total peak electric demand and the time(s) of day and time(s) per month at which the peak occurs. Peak demand shall be integrated over the same time period as the underlying whole *building* meter reading rate.

C405.13.5 Graphical energy report. A permanent and readily ~~accessible~~ available reporting mechanism shall be provided in the *building* ~~that is accessible~~ for access by *building* operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide the electrical energy consumption for each end-use category required by **Section C405.13.2,** not less than every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months. ~~The graphical report shall incorporate natural gas interval data or the ability to enter gas utility bills into the report.~~

~~**C405.13.6 Non-electrical energy.** Consumption of non-electrical fuel or energy sources including district heating or cooling shall be metered in accordance with Sections C405.13.2 and C405.13.3.~~

~~C405.13.7~~C405.13.6 Renewable energy. On-site renewable energy sources shall be metered with not less frequency than non-renewable energy systems in accordance with Section C405.13.3.

C405.13.7 Non-electrical energy submetering. For all non-electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site that serves the building and its occupants, submeters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by Section C405.13.8.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit shall not require end-use submetering.
2. End-use submetering shall not be required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.
3. End-use submetering shall not be required for an individual tenant space having a floor area not greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) where a dedicated source meter complying with Section C405.13.9 is provided.
4. Equipment powered primarily by solid fuels serving loads other than building heating and service water heating loads.

~~**C405.13.8 Plan for disclosure.** The plan for annual energy use data gathering and disclosure shall include the following:~~

1. ~~Property information including:~~
   ~~1.1 Address~~
   ~~1.2 Gross floor area~~
   ~~1.3 Year occupied~~
   ~~1.4 Occupancy classifications, with respective floor areas~~
2. ~~Total annual *building site* energy use by unit area as collected or documented through Section C405.13.5 and Section C405.13.6 sources, separated by energy type and fuel type.~~
3. ~~Annual site generated renewable energy by unit area .~~

C405.13.8 End-use non-electrical submetering categories. Submeters or other approved measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category indicated in Table C405.13.8. Where multiple submeters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the design load for each of the end-use categories indicated in Table C405.13.8 shall be permitted to be from a load that is not within that category.

TABLE C405.13.8
NON-ELECTRICAL ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

END USE CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF END USE
Total HVAC system	Heating and cooling systems, including but not limited to boilers, chillers and furnaces. District heating and cooling energy entering the buildings distribution system shall, be monitored at the point of entry to the building distribution system.
Process loads	Any single load that is not included in the HVAC or service water heating categories where the rated fuel gas or fuel oil input of the load and that is not less than 5 percent of the sum of the rated fuel gas or fuel oil input of all monitored equipment, including but not limited to manufacturing equipment, process equipment, commercial kitchens, and commercial laundry equipment.
Other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to fireplaces, swimming pools, spas, gas lighting, and snow-melt systems.
Service water heating	Fuel used to heat potable water **Exception:** Water heating with design capacity that is less than 10 percent of the sum of the rated fuel gas or fuel oil input of all monitored equipment.

C405.13.9 Non-electrical submeters. Submeters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by Section C405.13.10. Source submeters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter that can provide a digital output to the data acquisition system. Required submetering systems and equipment shall be fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report that updates at least hourly in accordance with Sections C405.13.10 and C405.13.11.

C405.13.10 Non-electrical energy data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required submeters and other sensing devices for not less than 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section C405.13.8. The data acquisition system shall have the capability of providing building total non-electrical peak demand and the time(s) of day and time(s) per month at which the peak occurs. Where applicable as determined by the AHJ, peak demand shall be integrated over the same time period as the underlying whole building meter reading rate.

C405.13.11 Graphical energy report. A permanent and readily accessible reporting mechanism shall be provided in the building that is accessible by building operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide the non-electrical energy consumption for each end-use category required by Section C405.13.8 not less than every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months. The graphical report shall incorporate natural gas interval data from the submeter or the ability to enter gas utility bills into the report.

C405.14 Electric Vehicle Power Transfer Infrastructure. Parking facilities shall be provided with electric vehicle power transfer infrastructure in accordance with Sections C405.14.1 through C405.14.6.

C405.14.1 Quantity. The number of required EV spaces, EV capable spaces and EV ready spaces shall be determined in accordance with this Section and Table C405.14.1 based on the total number of automobile parking spaces and shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number. For R-2 buildings, the Table requirements shall be based on the total number of dwelling units or the total number of automobile parking spaces, whichever is less.

1. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a *building* site, the number of required automobile parking spaces required to have EV power transfer infrastructure shall be calculated separately for each parking facility.
2. Where one shared parking facility serves multiple *building* occupancies, the required number of spaces shall be determined proportionally based on the floor area of each *building* occupancy.
3. Installed EVSE spaces that exceed the minimum requirements of this section may be used to meet minimum requirements for EV ready spaces and EV capable spaces.
4. Installed EV ready spaces that exceed the minimum requirements of this section may be used to meet minimum requirements for EV capable spaces.
5. Where the number of EV ready spaces allocated for R-2 occupancies is equal to the number of dwelling units or to the number of automobile parking spaces allocated to R-2 occupancies, whichever is less, requirements for EVSE spaces for R-2 occupancies shall not apply.
6. Requirements for a Group S-2 parking garage shall be determined by the occupancies served by that parking garage. Where new automobile spaces do not serve specific occupancies, the values for Group S-2 parking garage in Table C405.14.1 shall be used.

Exception: Parking facilities, serving occupancies other than R2 with fewer than 10 automobile parking spaces.

TABLE C405.14.1
REQUIRED EV POWER TRANSFER INFRASTRUCTURE

Occupancy	EVSE Spaces	EV Ready Spaces	EV Capable Spaces
Group A	10%	0%	10%
Group B	15%	0%	30%
Group E	15%	0%	30%
Group F	2%	0%	5%
Group H	1%	0%	0%
Group I	15%	0%	30%
Group M	15%	0%	30%
Group R-1	20%	5%	75%
Group R-2	20%	5%	75%
Group R-3 and R-4	2%	0%	5%
Group S exclusive of parking garages	1%	0%	0%
Group S-2 parking garages	15%	0%	30%

C405.14.2 EV Capable Spaces. Each EV capable space used to meet the requirements of Section C405.14.1 shall comply with the following:

1. A continuous raceway or cable assembly shall be installed between an enclosure or outlet located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the EV capable space and electrical distribution equipment.
2. Installed raceway or cable assembly shall be sized and rated to supply a minimum circuit capactiy in accordance with Section C405.14.5
3. The electrical distribution equipment to which the raceway or cable assembly connects shall have dedicated overcurrent protection device space and electrical capacity to supply a calculated load in accordance with Section C405.14.5 .
4. The enclosure or outlet and the electrical distribution equipment directory shall be marked: "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

C405.14.3 EV Ready Spaces. Each branch circuit serving EV ready spaces used to meet the requirements of Section C405.14.1 shall comply with the following:

1. Terminate at an outlet or enclosure, located within 3 feet (914 mm) of each EV ready space it serves.
2. Have a minimum system and circuit capacity in accordance with Section C405.14.5.
3. The electrical distribution equipment directory shall designate the brach circuit as "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)" and the outlet or enclosure shall be marked "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

C405.14.4 EVSE Spaces. An installed EVSE with multiple output connections shall be permitted to serve multiple EVSE spaces. Each EVSE installed to meet the requirements of Section C405.14.1, serving either a single EVSE space or multiple EVSE spaces, shall comply with the following:

1. Have a minimum system and circuit capacity in accordance with Section C405.14.5.
2. Have a nameplate rating not less than 6.2kW.
3. Be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of each EVSE space it serves.
4. Be installed in accordance with Section C405.14.6.

~~**C405.14.4.1**~~

C405.14.5 System and circuit capacity The system and circuit capacity shall comply with C405.14.5.1 and C405.14.5.2.

C405.14.5.1 System capacity. The electrical distribution equipment supplying the branch circuit(s) serving each EV capable space, EV ready space, and EVSE space shall comply with one of the following:

1. Have a calculated load of 7.2 kVA or the nameplate rating of the equipment, whichever is larger, for each EV capable space, EV ready space, and EVSE space.
2. Meets the requirements of Section C405.14.5.3.1

C405.14.5.2 Circuit Capacity. The branch circuit serving each EV capable space, EV ready space, and EVSE space shall comply with one of the following:

1. Have a rated capacity not less than 50 amperes or the nameplate rating of the equipment, whichever is larger .

2. Meets the requirements of Section C405.14.5.3.2.

C405.14.5.3 System and circuit capacity management. Where system and circuit capacity management is selected in Section C405.14.5.1(2) or Section C405.14.5.2(2), the installation shall comply with Sections C405.14.5.3.1 and C405.14.5.3.2.

C405.14.5.3.1 System capacity management. The maximum equipment load on the electrical distribution equipment supplying the branch circuits(s) serving EV capable spaces, EV ready spaces, and EVSE spaces controlled by an energy management system shall be the maximum load permitted by the energy management system, but not less than 3.3 kVA per space.

C405.14.5.3.2 Circuit Capacity Management. Each branch circuit serving multiple EVSE spaces, EV ready spaces or EV capable spaces controlled by an energy management system shall comply with one of the following:

1. Have a minimum capacity of 25 amperes per space.
2. Have a minimum capacity of 20 amperes per space for R-2 occupancies when all automobile parking spaces are EV ready spaces or EVSE spaces.

C405.14.6 EVSE Installation. EVSE shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 and shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2202 or UL 2594. EVSE shall be accessible in accordance with *International Building Code* Section 1107.

C405.15 Renewable energy systems. *Buildings* in Climate Zones 0-7 shall comply with Sections C405.15.1 through C405.15.4

C405.15.1 On-site renewable energy systems. *Buildings* shall be provided with on-site renewable electricity generation systems with a direct current (DC) nameplate power rating of not less than 0.75 W/ft^2 (8.1 W/m^2) multiplied by the sum of the gross *conditioned floor area* of all floors not to exceed the combined gross *conditioned floor area* of the three largest floors.

Exceptions: The following buildings or *building* sites shall comply with Section C405.15.2:

1. A *building* site located where an unshaded flat plate collector oriented toward the equator and tilted at an angle from horizontal equal to the latitude receives an annual daily average incident solar radiation less than 1.1 kBtu/ft^2 - day (3.5 kWh/m^2 - day).
2. A *building* where more than 80 percent of the roof area is covered by any combination of permanent obstructions such as, but not limited to, mechanical equipment, vegetated space, access, pathways, or occupied roof terrace.
3. Any *building* where more than 50 percent of the roof area is shaded from direct-beam sunlight by natural objects or by structures that are not part of the buildng for more than 2500 annual hours between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m.
4. A *building* with gross *conditioned floor area* less than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2).

C405.15.2 Off-site renewable energy. *Buildings* that qualify for one or more of the exceptions to Section C405.15.1 and do not meet the requirements of Section C405.15.1 , with an *on-site renewable energy* system, shall procure off-site renewable electrical energy, in accordance with Sections C405.15.2.1 and C405.15.2.2, that shall not be less than the total off-site renewable electrical energy determined in accordance with Equation 4-11.

$$\text{TREoff} = (\text{RENoff} \times 0.75\ \text{W/ft}^2 \times \text{FLRA} - \text{IREon}) \times 15 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-11)}$$

TREoff = Total off-site renewable electrical energy in kilowatt-hours (kWh) to be procured in accordance with Table C405.15.2
RENoff = Annual off-site renewable electrical energy from Table C405.15.2, in units of kilowatt-hours per watt of array capacity
FLRA = the sum of the gross *conditioned floor area* of all floors not to exceed the combined floor area of the three largest floors
IREon = Annual on-site renewable electrical energy generation of a new *on-site renewable energy* system, to be installed as part of the *building* project, whose rated capacity is less than the rated capacity required in Section C405.15.1

TABLE C405.15.2
ANNUAL OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY REQUIREMENTS

Climate Zone	Annual Off-site Renewable Electrical Energy (kWh/W)
1A, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, and 5B	1.75 kWh/W
0A, 0B, 1B, 2A, 3A, and 6B	1.55 kWh/W
4A, 4C, 5A, 5C, 6A, and 7	1.35 kWh/W

C405.15.2.1 Off-site procurement. The *building owner* as defined in the *International Building Code* shall procure and be credited for the total amount of off-site renewable electrical energy, not less than required in accordance with Equation 4-~~14~~11, with one or more of the following:

1. *Physical renewable energy power purchase agreement*
2. *Financial renewable energy power purchase agreement*
3. *Community renewable energy facility*
4. Off-site renewable energy system owned by the *building* property *owner*
5. *Renewable energy investment fund*
6. *Green retail tariff*

The generation source shall be located where the energy can be delivered to the *building* site by any of the following:

1. Direct connection to the off-site renewable energy facility
2. The local utility or distribution entity
3. An interconnected electrical network where energy delivery capacity between the generator and the *building* site is available

C405.15.2.2 Off-site contract. The *renewable energy* shall be delivered or credited to the *building* site under an energy contract with a duration of not less than 10 years. The contract shall be structured to survive a partial or full transfer of ownership of the *building* property.

C405.15.3 Renewable energy certificate documentation. The property *owner* or owner's authorized agent shall demonstrate that where RECs or EACs are associated with on-site and off-site renewable energy production required by Sections C405.15.1 and C405.15.2 all of the following criteria for RECs and EACs shall be met:

1. The RECS and EACS are retained and retired by or on behalf of the property *owner* or tenant for a period of not less than 15 years or the duration of the contract in C405.15.2.2 whichever is less;
2. The RECS and EACS are created within a 12-month period of the use of the REC; and
3. The RECS and EACS are from a generating asset placed in service no more than 5 years before the issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

C405.15.4 Renewable energy certificate purchase. A *building* that qualifies for one or more of the exceptions to Section C405.15.1 and where it can be demonstrated to the *code official* that the requirements of Section C405.15.2 cannot be met, the *building owner* shall contract the purchase of renewable electricity products before the certificate of occupancy complying with the Green-e Energy National Standard for Renewable Electricity products equivalent to five times the amount of total off-site renewable energy calculated in accordance with Equation 4-~~14~~11.

C405.16 Electrical energy storage system. *Buildings* shall comply with Section C405.16.1 or Section C405.16.2.

C405.16.1 Electrical energy storage system (ESS) capacity. Each *building* shall have one or more ESS with a total rated energy capacity and rated power capacity as follows:

1. ESS rated energy capacity (kWh)≥1.0 x Installed On-site Renewable Electric Energy System Rated Power (kWDC)
2. ESS rated power capacity (kW)≥0.25 x Installed On-site Renewable Electric Energy System Rated Power (kWDC).

Where installed, DC coupled battery systems shall meet the requirements for rated energy capacity alone.

C405.16.2 Electrical energy storage system ready. Each *building* shall have one or more reserved ESS-ready areas to accommodate future electrical storage in accordance with Sections C405.16.2.1 through C405.16.2.4.

C405.16.2.1 ESS-ready location. Each ESS-ready area shall be located in accordance with Section 1207 of the *International Fire Code.*

C405.16.2.2 ESS-ready minimum area requirements. Each ESS-ready area shall be sized in accordance with the spacing requirements of Section 1207 of the *International Fire Code* and the UL9540 or UL9540A designated rating of the planned system. Where rated to UL9540A, the area shall be sized in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C405.16.2.3 Electrical distribution equipment. The onsite electrical distribution equipment shall have sufficient capacity, rating, and space to allow installation of overcurrent devices and circuit wiring in accordance with NFPA 70 for future electrical ESS installation complying with the capacity criteria of Section C405.16.2.4.

C405.16.2.4 ESS-ready minimum system capacity. Compliance with ESS-ready requirements in Sections C405.16.2.1 through C405.16.2.3 shall be based on a minimum total energy capacity and minimum rated power capacity as follows:

1. ESS rated energy capacity (kWh) ≥ gross *conditioned floor area* of the three largest floors (ft^2) x 0.0008 kWh/ft^2
2. ESS rated power capacity (~~kWh~~kW) ≥ gross *conditioned floor area* of the three largest floors (ft^2) x 0.0002 ~~kWh~~kW/ft^2

C405.17 Inverters. Direct-current-to-alternating-current inverters serving on-site renewable energy systems or on-site electrical energy storage systems shall be compliant with IEEE 1547-2018a and UL 1741-2021.

SECTION C406
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY, RENEWABLE, AND LOAD MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

C406.1 Compliance. *Buildings* shall comply as follows:

1. *Buildings* with greater than 2000 square feet (190 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* shall comply with Section C406.1.1.
2. *Buildings* with greater than 5000 square feet (465 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* shall comply with Sections C406.1.1 and C406.1.2.
3. Build-out construction greater than 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* that does not have final lighting or final HVAC systems installed under a prior building permit shall comply with Section ~~C406.1.3~~C406.1.1.2.

Exception: Core and shell *buildings* where no less than 20 percent of the *net floor area* is without final lighting or final HVAC that comply with all of the following:

1. *Buildings* with greater than 5000 (465 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* shall comply with

Section C406.1.2.

2. Portions of the *building* where the *net floor area* is without final lighting or final HVAC shall comply with Section ~~C406.1.3~~C406.1.1.2.
3. Portions of the *building* where the *net floor area* has final lighting and final HVAC systems shall comply with C406.1.1.

C406.1.1 Additional energy efficiency credit requirements. *Buildings* shall comply with measures from C406.2 to achieve not less than the number of required efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1) based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone* including any energy credit adjustments in accordance with C406.1.1.1.

Where a project contains multiple occupancies, the total required energy credits ~~in Table C406.1.1(1)~~ from each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the gross *conditioned floor area* to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of Section C406.

Exceptions:

1. Portions of buildings devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.
2. Where a *building* achieves more renewable and load management credits in Section C406.3 than are required in Section C406.1.2, surplus credits shall be permitted to reduce the required energy efficiency credits as follows:

$$EEC_{red} = EEC_{tbl} - \{the\ lesser\ of: (SRLM_{lim}, \quad SRLM_{adj} \times [RLM_{ach} - RLM_{req}])\}$$

EEC_{red} = Reduced required energy efficiency credits
EEC_{tbl} = Required energy efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1)
$SRLM_{lim}$ = Surplus renewable and load management credit limit from Table C406.1.1(2)
$SRLM_{adj}$ = 1.0 for all-electric or all-renewable buildings (excluding emergency generation) 0.7 for buildings with fossil fuel equipment (excluding emergency generation)
RLM_{ach} = Achieved renewable and load management credits from Section C406.3
RLM_{req} = Required renewable and load management credits from Section C406.1.2

C406.1.1.1 Buildings without heat pumps The number of efficiency credits required by Section C406.1.1 shall be multiplied by 1.25 for the following:

1. Buildings using purchased energy that is not electricity for space heating or service water heating,
2. Buildings with electric storage water heaters that are not heat pumps
3. Buildings with total heat pump space heating capacity less than the space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1

~~Buildings using *purchased energy* that is not electricity for space heating or *service water heating*, *buildings* with electric storage water heaters that are not heat pumps and buildings with total heat pump space heating capacity less than the space heating load~~

~~at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1 shall comply with measures from C406.2 to achieve not less than 1.25 multiplied by the number of required efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1 based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone*. Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits in Table C406.1.1 from each *building* occupancy shall be multiplied by 1.25 and weighted by the gross *conditioned floor area* to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of Section C406.~~

Exceptions:

1. Portions of *buildings* devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.
2. *Buildings* complying with all of the following:
   - 2.1 The *building's* peak heating load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1 is greater than the *building's* peak cooling load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.
   - 2.2 The *building's* total heat pump space heating capacity is not less than 50 percent of the *building's* space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.
   - 2.3 Any energy source other than electricity or *on-site renewable energy* is used for space heating only when a heat pump cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the *thermostat* setting.
   - 2.4 Electric resistance heat is used only in accordance with Section C403.4.1.1.
3. Low-energy buildings complying with Section C402.1.1.1.
4. Portions of buildings in Utility and Miscellaneous Group U, Storage Group S, Factory Group F, or High-Hazard Group H.
5. Buildings located in climate zones 0A, 0B, 1A, 1B, 2A and 2B.

C406.1.1.2 Building Core/Shell and Build-Out Construction. Where separate permits are issued for core and shell buildings and build-outconstruction, compliance shall be in accordance with the following requirements.

1. Core and shell buildings or portions of buildings shall comply with one of the following:
   - 1.1. Where the permit includes a central HVAC system or *service water heating* system with chillers, heat pumps, boilers, *service water heating* equipment, or loop pumping systems with heat rejection, the project shall achieve not less than 50 percent of the energy credits required by Sections C406.1.1 and C406.1.1.1 in accordance with Section C406.2.
   - 1.2. Alternatively, the project shall achieve not less than 33 percent of the energy credits required by Sections C406.1.1 and C406.1.1.1.
2. For core and shell *buildings* or portions of *buildings* the energy credits achieved shall be subject to the following adjustments:
   - 2.1. Lighting measure credits shall be determined only for areas with final lighting installed.
   - 2.2. Where HVAC or *service water heating* systems are designed to serve the entire *building*, full HVAC or *service water heating* measure credits shall be achieved.
   - 2.3. Where HVAC or *service water heating* systems are designed to serve individual areas, HVAC or *service water heating* measure credits achieved shall be reduced in proportion to the floor area with final HVAC systems or final *service water heating* systems installed.

3. Build-out construction shall be deemed to comply with Section C406.1 where either:
   3.1. Where heating and cooling generation are provided by a previously installed central system, the energy credits achieved in accordance with Section C406.2 under the build-out project are not less than 33 percent of the credits required by Section C406.1.1 and C406.1.1.1.
   3.2. Where heating and cooling generation are provided by an HVAC system installed in the build out, the energy credits achieved in accordance with Section C406.2 under the build-out project are not less than 50 percent of the credits required by Section C406.1.1 and C406.1.1.1.
   3.3. Where the core and shell *building* was *approved* in accordance with Section C407 under 2021 IECC or later.

TABLE C406.1.1(1)
ENERGY CREDIT REQUIREMENTS BY BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP

Building Occupancy Group	Climate Zone																		
	0A	**0B**	**1A**	**1B**	**2A**	**2B**	**3A**	**3B**	**3C**	**4A**	**4B**	**4C**	**5A**	**5B**	**5C**	**6A**	**6B**	**7**	**8**
R-2, R-4, and I-1	65	66	67	77	80	86	80	81	90	86	90	90	86	90	90	70	89	80	78
I-2	43	42	38	37	36	38	32	32	30	36	36	35	43	43	44	46	47	50	53
R-1	63	62	66	65	70	71	77	80	84	81	83	88	85	86	90	83	87	87	85
B	62	62	64	66	66	65	64	64	68	70	72	74	71	73	77	71	74	74	71
A-2	70	70	72	72	75	75	70	73	82	69	74	78	67	72	78	60	67	57	51
M	80	79	83	79	81	84	67	74	87	80	66	65	79	62	50	75	67	75	58
E	56	57	55	58	58	57	59	62	59	61	66	62	64	67	67	65	67	63	58
S-1 and S-2	61	60	61	60	58	57	44	54	62	85	68	75	90	82	72	90	89	90	90
All Other	31	31	31	32	32	33	30	32	36	35	35	35	37	36	36	36	37	36	34

TABLE C406.1.1(2)
LIMIT TO ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDIT CARRYOVER FROM RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS

-	CLIMATE ZONE																		
BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP	0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R-2, R-4, AND I-1	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	~~5~~24	~~5~~19	5	~~5~~22	~~5~~18	5	5	~~5~~19	5	5	5	5
I-2	16	14	11	8	6	5	5	~~5~~10	~~5~~6	~~5~~8	~~5~~14	~~5~~10	~~6~~17	~~15~~26	~~18~~29	~~10~~21	~~14~~21	~~10~~22	~~25~~39
R-1	7	5	8	5	19	5	~~13~~32	~~20~~40	~~20~~41	~~5~~24	~~20~~41	~~20~~42	~~5~~17	~~16~~37	~~18~~41	5	~~5~~24	~~5~~15	~~5~~22
B	7	5	5	8	6	6	~~5~~14	~~10~~26	~~14~~31	~~5~~23	~~21~~39	~~15~~34	~~5~~19	~~16~~35	~~26~~45	5	~~5~~19	~~5~~17	~~9~~27
A-2	18	16	14	15	13	9	~~5~~11	~~5~~23	~~11~~32	5	~~5~~23	~~5~~23	5	5	~~7~~26	5	5	5	5
M	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	~~5~~20	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
E	13	13	18	16	17	14	~~6~~21	~~20~~35	~~25~~40	~~9~~25	~~26~~43	~~13~~29	~~7~~23	~~15~~32	~~10~~27	~~5~~11	~~5~~17	~~9~~25	5
S-1 AND S-2	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	~~5~~13	5	~~5~~17	~~5~~20	5	~~14~~35	~~5~~23	5	5	~~5~~11	~~17~~40
All Other	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	~~5~~7	~~5~~17	5	~~5~~10	~~5~~7	5	~~5~~6	~~5~~11	5	5	5	5

C406.1.2 Additional renewable and load management credit requirements. Buildings shall comply with measures from Section C406.3 to achieve not less than the number of required renewable and load management credits from Table C406.1.2 based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone*. Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits in Table C406.1.2 from each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the gross floor area to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of Section C406.

> **Exception:** Where a *building* achieves more energy efficiency credits in Section C406.2 than are required in Section C406.1.1, the renewable and load management credits required in Table C406.1.2 shall be permitted to be reduced by the amount of surplus energy efficiency credits~~, not to exceed a 30 percent reduction~~.

TABLE C406.1.2
RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDIT REQUIREMENTS BY BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP

Building Occupancy Group	Climate Zone																		
	0A	**0B**	**1A**	**1B**	**2A**	**2B**	**3A**	**3B**	**3C**	**4A**	**4B**	**4C**	**5A**	**5B**	**5C**	**6A**	**6B**	**7**	**8**
R-2, R-4, and I-1	34	37	31	46	48	56	49	56	38	31	42	32	26	33	34	23	27	25	25
I-2	23	24	25	25	25	28	26	30	22	25	32	24	25	28	29	26	28	22	20
R-1	30	28	35	30	34	36	34	37	41	32	37	27	28	33	32	25	29	22	18
B	38	39	45	42	45	49	47	56	57	44	55	42	38	47	46	38	45	38	31
A-2	8	8	9	9	8	9	9	11	13	8	11	9	8	10	9	8	9	8	3
M	32	32	42	37	39	47	44	58	57	42	54	46	38	48	5	42	45	38	34
E	27	34	38	37	39	47	44	58	57	42	54	46	38	48	50	42	45	38	34
S-1 and S-2	89	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	70	90	90	84	86	71	54
All Other	35	39	46	42	46	52	49	56	56	40	52	42	37	44	44	36	39	32	28

C406.1.4

C406.1.5

C406.2 Additional Energy Efficiency Credits Achieved. Each energy efficiency credit measure used to meet credit requirements for the project shall have efficiency that is greater than the requirements in Sections C402 through C405. Measures installed in the project that meet the requirements in Sections C406.2.1 through C406.2. ~~7~~6 shall achieve the base credits listed for the measure and occupancy type in Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9) or, where calculations required by Sections C406.2.1 through C406.2.~~7~~6 create or modify the table credits, the credits achieved shall be based upon the calculations. Energy credits achieved for measures shall be determined by one of the following, as applicable:

1. The measure's energy credit shall be the base energy credit from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9) for the measure where no adjustment factor or calculation is included in the description of the measure in Section C406.2.
2. The measure's energy credit shall be the base energy credit for the measure adjusted by a factor or equation as stated in the description of the measure in Section C406.2. Where adjustments are applied, each measure's energy credit shall be rounded to the nearest whole number.
3. The measure's energy credit shall be calculation as stated in the measures description in Section C406.2, where each individual measure credit shall be rounded to the nearest whole number.

Energy credits achieved for the project shall be the sum of the individual measure's energy credits. Credits are available for the measures listed in this Section. Where a project contains multiple *building* occupancy groups:

1. Credits achieved for each occupancy group shall be summed and then weighted by the *conditioned floor area* of each occupancy group to determine the weighted average project energy credits achieved.
2. Improved envelope efficiency (E01 through E06), HVAC Performance (H01) and lighting reduction (L06) measure credits shall be determined for the *building* or permitted *conditioned floor area* as a whole. Credits for other measures shall be determined for each occupancy separately. Credits shall be taken from applicable tables or calculations for each occupancy and weighted by the *building* occupancy group floor area.

TABLE C406.2(1)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP R-2, R-4, AND I-1 OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	7	6	2	4	1	1	4	1	1	22	1	3	29	10	1	32	27	30	39
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	15	10	12	8	6	16	13	5	1	7	7	9	65	16	11	73	43	52	26
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	3	1	5	3	4	6	5	4	7	7	6	8
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	10	10	6	8	5	6	8	4	1	8	3	4	11	7	3	14	12	13	13
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	7	7	4	6	9	11	13	3	1	22	5	10	27	18	7	41	33	22	21
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	20	19	16	17	14	13	11	11	5	13	10	8	15	12	7	18	14	17	19
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	3	1	1	6	2	3	10	5	2	14	10	13	16
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	7	6	4	4	3	3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	9	10	8	22	20	25	16	17	32	21	24	17	23	27	16	21	24	18	18
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	32	31	27	28	23	23	28	21	12	42	24	24	56	36	19	73	54	70	79
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	61	63	74	74	85	88	101	100	121	103	109	122	102	111	130	93	106	99	96
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	50	52	62	61	72	74	86	85	104	88	94	106	88	96	112	81	92	87	84
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	38	39	46	46	53	55	63	62	76	64	68	76	64	69	81	58	66	62	60
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	7	7	8	7	8	8	8	9	10	8	9	9	7	8	9	6	7	6	6
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	3	3	2
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	12	12	13	13	14	15	15	15	18	14	15	16	13	14	16	11	13	11	10
W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	11	11	13	13	15	16	18	18	22	19	20	22	19	20	24	17	20	18	18
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	22	22	27	26	31	32	37	37	45	38	40	45	38	41	48	35	39	37	36

W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	15	16	19	19	22	23	26	26	32	27	29	32	27	29	34	25	28	27	26
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	3	3	2	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	2	2	3
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	3	3	4	4	4	4	3	4	3	2	3	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	8	8	9	9	9	9	8	8	10	6	8	7	4	6	8	3	5	4	3
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	5	4	5	5	4	4	5	4	4	4	3
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	15	15	17	16	17	18	17	18	20	16	17	18	15	16	18	13	15	13	12
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	2	3	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	1	1	2	1	3	2	3	3

a. "x" indicates credit is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(2)~~TABLE C406.2(2)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP I-2 OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	3	1	3	11	27	7	10	3	3	2	10
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	5	3	4	3	5	8	8	3	2	6	2	2	7	3	1	9	7	19	5
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	3
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	1	3	1	3	2	2	9	4	1	4	1	1	3	1	1	3	3	3	3
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	3	5	5	1	1	5	5	2	2
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	2	3	4	3	7	6	4	6	8	6	10	11	12	15	19
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	6	6	4	4	3	3	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	41	41	40	40	42	36	42	37	39	49	40	46	56	46	61	65	68	82	93
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	5	5	5
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	5	5	5	5	5	6	5	6	6	5	6	6	5	5	5	4	4	3	2
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	5	4	4	3	2
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	9	7	7	8	6	7	7	5	5	4	3
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	2	3	3	3	3	3	4	4

a. "x" indicates credit is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(3)~~TABLE C406.2(3)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP R-1 OCCUPANICES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	2	3	1	2	1	3	3	2	1	5	2	2	7	4	2	9	7	9	11
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	15	9	12	8	6	16	7	5	10	14	3	1	19	5	1	28	16	28	18
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	1	1	1	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	3	2	2	3
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	18	26	11	25	3	4	5	3	1	6	2	4	7	4	4	8	6	8	5
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	2	2	1	2	2	3	5	3	1	6	3	4	9	7	6	13	8	6	6
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	21	20	17	18	16	13	12	12	11	11	11	8	11	11	8	13	11	14	16
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	6	2	1	1	3	2	2	6	4	8	11
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	7	6	4	4	3	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	32	30	26	28	25	23	24	22	28	26	22	20	30	26	19	41	34	48	62
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	18	19	22	22	25	27	31	21	32	34	34	38	37	36	40	36	37	36	35
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	14	15	18	17	20	22	25	25	27	29	29	32	31	31	34	30	32	31	30
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	11	12	14	14	16	17	19	19	20	21	21	24	23	23	25	22	23	23	22
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	5	6	6	6	6	7	7	7	7	7	7	8	7	7	8	7	7	6	6

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	6	7	8	8	9	10	11	11	12	13	13	14	14	13	15	13	14	14	13
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	4	5	5	5	6	7	8	8	8	9	9	10	10	9	10	9	10	10	9
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	2	3	2	2	3	2	2	1	1
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	9	9	10	10	10	11	11	11	11	11	11	12	11	11	12	10	11	10	9
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	2

a. "x" indicates credit is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(4)~~TABLE C406.2(4)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	7	8	3	6	5	3	7	3	1	13	4	8	21	15	11	13	24	37	43
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	5	3	4	2	2	2	5	1	x	8	x	2	13	4	x	18	9	18	7
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	2	1	3	1	2	3	2	2	3	3	2	3
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	13	14	8	11	4	4	7	4	1	5	2	4	6	4	3	9	7	10	8
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	5	5	4	5	7	7	8	2	1	8	2	4	10	5	1	21	17	10	9
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	22	22	19	20	17	17	15	15	11	15	15	11	16	15	11	19	17	18	20
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	X	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	1	3	2	2	5	4	3	9	7	8	12
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	7	6	4	5	3	3	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	X	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	31	31	27	29	25	25	28	26	18	35	28	28	47	38	29	64	53	58	74
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	8	9	10	9	11	11	12	12	14	13	13	14	13	13	15	12	13	14	14
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	3	3	3	3	4	4	5	4	5	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	6	6
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	7	8	8	8	9	8	8	9	8	8	9	8
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	4	4
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	12	15	17	16	18	18	19	19	22	20	20	22	20	20	22	18	19	20	19
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	5	5

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	5	5	6	6	6	6	6	6	7	6	6	6	5	5	6	4	5	3	2
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	5	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	8	6	6	6	5	5	6	4	5	4	3
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	7	7	8	8	8	8	8	8	9	6	7	7	6	6	6	6	6	7	5
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	7	7	8	8	8	8	8	8	9	7	8	8	6	7	8	5	6	5	3
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	4	5	4	4
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3

a. "x" indicates measure is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(5)~~TABLE C406.2(5)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP A-2 OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	1	1	1	1	13	1	3	2	1	4	4	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	6
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	2	1	1	1	2	3	11	2	1	24	4	6	33	9	3	42	29	36	16
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	1	1	x	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	1	2	2	1	2
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	1	1	x	1	1	2	3	3	1	2	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	3	2	1	4	4	1	1
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	1	1	6	3	3	10	6	8	15	11	10	19	15	23	28
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	6	5	3	4	3	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	29	27	20	25	24	21	36	27	15	51	35	38	67	53	45	84	70	97	115
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	24	26	31	29	33	35	37	38	45	38	41	44	37	40	44	34	38	33	30
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	15	16	19	18	21	23	25	25	29	26	28	30	26	28	31	25	27	24	22
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	15	16	19	18	21	22	23	24	28	24	25	27	23	25	27	21	24	21	18
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	2	2	2	2
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	3	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	4	4	3	3	3	3

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	2	1	2	2	2	3
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	x
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	24	26	28	27	28	29	27	29	32	26	28	29	24	26	28	21	23	19	17
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	1	2	2	2	3	2	3	4

a. "x" indicates measure is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(6)~~TABLE C406.2(6)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	14	14	8	13	7	9	20	15	1	35	18	28	41	37	40	43	44	46	31
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	3	3	2	2	3	3	19	3	1	44	6	11	56	13	6	64	44	43	19
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	8	6	5	7	7	7	18	16	4	19	18	20	21	22	23	24	26	24	30
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	64	65	48	62	13	15	23	18	4	27	21	27	25	24	25	23	24	24	16
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	4	3	3	3	4	4	6	5	2	7	5	7	7	5	7	10	10	3	3
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	31	30	26	28	23	21	23	20	14	27	21	22	29	25	23	32	28	30	33
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	10	3	1	19	8	15	26	17	18	29	24	27	31
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	10	9	7	7	5	4	2	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	48	48	42	47	40	38	66	46	31	98	61	82	120	91	90	134	115	125	141
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	12	13	16	15	18	20	19	21	26	17	21	21	16	19	21	13	16	15	13
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	3	3	4	3	4	5	5	5	7	5	6	6	4	5	6	4	4	4	4
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	6	7	8	8	10	10	10	11	14	9	11	11	8	10	11	7	8	8	7
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	4	4
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	5	5
W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	9	9	11	10	12	13	11	13	15	9	12	11	7	9	10	5	7	5	3
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	9	9	11	10	12	13	12	13	15	10	12	11	7	10	11	6	8	5	4
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	12	13	15	14	16	17	15	16	20	11	14	13	9	12	11	8	10	10	8
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	12	12	14	14	15	16	12	15	19	8	12	9	6	10	7	6	7	6	5
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	3	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	5	3	4	4	3	4	4	3	3	3	2
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	1	2	2	2	3	2	3	4

a. "x" indicates credit is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(7)~~TABLE C406.2(7)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	8	18	7	19	12	13	20	17	11	24	20	17	33	32	29	40	38	46	44
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	4	3	3	3	2	5	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	1
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	8	8	4	9	5	7	16	7	1	14	7	10	18	13	13	23	25	22	28
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	5	7	4	8	3	6	8	6	2	6	3	6	5	5	6	7	6	7	8
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	8	10	6	9	11	11	15	9	1	16	8	15	22	18	19	33	29	19	18
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	30	28	25	26	23	21	20	18	15	19	18	17	19	20	15	23	20	25	29
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	4	3	3	5	5	10	9	11	6	15	11	18	26
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	9	8	6	7	5	4	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	45	42	37	41	36	34	41	39	30	43	46	58	57	65	40	79	63	88	117
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	7	7	9	8	10	11	13	13	15	14	15	15	15	14	17	13	15	14	12
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	4	4	6	5	7	7	9	9	10	10	10	11	11	10	12	10	11	10	9
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	4	4	6	5	6	7	8	8	9	9	9	10	9	9	11	8	10	9	7
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	5	6	5	5	6	5	5	7	4	5	4	4
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	3	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	6	5	5	5	5	5	6	4	5	4	3
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	6	7	6	6	7	6	6	8	5	7	5	5

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	3	3	3
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	5	5	5	6	6	6	5	6	7	6	6	6	5	5	6	4	4	3	2
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	4	4	5	5	5	6	6	6	7	6	6	5	4	4	5	3	4	3	2
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	6	6	7	7	7	7	7	7	8	6	6	6	5	5	6	5	5	5	4
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	6	7	7	7	8	8	8	8	10	7	8	7	6	7	8	5	6	4	2
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	3	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	4	5	4	3
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	3	3	2	4	3	4	4

a. "x" indicates measure is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(8)~~TABLE C406.2(8)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR GROUP S-1 AND S-2 OCCUPANCIES[a]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	14	14	1	12	1	9	27	16	2	37	29	39	44	47	50	43	52	55	74
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	2	2	1	2	1	3	31	3	1	77	14	17	92	25	8	95	71	69	26
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	13	12	10	11	10	11	18	17	7	14	19	18	14	20	22	10	14	12	19
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	19	23	13	21	7	10	15	12	3	10	12	13	9	12	12	7	9	9	8
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	7	5	8	7	6	6	2	4	2	4	1	6	5	1	7	3	4	4	7
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	16	3	1	33	17	22	41	31	21	44	38	43	43
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	7	7	4	5	3	3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	35	37	26	33	24	27	77	35	14	141	83	96	168	132	90	180	157	177	178
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	8	7	9	8	10	10	8	10	12	5	8	8	4	6	9	3	4	3	3
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	1	2	2	1	2	2	1	1	1	1
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	4	4	5	4	5	5	4	5	6	3	4	4	2	3	5	2	2	2	2
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	3	3	3	2	3	4	2	2	3	1	2	3	1	1	1	1
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	4	4	4	3	4	4	3	4	5	2	3	3	2	2	4	2	2	2	2
W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	5	5	6	6	6	6	5	6	6	5	5	5	5	5	6	5	5	5	5
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	10	10	12	11	12	14	9	12	14	6	9	9	3	6	9	3	5	3	2
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	12	12	14	13	15	14	12	14	17	7	11	11	5	7	11	4	6	3	3
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	15	14	18	16	18	17	13	16	21	7	12	11	5	8	10	4	6	6	5
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	14	14	17	16	17	17	13	17	19	8	13	12	5	8	12	4	6	4	2
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	15	14	18	16	18	18	15	18	21	9	14	14	7	10	14	5	7	5	5
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	2	3	2	2	3	2	1	5	3	3	5	4	3	6	5	6	6

a. "x" indicates measure is not available in that climate zone for that measure.

~~TABLE 406.2(9)~~TABLE C406.2(9)
BASE ENERGY CREDITS FOR OTHER OCCUPANCIES[a,b]

ID	Energy Credit Measure	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
E01	Envelope Performance	C406.2.1.1	Determined in accordance with Section C406.2.1.1																		
E02	UA reduction (15%)	C406.2.1.2	7	8	3	7	5	5	11	7	2	18	10	14	26	20	19	24	25	29	32
E03	Reduced air leakage	C406.2.1.3	6	4	5	4	3	7	12	3	2	28	5	6	36	9	3	41	27	33	15
E04	Add Roof Insulation	C406.2.1.4	4	4	3	4	4	4	8	6	2	7	6	7	9	8	9	9	10	9	12
E05	Add Wall Insulation	C406.2.1.5	16	19	11	17	5	6	10	7	2	9	6	8	9	7	7	9	9	10	8
E06	Improve Fenestration	C406.2.1.6	4	4	3	4	5	6	6	4	1	9	4	7	11	7	6	16	14	8	8
H01	HVAC Performance	C406.2.2.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H02	Heating efficiency	C406.2.2.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	6	2	3	11	6	8	15	11	9	18	15	19	23
H03	Cooling efficiency	C406.2.2.3	7	7	5	5	4	3	1	2	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H04	Residential HVAC control	C406.2.2.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
H05	DOAS/fan control	C406.2.2.5	37	36	31	34	30	28	43	32	23	61	42	49	75	61	49	90	77	93	90
W01	SHW preheat recovery	C406.2.3.1 a	18	19	22	21	25	26	28	29	34	29	31	34	29	31	35	26	29	27	26
W02	Heat pump water heater	C406.2.3.1 b	12	12	15	14	17	17	20	20	24	21	22	25	21	23	26	20	22	21	20
W03	Efficient gas water heater	C406.2.3.1 c	11	11	13	13	15	16	17	17	21	18	19	21	18	19	22	16	18	17	16
W04	SHW pipe insulation	C406.2.3.2	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	5	3	4	3	3
W05	Point of use water heaters	C406.2.3.3 a	8	10	11	10	11	12	12	12	14	13	13	14	13	13	14	11	12	12	11
W06	Thermostatic bal. valves	C406.2.3.3 b	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1
W07	SHW heat trace system	C406.2.3.3 c	5	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	7	6	6	7	5	6	7	5	5	5	5

W08	SHW submeters	C406.2.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W09	SHW flow reduction	C406.2.3.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
W10	Shower heat recovery	C406.2.3.6	6	6	7	7	8	9	10	10	11	10	11	12	10	11	12	10	11	10	10
P01	Energy monitoring	C406.2.4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4
L01	Lighting Performance	C406.2.5.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L02	Lighting dimming & tuning	C406.2.5.2	5	5	5	5	6	6	5	6	7	5	5	5	4	4	5	3	4	3	2
L03	Increase occp. sensor	C406.2.5.3	5	6	6	6	7	7	6	7	8	5	6	6	4	5	6	3	4	3	2
L04	Increase daylight area	C406.2.5.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L05	Residential light control	C406.2.5.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
L06	Light power reduction	C406.2.5.7	7	7	8	7	8	8	7	8	9	5	7	6	4	5	6	4	4	3	2
Q01	Efficient elevator	C406.2.6.1	4	4	5	4	5	5	5	5	6	4	5	5	4	4	5	3	4	3	3
Q02	Commercial kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q03	Residential kitchen equip.	C406.2.6.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Q04	Fault detection	C406.2.6.4	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	2	2	3	3	2	3	3	2	4	3	4	4

a. "x" indicates measure is not available in that climate zone for that measure.
b. Other occupancy groups include all Groups except for Groups A-2, B, E, I, M, S, and R.

C406.2.1 More efficient building thermal envelope. A project shall achieve credits for improved envelope performance by complying with one of the following measures:

1. Section C406.2.1.1: E01
2. Section C406.2.1.2: E02
3. Section C406.2.1.3: E03
4. Both E02 and E03
5. Any combination of:
   5.1. Section C406.2.1.3: E03
   5.2. Section C406.2.1.4: E04
   5.3. Section C406.2.1.5: E05
   5.4. Section C406.2.1.6: E06

C406.2.1.1 EO1 Improved envelope performance 90.1 Appendix C. *Building thermal envelope* measures shall be installed to improve the energy performance of the project. The achieved energy credits shall be determined using Equation 4-12.

$$EC_{ENV} = 1000 \text{ X } (EPF_B - EPF_P)/EPF_B$$ **(Equation 4-12)**

EC_{ENV}= E01 measure energy credits
EPFB= base envelope performance factor calculated in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix C.
EPF_P= proposed envelope performance factor calculated in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix C.

C406.2.1.2 E02 component performance envelope reduction. Energy credits shall be achieved where the component performance of the *building thermal envelope* as designed is not less than 15 percent below the component performance of the *building thermal envelope* in accordance with Section C402.1.4.

C406.2.1.3 E03 Reduced air leakage. Energy credits shall be achieved where tested *building air leakage* is not less than 10 percent less than the maximum leakage permitted by Section ~~C402.5.2~~C402.6.2 provided the *building* is tested in accordance with the applicable method in Section ~~C402.5.2~~C402.6.2. Energy credits achieved for measure E03 shall be determined as follows:

$$EC_{E03} = EC_B \text{ X } EC_{adj}$$ **(Equation 4-13)**

EC_{E03}= Energy efficiency credits achieved for envelope leakage reduction
EC_B= Section C406.2.1.3 credits from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)
EC_{adj}= Ls/EC_a
Ls = Leakage savings fraction: the lessor of [(Lr-Lm)/Lr] or 0.8
Lr = Maximum leakage permitted for tested *buildings*, by occupancy group, in accordance with Section ~~C402.5.2~~C402.6.2
Lm = Measured leakage in accordance with Section ~~C402.5.2.1~~C402.6.2.1 or ~~C402.5.2.2~~C402.6.2.2
EC_a= Energy Credit alignment factor: 0.37 for whole *building* tests in accordance with Section ~~C402.5.2.1~~C402.6.2.1 or 0.25 for dwelling and *sleeping unit* enclosure tests in

accordance with Section ~~C402.5.2.2~~C402.6.2.2.

C406.2.1.4 E04 Added Roof Insulation. Energy credits shall be achieved for insulation that is in addition to the required insulation in Table C402.1.3. All roof areas in the project shall have additional R-10 continuous insulation included in the *roof assembly*. For attics this is permitted to be achieved with fill or batt insulation rated at R-10 that is continuous and not interrupted by ceiling or roof joists. Where interrupted by joists, the added insulation shall be not less than R-13. Alternatively, one-half of the base credits shall be achieved where the added R-value is one-half of the additional R-value required by this section.

C406.2.1.5 E05 Added wall insulation. Energy credits shall be achieved for insulation applied to not less than 90 percent of all opaque wall area in the project that is in addition to the required insulation in Table C402.1.3. Opaque walls shall have additional R-5 continuous insulation included in the wall assembly. Alternatively, one-half of the base credits shall be achieved where the added R-value is R-2.5.

C406.2.1.6 E06 Improve fenestration. Energy credits shall be achieved for improved energy characteristics of all vertical *fenestration* in the project meeting the requirements in Table C406.2.1.6. The area-weighted average U-factor and SHGC of all vertical *fenestration* shall be equal to or less than the value shown in the table . Where vertical *fenestration* is located under a permanently attached shading projection with a projection factor PF not less than 0.2 as determined in accordance with Section C402.45.3, the SHGC for that *fenestration* shall be permitted to be divided by 1.2. The area-weighted average visible transmittance (VT) of all vertical fenestration shall be equal to or greater than the value shown in the table .

TABLE C406.2.1.6
Vertical Fenestration Requirements for Energy Credit E06

Applicable Climate Zone	Maximum U-Factor		Maximum SHGC	Minimum VT
	Fixed	Operable		
0-2	0.45	0.52	0.21	0.28
3	0.33	0.44	0.23	0.30
4-5	0.31	0.38	0.34	0.41
6-7	0.26	0.32	0.38	0.44
8	0.24	0.28	0.38	0.44

C406.2.2 More Efficient HVAC Equipment Performance. All heating and cooling systems shall meet the minimum requirements of Section C403 and efficiency improvements shall be referenced to minimum efficiencies listed in Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2. Where multiple efficiency requirements are listed, equipment shall meet the seasonal or part-load efficiencies including SEER, integrated energy efficiency ratio (IEER), integrated part load value (IPLV), or AFUE. Equipment that is larger than the maximum capacity range indicated in Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2 shall utilize the values listed for the largest capacity equipment for the associated equipment type shown in the table. Where multiple individual heating or cooling systems serve the project, the improvement shall be the weighted average improvement based on individual system capacity. Systems are permitted to achieve HVAC energy credits by meeting the requirements of either:

1. C406.2.2.1 H01
2. C406.2.2.2 H02
3. C406.2.2.3 H03
4. C406.2.2.4 H04
5. C406.2.2.5 H05
6. Any combination of H02, H03, H04 and H05
7. The combination of H01 and H04

C406.2.2.1 H01 HVAC Performance (TSPR). H01 energy credits shall be earned where systems are permitted to use Section C409 and where the savings (TSPRs) based on the proposed TSPR (TSPRp) compared to the target ~~exceeds the minimum~~ TSPR ~~requirement~~is by 5 percent or more. If ~~improvement~~ savings is greater than 5 percent, determine H01 earned credits using Equation 4-14. Energy credits for H01 shall not be combined with energy credits from HVAC measures H02, H03 or H05.

~~H01 energy credit = H01 base energy credit x TSPRs / 0.05~~

(Equation 4-14)

~~H01 energy credit = H01 base energy credit x TSPRs / 0.05~~

$$ECTSPR = ECBASE \times \cancel{TSPRa}\,\underline{AREA_{TSPR}} \times TSPRs / 0.05$$

ECTSPR= Energy credits achieved for H01

ECBASE = H01 base energy credits from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)

TSPR~~x~~ s= ~~TSPRa x~~ ~~[~~the lessor of 0.20 and (1-(TSPRt~~p~~/TSPR~~t~~p))~~]~~

~~where:~~

~~TSPRa~~$AREA_{TSPR}$ = [floor area served by systems ~~permitted to use~~included in TSPR] / [total building *conditioned floor area*]

TSPRp = HVAC TSPR of the proposed design calculated in accordance with Sections C409.4, C409.5 and C409.6.

TSPRt = TSPRr / MPF

~~where:~~

TSPRr = HVAC TSPR of the reference *building* design calculated in accordance with Sections C409.4, C409.5 and C409.6.

MPF = Mechanical Performance Factor from Table C409.4 based on *climate zone* and *building* use type

Where a *building* has multiple *building* use types, MPF shall be area weighted in accordance with Section C409.4

C406.2.2.2 H02 More efficient HVAC equipment heating performance. No less than 90 percent of the total HVAC capacity serving the total *conditioned floor area* of the entire *building* or tenant space in accordance with Section C406.1.1, shall comply with the requirements of this Section.

1. Equipment installed shall be types that have their efficiency listed in Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2. Electric resistance heating capacity shall be limited to 20 percent of system capacity, with the exception of heat pump supplemental heating.
2. Equipment shall exceed the minimum heating efficiency requirements listed in Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2 by at least 5 percent. Where equipment exceeds the minimum annual heating efficiency requirements by more than 5 percent, energy efficiency credits for heating shall be determined using Equation 4-15 rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$EEC_{HEH} = EEC_{H5} \times (HEI/0.05)$$ **(Equation 4-15)**

EEC_{HEH}= energy efficiency credits for heating efficiency improvement
EEC_{H5}=Section C406.2.2.2 credits from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)
HEI = the lesser of: the improvement (as a fraction) above minimum heating efficiency requirements, or 20 percent (0.20). Where heating equipment with different minimum efficiencies are included in the *building*, a heating capacity weighted average improvement shall be used. Where electric resistance primary heating or reheat is included in the *building* it shall be included in the weighted average improvement with an HEI of 0. Supplemental gas and electric heat for heat pump systems shall be excluded from the weighted HEI. For heat pumps rated at multiple ambient temperatures, the efficiency at 47ºF (8.3ºC) shall be used.
For metrics that increase as efficiency increases, HEI shall be calculated as follows:
HEI = $(HM_{DES}/HM_{MIN})-1$
Where:
HM_{DES}= Design heating efficiency metric, part-load or annualized where available
HM_{MIN}= Minimum required heating efficiency metric, part-load or annualized where available from Section C403.3.2

Exception: In low energy spaces complying with Section C402.1.1, no less than 90 percent of the installed heating capacity is provided by electric infrared or gas-fired radiant heating equipment for localized heating applications. Such spaces shall only achieve base energy credits for EEC_{H5}.

C406.2.2.3 H03 More efficient HVAC cooling equipment and fan performance. No less than 90 percent of the total HVAC cooling capacity serving the total *conditioned floor area* of the entire *building* or tenant space in accordance with Section C406.1.1, shall comply with all of the requirements of this section.

1. Equipment installed shall be types that are listed in Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2.
2. Equipment shall exceed the minimum cooling efficiency requirements listed in

Tables referenced by Section C403.3.2 by at least 5 percent. For water-cooled chiller plants, heat rejection equipment performance in Table C403.3.2(7) shall also be increased by at least the chiller efficiency improvement. Where equipment exceeds both the minimum annual cooling efficiency and heat rejection efficiency requirements by more than 5 percent, energy efficiency credits for cooling shall be determined using Equation 4-16, rounded to the nearest whole number.

Where fan energy is not included in packaged equipment rating or it is and the fan size has been increased from the as-rated equipment condition, fanpower or horsepower shall be less than 95 percent of the allowed fan power in Section C403.8.1.

$$EEC_{HEC} = EEC_5 \times (CEI/0.05) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-16)}$$

EEC_{HEC}= energy efficiency credits for cooling efficiency improvement
EEC5 = Section C406.2.2.3 base energy credits from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)
CEI= the lesser of: the improvement above minimum cooling efficiency and heat rejection performance requirements expressed as a fraction, or 0.20 (20percent). Where cooling equipment with different minimum efficiencies are included in the *building* , a cooling capacity weighted average improvement shall be used. Where multiple cooling efficiency or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annualized energy or part-load requirement. Meeting both part-load and full-load efficiencies is not required. For metrics that increase as efficiency increases, CEI shall be calculated as follows:
$CEI = (CM_{DES}/CM_{MIN}) - 1$ For metrics that decrease as efficiency increases, CEI shall be calculated as follows:
$CEI = (CM_{MIN}/CM_{DES}) - 1$
Where:
CM_{DES}= Design cooling efficiency metric, part-load or annualized where available
CM_{MIN}= Minimum required cooling efficiency metric, part-load or annualized where available from Section C403.3.2
For Data Centers using ASHRAE Standard 90.4, CEI shall be calculated as follows:
$CEI = (AMLC_{MAX} / AMLC_{DES}) - 1$
Where:
$AMLC_{DES}$= As-Designed Annualized Mechanical Load Component calculated in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 90.4, Section 6.5
$AMLC_{MAX}$= Maximum Annualized Mechanical Load Component from ASHRAE Standard 90.4, Table 6.5

C406.2.2.4 H04 Residential HVAC control. HVAC systems serving *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* shall be controlled to automatically activate a setback at least 5°F (3°C) for both heating and cooling. The temperature controller shall be configured to provide setback during occupied sleep periods. The unoccupied setback mode shall be configured to operate in conjunction with one of the following:

1. A *manual* main control device by each *dwelling unit* main entrance that initiates setback and non-ventilation mode for all HVAC units in the *dwelling unit* and is clearly identified as “Heating/Cooling Master Setback.”

2. Occupancy sensors in each room of the *dwelling unit* combined with a door switch to initiate setback and non-ventilation mode for all HVAC units in the dwelling within 20 minutes of all spaces being vacant immediately after a door switch operation. Where separate room HVAC units are used, an individual occupancy sensor on each unit that is configured to provide setback shall meet this requirement.
3. An advanced learning *thermostat* or controller that recognizes occupant presence and automatically creates a schedule for occupancy and provides a dynamic setback schedule based on when the spaces are generally unoccupied.
4. An automated control and sensing system that uses geographic fencing connected to the *dwelling unit* occupants' cell phones and initiates the setback condition when all occupants are away from the *building*.

C406.2.2.5 H05 Dedicated Outdoor Air System. Credits for this measure are only allowed where single *zone* HVAC units are not required to have multi-speed or variable-speed fan control in accordance with Section C403.8.6.1. HVAC controls and *ventilation* systems shall include all of the following:

1. *Zone* controls shall cycle the heating/cooling unit fans off when not providing required heating and cooling or shall limit fan power to 0.12 watts/cfm of *zone* supply air.
2. Outdoor air shall be supplied by an independent *ventilation* system designed to provide no more than 130 percent of the minimum outdoor air to each individual occupied *zone*, as specified by the *International Mechanical Code*.

   Exception: Outdoor airflow is permitted to increase during emergency or economizer operation implemented as described in item 4.
3. The *ventilation* system shall have energy recovery with an *enthalpy recovery ratio* of 65 percent or more at heating design conditions in climate zones 3 through 8 and an *enthalpy recovery ratio* of 65 percent or more at cooling design conditions in climate zones 0, 1, 2, 3A, 3B, 4A, 4B, 5A, and 6A. In "A" climate zones, energy recovery shall include latent recovery. Where no humidification is provided, heating energy recovery effectiveness is permitted to be based on *sensible energy recovery ratio*. Where energy recovery effectiveness is less than the 65 percent required for full credit, adjust the credits from Section C406.2 by the factors in Table C406.2.2.5.
4. Where the *ventilation* system serves multiple zones and the system is not in a latent recovery outside air dehumidification mode. partial economizer cooling through an outdoor air bypass or wheel speed control shall automatically do one of the following:
   4.1. Set the energy recovery leaving-air temperature 55°F (13°C) or 100 percent outdoor air bypass when a majority of zones require cooling and outdoor air temperature is below 70°F (21°C).
   4.2. The HVAC *ventilation* system shall include supply-air temperature controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperatures. The controls shall reset the supply-air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room-air temperature.
5. Ventilation systems providing mechanical dehumidification shall use recovered energy for reheat within the limits of item 4. This shall not limit the use of latent energy recovery for dehumidification.

Where only a portion of the *building* is permitted to be served by constant air volume units or the enthalpy recovery ratio or *sensible energy recovery ratio* is less than 65 percent, the base energy credits shown in Section C406.2 shall be prorated as follows:

(Equation 4-17)

$$EC_{DOAS} = EC_{BASE} \text{ x } FLOOR_{CAV} \text{ x } ERE_{ADJ}$$

EC_{DOAS}= Energy credits achieved for H05
EC_{BASE}= H05 base energy credits in Section C406.2
$FLOOR_{CAV}$= Fraction of whole project gross conditioned floor area not required to have variable speed or multi-speed fan airflow control in accordance with Section C403.8.6.
ERE_{adj}= The energy recovery adjustment from Table C406.2.2.5 based on the lower of actual cooling or heating enthalpy recovery ratio or *sensible energy recovery ratio* where required for the *climate zone*. Where recovery ratios vary, use a weighted average by supply airflow.

TABLE C406.2.2.5
DOAS Energy Recovery Adjustments

ERE_{adj} based on lower of actual heating or cooling energy recovery effectiveness where required		
Cooling ERR is at least	Heating enthalpy recovery ratio or sensible energy recovery ratio is at least	Energy Recovery Effectiveness Adjustment (ERE_{adj})
65%	65%	1.00
60%	60%	0.67
55%	55%[a]	0.33
50%	50%[a]	0.25

a. In climate zones where heating recovery is required in Section C403 , for dwelling units a heating recovery effectiveness below 60 percent is not allowed.

C406.2.3 Reduced Energy Use In-service Water Heating. Projects with service water-heating equipment that serves the whole *building*, a *building addition* or a tenant space shall achieve credits through compliance with the requirements of this section. Systems are permitted to achieve energy credits by meeting the requirements of either:

1. C406.2.3.1 by selecting one allowed measure W01, W02, W03, or a combination in accordance with Section C406.2.3.1.4
2. C406.2.3.2 W04
3. C406.2.3.3 by selecting one allowed measure W05, W06, or W07
4. C406.2.3.4 W08
5. C406.2.3.5 W09
6. C406.2.3.6 W10
7. Any combination of measures in C40~~2~~6.2.3.1 through C40~~2~~6.2.3.6 as long no more than one allowed measure from C406.2.3.1 and C406.2.3.3 are selected.

C406.2.3.1 Service water-heating system efficiency. A project is allowed to achieve energy credits from only one of Sections C406.2.3.1.1 through C406.2.3.1.4.

C406.2.3.1.1 W01 Recovered or renewable water heating. The *building* service water-heating system shall have one or more of the following that are sized to provide not less than 30 percent of the *building's* annual hot water requirements, or sized to provide not less than 70 percent of the *building's* annual hot water requirements if the *building* is required to comply with Section C403.~~10~~11.5:

1. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heat recovery chillers, *building* equipment, or process equipment.
2. A water-to-water heat pump that precools chilled water return for *building* cooling while heating SHW.
3. *On-site renewable energy* water-heating systems.

C406.2.3.1.2 W02 Heat pump water heater. Air-source heat pump water heaters shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions and at least 30 percent of design end use *service water heating* requirements shall be met using only heat pump heating at an ambient condition of 67.5 °F (19.7 °C), db without supplemental electric resistance or fossil fuel heating. For a heat pump *water heater* with supplemental electric resistance heating, the heat pump only capacity shall be deemed at 40 percent of first hour draw. Where the heat pump only capacity exceeds 50 percent of the design end use load excluding recirculating system losses, the credits from the Section C406.2 tables shall be prorated as follows:

$$EC_{HPWH} = (EC_{BASE}/0.5) \text{ X } \{(CAP_{HPWH})/(ENDLOAD)[\text{not greater than } 2]\} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-18)}$$

EC_{HPWH}= Energy credits achieved for W02
EC_{BASE}= W02 base energy credits from Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)
ENDLOAD = End use peak hot water load, excluding load for heat trace or recirculation, Btu/hr or kW
CAP_{HPWH} = the heat pump only capacity at 50ºF (10ºC) entering air and 70ºF (21ºC) entering potable water without supplemental electric resistance or fossil fuel heat, Btu/hr or kW

The heat pump *service water heating* system shall comply with the following requirements:

1. For systems with an installed total output capacity of more than 100,000 Btu/hr (30 kW) at an ambient condition of 67.5ºF (19.7ºC), db a preheat storage tank with greater than or equal to 0.75 gallons per 1000 Btu/hr (≥9.7 L/kW) of design end use *service water heating* requirements shall be heated only with a heat pump heating when the ambient temperature is greater than 45ºF (7.2ºC).
2. For systems with piping temperature maintenance, either a heat trace system or a separate *water heater* in series for recirculating system and final heating shall be installed.
3. Heat pump *water heater* efficiency shall meet or exceed one of the following:
   - 3.1. Output-capacity-weighted-average UEF of 3.0 in accordance with 10 CFR 430 Appendix E.
   - 3.2. Output-capacity-weighted-average COP of not less than 4.0 tested at 50ºF (10ºC) entering air and 70ºF (21ºC) entering potable water in accordance with AHRI standard 1300.

Where the heat pump capacity at 50°F (10°C) entering air and 70°F (21°C) entering water exceeds 50 percent of the design end-use load excluding recirculating system losses, the base credits from Section C406.2 shall be prorated based on Equation 4-19.

$$\text{W02 credit} = \text{base W02 table credit} \times (HP_{LF}/50\%) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-19)}$$

HP_{LF} = Heat pump capacity as a fraction of the design end-use SHW requirements excluding recirculating system losses, not to exceed 80 percent.

C406.2.3.1.3 W03 Efficient fossil fuel water heater. The combined input-capacity-weighted-average equipment rating of all gas water-heating equipment in the *building* shall be not less than 95 percent Et or 0.93 UEF. Adjustments shall apply as follows:

1. Where the *service water heating* system is required to comply with Section C404.2.1, this measure shall achieve 30 percent of the listed base W03 energy credits in Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)
2. Where the installed building service water heating capacity is less than 200,000 Btu/hr (59 kW) and weighted UEF is less than 0.93 UEF and not less than 0.82 this measure shall achieve 25 percent of the base W03 credit in Tables C406.2(1) through C406.2(9)

C406.2.3.1.4 Combination service water heating systems. Combination service water heating systems shall achieve credits using one of the measure combinations as follows:

1. (W01 + W02) Where *service water heating* employs both energy recovery and heat pump water heating, W01 may be combined with W02 and receive the sum of both credits.
2. (W01 + W03) Where *service water heating* employs both energy recovery and efficient gas water heating, W01 may be combined with W03 and receive the sum of the W01 credit and the portion of the W03 credit based on item 4.
3. (W02 + W03) Where *service water heating* employs both heat pump water heating and efficient gas water heating, W02 may be combined with W03 and receive the sum of the W02 credit and the portion of the W03 credit based on

item 4.

For items 2 and 3, the achieved W03 credit shall be the Section C406.2.3.1.3 W03 credit multiplied by the fractional share of total water heating installed capacity served by gas water heating that is not less than 95 percent Et or 0.93 UEF. In no case shall the achieved W03 credit exceed 60 percent of the W03 credit in Section C406.2 tables. In *Buildings* that have a *service water heating* design generating capacity greater than 900,000 Btu/h that proportioned W03 credit shall be further multiplied by 30 percent.

C406.2.3.2 W04: Service Hot Water Piping Insulation Increase. Where service hot water is provided by a central water heating system, the hot water pipe insulation thickness shall be at least 1.5 times the thickness required in Section C404.4. All service hot water piping shall be insulated from the hot water source to the fixture shutoff. Where 50 percent or more of hot water piping does not have increased insulation due to installation in partitions, the credit shall be prorated as a percentage of lineal feet of piping with increased insulation.

C406.2.3.3 Service water-heating distribution temperature maintenance. A project is allowed to claim energy credits from only one of the following SHW distribution temperature maintenance measures.

1. **W05 Point of use water heaters.** Credits are available for Group B or E *buildings* larger than 5,000 ft^2 (460 m^2) where *service water heating* systems meet the following requirements:.
   1.1 Fixtures requiring hot water shall be supplied from a local *water heater* with no recirculating system or heat trace piping.

   Exception: Commercial kitchens or showers in locker rooms shall be permitted to have a local recirculating system or heat trace piping where water heaters are located not more than 50 lineal feet (15 m) from the furthest fixture served.

   1.2 Supply piping from the water heater to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be insulated to the levels shown in Table C404.4.1.

   Exceptions:
   1. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed..
   2. Where piping passes through a framing member and insulation requires increasing the size of the framing member.

   1.3 The water volume in the piping from the water heater to the termination of any individual fixture shall be limited as follows:
   1.3.1 Non-residential public lavatory faucets that are available for use by members of the general public : not more than 2 oz (60 mL)
   1.3.2 Commercial kitchens or showers in locker rooms with recirculating systems or heat trace piping: not more than 24 oz (0.75 L) from the recirculating system or heat trace piping.
   1.3.3 All other plumbing fixtures or appliances: not more than 16 oz (0.5 L)
2. **W06 Thermostatic balancing valves.** Credits are available where *service water heating* is provided centrally and distributed throughout the *building* with a recirculating system. Each recirculating system branch return connection to the main SHW supply piping shall have an *automatic* thermostatic balancing valve set to a minimal return water flow when the branch return temperature is greater than

120ºF (49ºC).

3. **W07 Heat trace system.** Credits are available for projects with gross floor area greater than 10,000 square feet (930 m^2) and a central water-heating system. The energy credits achieved shall be from Tables C406~~.1~~.2(1) through C406~~.1~~.2(9). This system shall include self-regulating electric heat cables, connection kits, and electronic controls. The cable shall be installed directly on the hot water supply pipes underneath the insulation to replace standby losses.

C406.2.3.4 W08 Water-heating system submeters. Each individual *dwelling unit* in a Group R-2 occupancy served by a central service water-heating system shall be provided with a service hot water meter connected to a reporting system that provides individual *dwelling unit* reporting of actual domestic hot water use. Preheated water serving the cold water inlet to showers need not be metered.

C406.2.3.5 W09 Service hot water flow reduction. *Dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit*, and guest room plumbing fixtures that are connected to the service water-heating system shall have a flow or consumption rating less than or equal to the values shown in Table C406.2.3.5.

TABLE C406.2.3.5
Maximum Flow Rating for Residential Plumbing Fixtures with Heated Water

Plumbing Fixture	Maximum Flow Rate
Faucet for private lavatory,[a] hand sinks, or bar sinks	1.2 gpm at 60 psi (4.5 L/m at 410 kPa)
Faucet for residential kitchen sink [a,b, c]	1.8 gpm at 60 psi (6.8 L/m at 410 kPa)
Shower head (including hand-held shower spray) [a, b, d]	1.8 gpm at 80 psi (6.8 L/m at 550 kPa)

a. Showerheads, lavatory faucets and kitchen faucets are subject to U.S. Federal requirements listed in 10 CFR 430.32(o)- (p).
b. Maximum flow allowed is less than required by flow rates listed in U.S. 10 CFR 430.32(o)-(p) for showerheads and kitchen faucets.
c. Residential kitchen faucet may temporarily increase the flow above the maximum rate, but not above 2.2 gallons per minute at 60 psi (8.3 L/m at 410 kPa) and must default to the maximum flow rate listed.
d. When a shower is served by multiple shower heads, the combined flow rate of all shower heads controlled by a single valve shall not exceed the maximum flow rate listed or the shower shall be designed to allow only one shower head to operate at a time.

C406.2.3.6 W10 Shower drain heat recovery. Cold water serving *building* showers shall be preheated by shower drain heat recovery units that comply with Section C404.7. The efficiency of drain heat recovery units shall be 54 percent or greater measured in accordance with CSA B55.1. Full credits are applicable to the following *building* uses: I-2, I-4, R-1, R-2 and also group E where there are more than eight showers. Partial credits are applicable to buildings where all but ground floor showers are served where the base energy credit from Section C406.2 is adjusted by Equation 4-20.

W10 credit = W10 base energy credit x (showers with drain heat recovery / total showers in building) **(Equation 4-20)**

C406.2.4 P01 Energy Monitoring. A project not required to comply with C405.13 can achieve energy credits for installing an energy monitoring system that complies with all the requirements of C405.13.1 through C405.13.5.

C406.2.5 Energy Savings in Lighting Systems. Projects are permitted to achieve energy credits for increased lighting system performance by meeting the requirements of either:

1. C406.2.5.2 L02
2. C406.2.5.3 L03
3. C406.2.5.4 L04
4. C406.2.5.5 L05
5. C406.2.5.6 L06
6. Any combination of L03, L04, L05 and L06
7. Any combination of L02, L03 and L04

C406.2.5.1 L01 Lighting system performance (reserved). *Reserved for future use*

C406.2.5.2 L02 high-end trim lighting controls. Measure credits shall be achieved where qualifying spaces are no less than 50 percent of the project interior floor area exclusive of *dwelling* and *sleeping units.* Qualifying spaces are those where *general lighting* is controlled by *high-end trim* lighting controls complying with the following:

1. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for *ready access* only by authorized personnel.
2. Lighting controls with *ready access* for users cannot increase the lighting power above the maximum level established by the *high-end trim* controls.
3. *Construction documents* shall state that maximum light output or power of *general lighting* in spaces contributing to the qualifying floor area shall be not greater than 85 percent of full power or light output.
4. *High-end trim* lighting controls shall be tested in accordance with Section C408.3.1.5.

The base credits from Tables C406~~.1~~.2(1) through C406~~.1~~.2(9) shall be prorated as follows:

HET × *[Base energy credits for C406.2.5.2] / 50%*

HET = Floor area of qualifying spaces where *general lighting* is provided with *high-end trim* lighting controls complying with this section, expressed as a percentage of total interior floor area excluding *dwelling* and *sleeping units* .

C406.2.5.3 L03 Increase occupancy sensor. Lighting controls shall comply with C406.2.5.3.1, C406.2.5.3.2 and C406.2.5.3.3.

C406.2.5.3.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant sensor controls shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Food preparation area
2. Laboratory
3. Elevator lobby
4. Pharmacy area
5. Vehicular maintenance area
6. Workshop.
7. Recreation room in a facility for the visually impaired
8. Exercise area in a fitness center
9. Playing area in a fitness center
10. Exam/treatment room in a healthcare facility
11. Imaging room in a healthcare facility
12. Physical therapy room in a healthcare facility
13. Library reading area
14. Library stacks
15. Detailed manufacturing area
16. *Equipment room* in a manufacturing facility
17. Low-bay area in a manufacturing facility
18. Post office sorting area
19. Religious fellowship hall
20. Hair salon
21. Nail salon
22. Banking activity area
23. Museum restoration room

C406.2.5.3.2 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensors in library stacks and laboratories shall comply with Section C405.2.1.2. Occupant sensors in elevator lobbies shall comply with Section C405.2.1.4. All other occupant sensors required by Section C406.2.5.3.1 shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1.

Exception: In spaces where an *automatic* shutoff could endanger occupant safety or security, occupant sensor controls shall uniformly reduce lighting power to not more than 20 percent of full power within 10 minutes after all occupants have left the space.Time-switch controls complying with C405.2.2.1 shall automatically turn lights off.

C406.2.5.3.3 Occupant sensor time delay and setpoint . *Occupant sensor controls* installed in accordance with Sections C405.2.1.1, C405.2.1.2, C405.2.1.3, and C405.2.1.4 shall automatically turn lights off or reduce lighting power within 10 minutes after all occupants have left the space. Occupant sensor controls installed in accordance with Section C405.2.1.2 shall have an unoccupied setpoint of not greater than 20 percent of full power.

C406.2.5.4 L04 Increased daylight area. The total daylight area of the *building* (DLA_{BLDG}) determined by Equation 4-21 shall be at least 5 percent greater than the typical daylight area (DLA_{TYP}) from Table C406.2.5.4. Credits for measure L04 shall be determined by Equation 4-22 or Equation 4-23, whichever is less:

$$\underline{DLA_{BLDG} = DLZ/LFA} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-21)}$$

DLZ = The total *building* floor area located within sidelit and toplit *daylight zones* complying with Section C405.2.4.2 or Section C405.2.4.3 and provided with daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.4.1, ft^2 or m^2.
LFA = The total *building* floor area used to determine the lighting power allowance in Section C405.3.2, ft^2 or m^2.

$$EC_{DL} = EC_{DL5} \times 20 \times \underline{(DLA_{BLDG} - DLA_{TYP})} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-22)}$$

where:
EC_{DL} = The lesser of actual area of daylight zones in the building with continuous daylight dimming, ft^2 or m^2 and (GLFA x DLA) see Table C406.2.5.4. Daylight zones shall meet the criteria in Sections C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3 for primary sidelit daylight zones, secondary sidelit daylight zones,and toplit daylight zones.
~~GLFA = Project gross lighted fl oor area, ft or m~~
DLA_{TYP} = Typical percent of building area with daylight control (as a fraction) from Table C406.2.5.4:
EC_{DL5} = Section C406.2.5.4 L04 base energy credits from Section C406.2

$$\underline{EC_{DL} = EC_{DL5} \times 20 \times (DLA_{MAX} - DLA_{TYP})} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-23)}$$

EC_{DL} = The number of credits achieved by this measure.
EC_{DL5} = Section C406.2.5.4 L04 base energy credits from Section C406.2 Tables C406.2(4), C406.2(6), C406.2(7), and C406.2(8).
DLA_{TYP} = Typical percent of building floor area with daylight control (as a fraction) from Table C406.2.5.4.
DLA_{MAX} = Maximum percent of building floor area with daylight control that can be counted for compliance with this measure, from Table C406.2.5.4.

TABLE C406.2.5.4
ADDED DAYLIGHTING PARAMETERS

Building use type	DLA_{TYP}	DLA_{MAX}
Group B; ≤ 5000 ft^2 (460 m^2)	10%	20%
Group B; > 5000 ft^2 (460 m^2)	21%	31%
Group M; with ≤ 1000 ft^2 (900 m^2) roof area	0%	20%
Group M; with > 1000 ft^2 (900 m^2) roof area	60%	80%
Group E;	42%	52%
Groups S-1 and S-2; Warehouse	50%	70%
Groups S-1 and S-2; Other than warehouse	NA	NA

C406.2.5.5 L05 Residential light control. In *buildings* with Group R-2 occupancy spaces, interior lighting systems shall comply with the following:

1. In common areas, the following space types shall have occupant sensor controls that comply with the requirements of Section C405.2.1.1 :
   1.1 Laundry/washing areas,
   1.2 Dining areas,
   1.3 Food preparation areas,
   1.4 Seating areas,
   1.5 Exercise areas,
   1.6 Massage spaces
2. In dwelling units, not less than one receptacle in each living room and each sleeping room shall be controlled by a switch in that room.
3. ~~Each *dwelling unit* shall have a switch by the main entrance that turns off all the lighting and all switched receptacles in the *dwelling unit*.~~ Lights and switched receptacles in bathrooms and kitchens shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1. All other lights and switched receptacles in each dwelling unit shall be controlled by a switch at the main entrance. The switch shall be ~~clearly labeled~~marked to indicate its function.

   Exception: Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 are not required to be controlled by the switch at the main entrance.

C406.2.5.6 L06 Reduced lighting power. Interior lighting within all *building* areas shall comply with this section.

1. The connected interior lighting power (LP) determined in accordance with C405.3.1 shall be 95 percent or less than the interior lighting power allowance (LPA) determined in accordance with Section C405.3.2 using the same method used to comply with Section C405.3. Energy credits shall not be greater than four times the L06 base credit from Section C406.2 and shall be determined using Equation 4-24.
2. All permanently installed lighting serving dwelling units and sleeping units, including ceiling fan light kits and lighting integrated into range hoods and exhaust fans shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 90 lumens per watt or by luminaires that have an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt.

   Exceptions:
   1. Lighting integral to other appliances
   2. Antimicrobial lighting used for the sole purpose of disinfecting.

$$EC_{LPA} = EC_5 \times 20 \times (LPA_{\cancel{n}} - LP_{\cancel{n}})/LPA_{\cancel{n}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-24)}$$

EC_{LPA}= additional energy credit for lighting power reduction
LP= connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1, watts
LPA= interior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with the requirements of Section C405.3.2, watts
EC5 = L06 base credit from Section C406.2

C406.2.6 Efficient Equipment Credits. Projects are permitted to achieve energy credits using any combination of Efficient Equipment Credits Q01 through Q04.

C406.2.6.1 Q01 Efficient Elevator Equipment. Qualifying elevators in the *building* shall be Energy efficiency class A per ISO 25745-2, Table 7. Only buildings 3 or more floors above grade may use this credit. Credits shall be prorated based on Equation 4-25, rounded to the nearest whole credit. Projects with a compliance ratio below 0.5 do not qualify for this credit.

$$EC_e = EC_t \ \mathrm{x} \ CR_e$$ **(Equation 4-25)**

EC_e= Elevator energy credit achieved for the *building*
EC_t= C406.2.7.1 Table energy credit
CR_e= Compliance Ratio = (F_A/ F_B)
F_A= Sum of floors served by class A elevators
F_B= Sum of floors served by all *building* elevators and escalators

C406.2.6.2 Q02 Efficient Commercial Kitchen Equipment. For *buildings* and spaces designated as Group A-2, or facilities whose primary business type involves the use of a commercial kitchen where at least one gas or electric fryer is installed before the issuance of the Certificate of Occupancy all fryers, dishwashers, steam cookers and ovens installed before the issuance of the Certificate of Occupancy shall comply with all of the following:

1. Achieve performance levels in accordance with the equipment specifications listed in Tables C406.2.~~7~~6.2 (1) through C406.2.~~7~~6.2 (4) when rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure.
2. Have associated performance levels listed on the *construction documents* submitted for permitting.

TABLE C406.2.6.2(1)
Minimum Efficiency Requirements: Commercial Fryers

	Heavy-Load Cooking Energy Efficiency	Idle Energy Rate	Test Procedure
Standard Open Deep-Fat Gas Fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 9,000 Btu/hr (≤ 2,600 watts)	ASTM F1361
Standard Open Deep-Fat Electric Fryers	≥ 83%	≤ 800 watts	
Large Vat Open Deep-Fat Gas Fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 12,000 Btu/hr (≤ 3,500 watts)	ASTM F2144
Large Vat Open Deep-Fat Electric Fryers	≥ 80%	≤ 1,100 watts	

TABLE C406.2.6.2(2)
Minimum Efficiency Requirements: Commercial Steam Cookers

Fuel Type	Pan Capacity	Cooking Energy Efficiency[a]	Idle Energy Rate	Test Procedure
Electric Steam	3-pan	50%	400W	ASTM F1484
	4-pan	50%	530W	
	5-pan	50%	670W	
	6-pan and larger	50%	800W	
Gas Steam	3-pan	38%	6,250 Btu/h 1.83 kW	
	4-pan	38%	8,350 Btu/h 2.45 kW	
	5-pan	38%	10,400 Btu/h 3.05 kW	
	6-pan and larger	38%	12,500 Btu/h 3.66 kW	

a. Cooking Energy Efficiency is based on heavy-load (potato) cooking capacity

TABLE C406.2.6.2(3)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS

Machine Type	High Temperature Efficiency Requirements			Low Temperature Efficiency Requirements			Test Procedure
	Idle Energy Rate[a]	Washing Energy	Water Consumption[b]	Idle Energy Rate[a]	Washing Energy	Water Consumption[b]	
Under Counter	≤ 0.30 kW	≤ 0.35 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.86 GPR (≤ 3.3 LPR)	≤ 0.25 kW	≤ 0.15 kWh/ rack	≤ 1.19 GPR ≤ 4.5 LPR	ASTM F1696 ASTM F1920
Stationary Single Tank Door	≤ 0.55 kW	≤ 0.35 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.89 GPR (≤ 3.4 LPR)	≤ 0.30 kW	≤ 0.15 kWh/ rack	≤ 1.18 GPR ≤ 4.47 LPR	
Pot, Pan, and Utensil	≤ 0.90 kW	kWh/rack ≤ 0.55 + 0.05 × SF_{rack}[c] (≤ 0.55 + 0.0046 × SM_{rack}[c])	≤ 0.58 GPSF (≤ 2.2 LPSM)	NA	NA	NA	
Single Tank Conveyor	≤ 1.20 kW	≤ 0.36 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.70 GPR (≤ 2.6 LPR)	≤ 0.85 kW	≤ 0.16 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.79 GPR ≤ 3.0 LPR	
Multiple Tank Conveyor	≤ 1.85 kW	≤ 0.36 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.54 GPR (≤ 2.0 LPR)	≤ 1.00 kW	≤ 0.22 kWh/ rack	≤ 0.54 GPR ≤ 2.0 LPR	
Single Tank Flight Type	Reported	Reported	GPH ≤ 2.975c + 55.0 (LPH ≤ 0.276d+ 208)	NA	NA	NA	
Multiple Tank Flight Type	Reported	Reported	GPH ≤ 4.96c+ 17.00 (LPH ≤ 0.461d + 787)	NA	NA	NA	

a. Idle results should be measured with the door closed and represent the total idle energy consumed by the machine including all tank heaters and controls. The most energy consumptive configuration in the product family shall be selected to test the idle energy rate. Booster heater (internal or external) energy consumption shall be measured and reported separately, if possible, per ASTM F1696 and ASTM F1920 Sections 10.8 and 10.9, respectively. However, if booster energy cannot be measured separately it will be included in the idle energy rate measurements.

b. GPR = gallons per rack, LPR = Liters per rack, GPSF = gallons per square foot of rack, LPSM = liters per square meter of rack, GPH = gallons per hour, c = [maximum conveyor belt speed (feet/minute)] × [conveyor belt width (feet)], LPH = liters per hour, d = [maximum conveyor belt speed (m/minute)] × [conveyor belt width (m)]

c. PPU Washing Energy is still in format kWh/rack when evaluated; SF_{rack} (SM_{rack}) is Square

Feet of rack area (square meters of rack area), same as in PPU water consumption metric.

TABLE C406.2.6.2(4)
Minimum Efficiency Requirements: Commercial Ovens

Fuel type	Classification	Idle Rate	Cooking Energy Efficiency, %	Test Procedure
Convection Ovens				
Gas	Full-Size	≤ 12,000 Btu/h (3.5 kW)	≥ 46	ASTM F1496
Electric	Half-size	≤ 1.0 kW	≥ 71	
Electric	Full-size	≤ 1.60 kW		
Combination Ovens				
Gas	Steam Mode	≤ 200 P[a] + 6,511 Btu/h (≤ 0.059 P[a] + 1.9 kW)	≥ 41	ASTM F2861
	Convection Mode	≤ 150 P[a] + 5,425 Btu/h (≤ 0.044 P[a] + 1.6 kW)	≥ 56	
Electric	Steam Mode	≤ 0.133 P[a] + 0.6400 kW	≥ 55	
	Convection Mode	≤ 0.080 P[a] + 0.4989 kW	≥ 76	
Rack Ovens				
Gas	Single	≤ 25,000 Btu/h (7.3 kW)	≥ 48	ASTM F2093
	Double	≤ 30,000 Btu/h (8.8 kW)	≥ 52	

a. P = Pan Capacity: the number of steam table pans the combination oven is able to accommodate in accordance with ASTM F1495

C406.2.6.3 Q03 Efficient Residential Kitchen Equipment. For projects with Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, energy credits shall be achieved where all dishwashers, refrigerators, and freezers comply with all of the following:

1. Achieve the Energy Star Most Efficient 2021 label in accordance with the specifications current as of:
   1.1. Refrigerators and freezers 5.0, 9/15/2014
   1.2. Dishwashers 6.0, 1/29/2016
2. Be installed before the issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

For Group R-1 where only some guest rooms are equipped with both refrigerators and dishwashers, the table credits shall be prorated as follows:

[Section C406.2 base credits] x [floor area of guest rooms with kitchens] / [total guest room floor area] **(Equation 4-26)**

C406.2.6.4 Q04 Fault detection and diagnostics system. A project not required to comply with C403.2.3 can achieve energy credits for installing a fault detection and diagnostics system to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The installed system shall comply with items 1 through 6 in Section C403.2.3.

C406.3 Renewable and Load Management Credits achieved. Renewable energy and load management measures shall achieve credits as follows:

1. General measure requirements. Credits are achieved for measures installed in the *building* that comply with Sections C406.3.1 through C406.3.8
2. Achieved credits are determined as follows:
   2.1 Measure credits achieved shall be determined in one of two ways, depending on the measure:
      2.1.1 The measure credit shall be the base credit listed by occupancy group and *climate zone* for the measure in Tables C406.3(1) through C406.3(9) where no adjustment factor or formula is shown in the description of the measure in Section C406.3.
      2.1.2 The measure credit shall be the base energy credit for the measure adjusted by a factor or formula as stated in the description of the measure in Section C406.3. Where adjustments are applied, each energy credit shall be rounded to the nearest whole number.
   2.2 Load management and renewable credits achieved for the project shall be the sum of credits for individual measures included in the project. Credits are available for the measures listed in this Section.
   2.3 Where a project contains multiple *building* use groups, credits achieved for each *building* use group shall be summed and then weighted by the gross floor area of each *building* use group to determine the weighted average project energy credits achieved.
3. Load management control requirements. The load management measures in Sections C406.3.2 (G01) through C406.3.7 (G06) require load management control sequences that are capable of and configured to automatically provide the load management operation specified based on indication of a peak period related to high short-term electric prices, grid condition, or peak *building* load. Such a peak period shall, where possible, be initiated by a *demand response signal* from the controlling entity, such as a utility or service operator. When communications are disabled or unavailable, all demand responsive controls shall continue backup demand response based on a local schedule or *building* demand monitoring. The local *building* schedule shall be adjustable without programming and

reflect the electric rate peak period dates and times. The load management control sequences shall be activated for peak period control by either:

3.1 A certified OpenADR 2.0a or OpenADR 2.0b Virtual End Node (VEN), as specified under Clause 11, Conformance, in the applicable OpenADR 2.0 Specification, or

3.2 A device certified by the manufacturer as being capable of responding to a *demand response signal* from a certified OpenADR 2.0b VEN by automatically implementing the control functions requested by the VEN for the equipment it controls, or

3.3 The physical configuration and communication protocol of CTA 2045-A or CTA 2045-B, or

3.4 For air conditioners and heat pumps with two or more stages of control and cooling capacity of less than 65,000 Btu/h (19 kW), thermostats with a *demand responsive control* that complies with the communication and performance requirements of AHRI 1380, or

3.5 A device that complies with IEC 62726-10-1, an international standard for the open automated demand response system interface between the appliance, system, or energy management system and the controlling entity, or

3.6 An interface that complies with the communication protocol required by a controlling entity, to participate in an automated demand response program, or

3.7 Where the controlling entity does not have a *demand response signal* available for the *building* type and size, local load management control shall be provided based on either:

3.7.1 *Building* demand management controls that monitor *building* electrical demand and initiate controls to minimize monthly or peak time period demand charges, or,

3.7.2 Where buildings are less than 25,000 gross square feet, a local *building* schedule that reflects the electric rate peak period dates and times. In this case a binary input to the control system shall be provided that activates the demand response sequence.

TABLE C406.3(1)
RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS FOR GROUP R-2, R-4, AND I-1 OCCUPANCIES

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable Energy	C406.3.1	9	15	11	17	18	20	19	21	13	10	13	9	9	11	10	9	10	9	7
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	16	7	9	12	12	16	11	14	12	11	16	14	8	11	14	5	7	7	11
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	42	41	21	35	23	37	30	28	28	17	33	24	20	22	23	10	13	15	17
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	11	x	7	18	10	13	5	13	12	2	14	7	10	13	11	1	8	8	16
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	10	10	10	11	10	13	13	14	17	16	13	17	14	13	17	14	14	14	15
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	28	6	31	13	22	21	21	37	11	12	22	11	9	17	9	7	17	2	3
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	17	17	19	18	19	19	20	20	22	19	19	21	19	19	20	18	19	18	17
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	7	2	11	5	16	28	22	27	60	19	43	46	32	58	37	27	45	40	19

x = Credits excluded from thisbuildinguse type and *climate zone*.

TABLE C406.3(2)
RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS FOR GROUP I-2 OCCUPANICIES

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable Energy	C406.3.1	6	6	6	6	6	8	7	9	8	6	8	6	6	7	7	6	7	5	4
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	11	12	13	13	13	12	12	12	6	13	16	12	13	14	15	14	14	12	12
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	10	11	10	10	8	21	10	10	13	11	18	11	12	14	13	12	11	9	7
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	1	1	1	1	x	x	x	1	x	x	2	x	x	2	x	x	1	1	x
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	13	13	13	13	14	15	14	15	15	14	15	15	14	15	15	13	14	13	12
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	25	6	33	14	25	19	27	37	27	16	22	19	14	18	11	11	20	2	3
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	5	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	6	2	10	4	15	25	20	24	57	18	39	44	31	53	33	25	40	34	14

x = Credits excluded from this *building* use type and *climate zone*.

TABLE C406.3(3)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group R-1 Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable energy	C406.3.1	9	8	12	9	11	11	10	12	13	9	12	8	9	11	9	8	9	7	5
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	12	12	11	12	12	14	14	13	15	14	13	11	10	11	14	9	11	8	8
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	2	2	2	3	1	2	3	2	4	3	2	1	1	1	3	1	2	1	1
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	9	9	10	10	9	13	13	15	13	14	13	14	14	12	16	13	12	12	13
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	31	7	38	17	29	24	31	44	26	18	26	16	15	21	11	12	24	2	4
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	25	25	28	26	28	29	29	30	31	29	30	31	28	29	31	26	28	25	24
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	6	1	10	4	14	24	19	23	53	17	38	41	30	52	33	26	42	37	17

x = Credits excluded from this building use type and *climate zone*.

TABLE C406.3(4)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group B Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable energy	C406.3.1	14	14	17	15	17	19	18	22	24	17	22	16	14	18	18	14	17	14	11
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	10	11	11	12	11	11	11	12	9	10	11	10	10	11	10	10	11	10	9
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	x	10	10	9	9	3	8	12	7	12	8	11	9	10	12	8	9	10	2
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	4	7	7	8	7	8	5	6	6	4	6	5	4	5	5	5	5	4	7
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	14	15	14	14	16	16	17	16	18	17	16	18	17	17	18	16	15	17	18
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	28	7	36	16	27	24	28	45	27	17	27	15	15	20	9	12	25	2	4
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	5	5	6	6	6	6	7	7	8	7	7	7	7	7	8	6	7	6	6
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	3	1	5	2	6	9	6	7	14	4	11	8	9	15	5	8	12	15	7

x = Credits excluded from this building use type and *climate zone*.

TABLE C406.3(5)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group A-2 Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable energy	C406.3.1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	4	2	3	2	2	3	2	2	2	2	1
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	4	4	5	5	4	5	5	5	5	4	5	5	4	4	5	4	5	4	1
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	32	26	37	28	31	26	27	22	23	20	17	14	19	14	10	16	14	14	1
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	4	4	4	4	5	5	5	5	4	4	4	4	3	4	4	4	3	3	2
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	15	4	17	8	12	10	10	16	6	5	7	3	3	4	1	2	4	x	x
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	13	13	15	14	15	16	16	17	19	16	17	19	16	17	18	15	16	14	13
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	3	1	5	2	7	12	8	10	21	6	15	14	8	18	10	6	12	8	3

x = Credits excluded from this building use type and *climate zone* .

TABLE C406.3(6)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group M Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable energy	C406.3.1	8	8	12	9	11	12	12	17	17	11	13	9	10	11	10	9	10	9	6
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	16	16	18	19	17	19	19	21	17	18	21	21	18	21	22	18	22	18	16
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	x	15	16	15	15	6	15	21	13	23	15	23	17	19	26	14	17	18	3
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	7	11	11	12	11	13	10	11	11	7	11	11	8	10	11	8	9	8	12
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	6	10	8	10	11	12	11	10	14	11	10	12	10	11	12	11	9	10	8
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	40	9	51	22	35	31	34	53	21	17	28	10	11	19	4	9	18	2	2
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	3	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	5	4	4	4	3
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	5	1	6	3	8	12	10	10	20	7	17	15	14	24	10	13	20	24	12

x = Credits excluded from this building use type and *climate zone*.

TABLE C406.3(7)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group E Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable Energy	C406.3.1	10	11	13	12	13	16	15	21	22	15	19	15	14	17	16	13	16	12	10
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	7	12	12	13	13	15	14	16	13	12	16	16	10	14	18	16	13	14	14
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	18	22	32	23	25	31	26	26	20	23	31	24	20	31	12	18	27	16	9
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	7	13	16	12	18	17	17	18	13	12	17	17	10	15	13	14	10	16	17
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	16	16	18	17	19	21	21	23	26	22	24	24	23	24	24	20	22	19	19
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	36	9	46	21	36	32	39	62	39	24	37	22	20	28	13	16	31	3	4
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	5	5	6	5	6	6	7	7	8	7	7	8	7	7	8	7	7	7	6
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	7	2	11	5	17	28	23	27	63	21	44	48	37	60	38	31	50	47	21

x = Credits excluded from this building use type and *climate zone* .

TABLE C406.3(8)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Group S-1 and S-2 Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable Energy	C406.3.1	38	37	55	45	53	53	49	58	66	36	56	38	29	41	36	24	32	23	16
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	13	26	32	28	32	35	36	33	36	31	27	37	32	23	28	36	22	25	22
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	18	46	37	37	28	36	29	26	22	23	17	12	16	13	5	14	8	10	3
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	40	40	47	41	47	44	40	44	42	30	38	31	21	31	26	24	29	23	21
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	20	5	21	11	14	14	11	21	5	5	9	2	2	5	1	1	3	x	x
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	3	3	3	3	4	3	4	4	4	3	4	4	3	3	4	2	2	2	2
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	7	2	12	5	17	29	23	28	66	18	44	47	28	56	37	20	39	29	13

"x" indicates measure is not available for *building* occupancy in that *climate zone*

TABLE C406.3(9)
Renewable and Load Management Credits for Other[a] Occupancies

ID	Energy Credit Abbreviated Title	Section	Climate Zone																		
			0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R01	Renewable Energy	C406.3.1	12	13	16	14	16	18	17	20	21	13	18	13	12	15	14	11	13	10	8
G01	Lighting load management	C406.3.2	11	13	14	14	14	16	15	16	14	14	16	16	13	14	16	14	13	12	12
G02	HVAC load management	C406.3.3	24	24	23	22	20	23	21	21	18	18	20	17	16	18	14	13	14	13	6
G03	Automated shading	C406.3.4	5	6	7	9	8	9	7	9	8	5	9	7	5	8	7	5	6	6	9
G04	Electric energy storage	C406.3.5	14	15	16	15	16	17	17	18	19	16	17	17	15	16	17	14	15	14	14
G05	Cooling energy storage	C406.3.6	28	7	34	15	25	22	25	39	20	14	22	12	11	17	7	9	18	2	3
G06	SHW energy storage	C406.3.7	9	9	11	10	11	11	11	12	13	11	12	13	11	11	12	10	11	10	9
G07	Building thermal mass	C406.3.8	6	2	9	4	13	21	16	20	44	14	31	33	24	42	25	20	33	29	13

a. Other occupancy groups include all Groups except for Groups A-2, B, E, I, M, and R.

C406.3.1 R01 Renewable Energy. Projects installing *on-site renewable energy* systems with a capacity of at least 0.1 watts per gross square foot (1.08 W/m^2) of *building* area or securing off-site renewable energy shall achieve energy credits for this measure calculated as follows:

$$EC_R = EC0.1 \text{ x } (R_t + R_{off} - R_{ex}) / (0.1 \text{ x } PGFA) \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-27)}$$

EC_R= Section C406.3.1 R01 energy credits achieved for this project
$EC_{0.1}$= Section C406.3.1 R01 base credits from Tables C406.3(1) through C406.3(9)
R_t = Actual total rating of *on-site renewable energy* systems (W)
R_{OFF}= Actual total equivalent rating of off-site renewable energy contracts (W), calculated as follows:
R_{OFF}= TRE/(REN X 20)
where:
TRE = Total off-site renewable electrical energy in kilowatt-hours (kWh) that is procured in accordance with Sections C405.~~13~~15.2.1 through C405.~~13~~15.4
REN = Annual off-site renewable electrical energy from Table C405.~~13~~15.2, in units of kilowatt-hours per watt of array capacity
R_{ex}= Rating (W) of *renewable energy resources* capacity excluded from credit calculated as follows:
R_{ex}= RR_r+ RR_x+ RR_c
where:
RR_r= Rating of on-site renewable energy systems required by Section C405.~~13~~15.1, without exception (W).
RR_x= Rating of *renewable energy resources* used to meet any exceptions of this code (W).
RR_c= Rating of *renewable energy resources* used to achieve other energy credits in Section C406 (W).
PGFA = Project gross floor area, ft^2
Where renewable requirements, exceptions, or credits are expressed in annual kWh or Btu rather than Watts of output capacity, they shall be converted as 3413 Btu = 1 kWh and converted to W equivalent capacity as follows:
RR_w= Actual total equivalent rating of renewable energy capacity (W), calculated as follows:
RR_w= TRE_x/ (REN × PGFA)
where:
TRE_x= Total renewable energy in kilowatt-hours (kWh) that is excluded from R01 energy credits

C406.3.2 G01 Lighting Load Management. A project not required to comply with C405.2. ~~9~~8 can achieve energy credits for installing demand responsive lighting controls for interior general lighting that comply with C405.2.~~9~~8.1. The demand responsive lighting controls shall automatically reduce the light output or power of controlled lighting to no more than 80 percent of full output, or 80 percent of the *high-end trim* set point, whichever is less. Energy credits can be earned where demand responsive lighting controls are installed for the following:

1. Not less than 10 percent of the interior floor area in Group R or I occupancies; or
2. Not less than 50 percent of the interior floor area in all other occupancies.

G01 credits shall be prorated using Equation 4-28 with no more than 75 percent of the interior floor area being counted.

[~~building~~ interior floor area with lighting load management, %] x [table credits for C406.3.2] / 75% **(Equation 4-28)**

C406.3.3 G02 HVAC Load Management. *Automatic* load management controls shall be configured as follows:

1. Cooling temperature shift: Where electric cooling is in use controls shall gradually increase the cooling setpoint by at least 3°F (1.7°C) over a minimum of three hours or reduce effective cooling capacity to 60% of installed capacity during the peak period or adjust cooling temperature setpoint as described in Section C403.6.1.
2. Heating temperature shift: Where electric heating is in use controls shall gradually decrease the heating setpoint by at least 3°F (1.7°C) over a minimum of three hours or reduce effective heating capacity to 60% of installed capacity during the peak period or adjust heating temperature setpoint as described in Section C403.6.1.
3. Ventilation shift: Where HVAC systems serve multiple zones and have less than 70 percent outdoor air required, include controls that provide excess outdoor air preceding the peak period and reduce outdoor air by at least 30 percent during the peak period, in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 62.1 Section 6.2.5.2 Short Term Conditions or provisions for *approved* engineering analysis in the International Mechanical Code Section 403.3.1.1, Outdoor Airflow Rate.

Credits achieved for measure G02 shall be calculated as follows:

$$\underline{EC_{G02\_ach} = EC_{G02\_base} * EC_{G02\_adj}}$$ **(Equation 4-29)**

where:
EC_{G02_ach} = *Demand responsive control* credit achieved for project
EC_{G02_base} = G02 Base energy credit from Section C406.3
EC_{G02_adj} = energy credit adjustment factor from Table C406.3.3

TABLE C406.3.3
Energy Credit Adjustment Based on Use of Ventilation Shift or Demand Response

DEMAND RESPONSE SIGNAL AVAILABLE[a]	DEMAND RESPONSE REQUIRED BY SECTION C403.4.6.1[b]	INCLUDES VENTILATION SHIFT[c]	EC_{G02_Adj}
No	No	Yes	100%
No	Yes	Yes	80%
Yes	No	Yes	80%
Yes	Yes	Yes	40%
No	No	No	70%
No	Yes	No	50%
Yes	No	No	50%
Yes	Yes	No	0%

a. "Demand Response Signal Available" is "Yes" where a controlling entity other than the owner makes a demand response signal available to the building.

b. Where the exception is invoked in Section C403.4.6~~.1~~ for buildings that comply with Load Management measure G02, then "Demand Response Required" is "Yes".

c. Ventilation shift controls in accordance with Section C406.3.3, item 3.

C406.3.4 G03 Automated Shading Load Management. Where *fenestration* on east, south, and west exposures is greater than 20 percent of wall area, load management credits shall be achieved as follows:

1. *Automatic* exterior shading devices or *dynamic glazing* that are capable of reducing solar gain (SHGC) through sunlit *fenestration* by not less than 50 percent when fully closed shall receive the full credits in Tables C406.3(1) through C406.3(9). The exterior shades shall have fully open and fully closed SHGC determined in accordance with AERC 1.
2. *Automatic* interior shading devices with a solar reflectance of not less than 0.50 for the surface facing the *fenestration* shall receive 40 percent of the credits in Tables C406.3(1) through C406.3(9).
3. All shading devices, *dynamic glazing*, or shading attachments shall:
   3.1 Provide not less than 90 percent coverage of the total *fenestration* on east, south, and west exposures in the *building* to achieve the credits determined in items 1 or 2. Alternatively, provide not less than 70 percent coverage of the total *fenestration* on the south and west exposures in the *building* to achieve 50 percent of the credits determined in items 1 or 2.
   3.2 Be automatically controlled and shall modulate in multiple steps or continuously the amount of solar gain and light transmitted into the space in response to peak periods and either daylight levels or solar intensity.
   3.3 Include a *manual* override located in the same *enclosed space* as the shaded vertical *fenestration* that shall override operation of *automatic* controls for no longer than four hours. Such override shall be locked out during peak periods.

For this section, directional exposures shall exclude *fenestration* that has an orientation deviating by more than 45 degrees of facing the cardinal direction. In the southern hemisphere, where the south exposure is referred to, it shall be replaced by the north exposure.

C406.3.5 G04 Electric Energy Storage. Electric storage devices shall be charged and discharged by *automatic* load management controls to store energy during non-peak periods and use stored energy during peak periods to reduce *building* demand. Electric storage devices shall have a minimum capacity of 1.5 Wh/ft^2 (87 Wh/m^2) of gross *building* area. Base credits in Tables C406.3(1) through C406.3(9)~~8~~ are based on installed electric storage of 5 Wh/ft^2 (54 Wh/m^2) and shall be prorated for actual installed storage capacity between 1.5 and 15 Wh/ft^2 (16 to 160 Wh/m^2), as follows:

[Installed electric storage capacity, Wh/ft^2 (Wh/m^2)] / 5 (54) x [C406.3.5 Credits from Tables] **(Equation 4-30)**

Larger energy storage shall be permitted however, credits are limited to the range of 1.5 to 15 Wh/ft^2 (16 to 160 Wh/m^2).

C406.3.6 G05 Cooling Energy Storage. *Automatic* load management controls shall be capable of activating ice or chilled water storage equipment to reduce demand during summer peak periods. Storage tank standby loss shall be demonstrated through analysis to be no more than 2 percent of storage capacity over a 24 hour period for the cooling design day.

Base credits in Section C406.3 are based on storage capacity of the design peak hour cooling load with a 1.15 sizing factor. Credits shall be prorated for installed storage systems sized between 0.5 and 4.0 times the design day peak hour cooling load, rounded to the nearest whole credit. Larger storage shall be permitted but the associated credits are limited to the range above. Energy credits shall be determined as follows:

$$EC_S = EC_{1.0} \times (1.44 \times SR + 0.71) / 2.15 \quad \text{(Equation 4-31)}$$

EC_S = Cooling Storage credit achieved for Project
$EC_{1.0}$ = G05 base energy credit for *building* use type and *climate zone* based on 1.0 ton-hours storage per design day ton (kWh/kW) of cooling load
SR = Storage ratio in ton-hours storage per design day ton (kWh/kW) of cooling load where $0.5 \le SR \le 4.0$

C406.3.7 G06 Service Hot Water Energy Storage. Where SHW is heated by electricity, *automatic* load management controls comply with ANSI/CTA-2045-B shall preheat stored SHW before the peak period and suspend electric water heating during the peak period. Storage capacity shall be provided by either:

1. Preheating water above 140°F (60°C) delivery temperature with at least 1.34 kWh of energy storage per kW of water-heating capacity. Tempering valves shall be provided at the *water heater* delivery location.
2. Providing additional heated water tank storage capacity above peak SHW demand with equivalent peak storage capacity to item 1.

Credits earned for measure G06 shall be calculated using Equation 4-32:

$$\underline{EC_{G06\ ach} = EC_{G06\ base} \times EC_{G06\ adj}} \quad \text{(Equation 4-32)}$$

EC_{G06_ach} = SWH Energy Storage credit achieved for Project
EC_{G06_base} = G06 Base energy credit from Section C406.3
EC_{G06_adj} = energy credit adjustment factor from Table C406.3.7

TABLE C406.3.7
Energy Credit Adjustment Based on Use of Heat Pump Water Heater or Demand Response

DEMAND RESPONSE READY PER SECTION C404.10	DEMAND RESPONSE SIGNAL AVAILABLE[a]	HAS HPWH	$EC_{GO6\ Adj}$ [b]
NO	NA	NO	100%
NO	NA	YES	33%
YES	NO	NO	50%
YES	NO	YES	17%
YES	YES	NA	0%

a. “Demand Response Signal Available” is “Yes” where a controlling entity currently makes a demand response signal available to the building.

b. The lower values of $EC_{G06\ adj}$ in this column apply when no less than 67 percent of the whole-building design end use service water heating requirements are met using only heat pump heating at the conditions described in Section C406.2.3.1.2.

C406.3.8 G07 Building Thermal Mass. The project shall have additional passive interior mass and a night flush control of the HVAC system. The credit is available to projects that have at least 80 percent of gross floor area unoccupied between midnight and 6:00 a.m. The project shall meet the following requirements:

1. Interior to the *building thermal envelope* insulation, provide 10 lb/ft(50 kg/m) of project *conditioned floor area* of passive thermal mass in the *building interior wall*, the inside of the *exterior wall* , or interior floor construction. Mass *construction* shall have mass surfaces directly contacting the air in *conditioned spaces* with directly attached gypsum panels allowed. Mass with carpet or furred gypsum panels or *exterior wall* mass that is on the exterior of the insulation layer (e.g., the portion of CMU block on the exterior of insulation filled cell cavities) shall not be included toward the *building* mass required.
2. HVAC units for 80 percent or more of the supply airflow in the project shall be equipped with outdoor air economizers and fans that have variable or low speed capable of operating at 66 percent or lower airflow and be included in the night flush *control* sequence.
3. Night flush controls shall be configured with the following sequence or another night flush strategy shall be permitted where demonstrated to be effective, avoids added morning heating, and is *approved* by the *authority having jurisdiction*.
   - 3.1. Summer mode shall be activated when outdoor air temperature exceeds 70ºF (21ºC) and shall continue uninterrupted until deactivated when outdoor air temperature falls below 45ºF (7ºC). During summer mode, the occupied cooling *set point* shall be set 1ºF (0.6ºC) higher than normal and the occupied heating *set point* shall be reset 2ºF (1.1ºC) lower than normal.
   - 3.2. When all the following conditions exist, night flush shall be activated:
     - 3.2.1. Summer mode is active in accordance with item 3.1.
     - 3.2.2. Outdoor air temperature is 5ºF (2.8ºC) or more below indoor average zone temperature.
     - 3.2.3. Indoor average zone temperature is greater than morning occupied heating *set point*.
     - 3.2.4. In climate zones 0A, 1A, 2A, and 3A, outdoor dewpoint is below 50ºF (10ºC) or outdoor air enthalpy is less than indoor air enthalpy.
     - 3.2.5. Local time is between 10:00 pm and 6:00 am.
   - 3.3. When night flush is active, *automatic* night flush controls shall operate outdoor air *economizers* at low fan speed not exceeding 66 percent during the unoccupied period with *mechanical cooling* and heating locked out.

SECTION C407
SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE

C407.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using simulated building performance. The following systems and loads shall be included in determining the simulated building performance: heating systems, cooling systems, *service water heating*, fan systems, lighting power, receptacle loads and process loads.

Exception: Energy used to recharge or refuel vehicles that are used for on-road and off-site transportation purposes.

C407.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance based on total building performance requires that a *proposed design* meet all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within **Table C407.2(1)**.
2. An annual *energy cost* that is less than or equal to the percent of the annual *energy cost* (PAEC) of the *standard reference design* calculated in Equation 4-33. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official* , such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's *State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures* reports. *Code officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in *energy cost* calculations. The reduction in *energy cost* of the *proposed design* associated with *on-site renewable energy* shall be not more than 5 percent of the total *energy cost*. The amount of renewable energy purchased from off-site sources shall be the same in the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* .

Exceptions:

1. Jurisdictions that require site energy (1 kWh = 3413 Btu) rather than *energy cost* as the metric of comparison.
2. Where energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu or Btu per square foot of *conditioned floor area* is substituted for the *energy cost*, the energy use shall be calculated using source energy factors from Table C407.2(2) For electricity, U.S. locations shall use values eGRID subregions. Locations outside the United States shall use the value for "All other electricity" or locally derived values.

$$PAEC = 100 \times (\underline{0.80}\ \cancel{0.85} + 0.025 - Ecr/1000) \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-33)}$$

PAEC = Percentage of annual *energy cost* applied to *standard reference design*
EC_r= Energy efficiency credits required for the *building* in accordance with Section C406.1 (do not include load management and renewable credits)

TABLE C407.2(1)
REQUIREMENTS FOR ~~TOTAL~~ SIMULATED BUILDING PERFORMANCE

SECTION [a]	TITLE
Envelope	
C401.3	*Building thermal envelope* certificate
C402.2.1.1	Joints staggered
C402.2.1.2	Skylight curbs
C402.2.6	Insulation of radiant heating system panels
C402.6,	Air leakage— *building thermal envelope*
Mechanical	
C403.1.1,	Calculation of heating and cooling loads
C403.1.2,	Data centers
C403.2,	System design
C403.3,	Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies
~~**C403.4,**~~ C403.4.1	Thermostatic controls
C403.4.2	Off-hour controls
C403.4.7	~~HVAC~~Heating and cooling system controls for operable openings to the outdoors
C403.5.5,	Economizer fault detection and diagnostics
C403.7, , except **C403.7.4.1,**	Ventilation and exhaust systems
C403.8, , except **C403.8.6,**	Fan and fan controls
C403.9,	Large-diameter ceiling fans
C403.12, , except **C403.12.3,**	Refrigeration equipment performance
C403.13,	Construction of HVAC system elements
C403.14,	Mechanical systems located outside of the *building thermal envelope*
C404,	Service water heating
C405, , except **C405.3,**	Electrical power and lighting systems
C406.1.2	Additional renewable and load management credit requirements
C408,	Maintenance information and system commisioning

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

TABLE C407.2(2)
SOURCE ENERGY CONVERSION FACTORS FOR ELECTRICITY

Fossil Fuels Deliverd to Buildings	
Natural Gas	1.092
LPG or propone	1.151
Fuel oil (residual)	1.191
Fuel oil (distillate)	1.158
Coal	1.048
Gasoline	1.187
Other fuels not specified in this table	1.048
Electricity	
AKGD-ASCC Alaska Grid	2.47
AKMS-ASCC Miscellaneous	1.35
AZNM-WECC Southwest	2.57
CAMX-WECC California	1.66
ERCT-ERCOT All	2.32
FRCC-FRCC All	2.78
HIMS-HICC Miscellaneous	3.15
HIOA-HICC Oahu	3.87
MROE-MRO East	2.92
MROW-MRO West	2.21
NEWE-NPCC New England	2.66
NWPP-WECC Northwest	1.48
NYCW-NPCC NYC/Westchester	2.89
NYLI-NPCC Long Island	2.84
NYUP-NPCC Upstate NY	1.81
PRMS-Puerto Rico Miscellaneous	3.27
RFCE-RFC East	2.90
RFCM-RFC Michigan	2.93
RFCW-RFC West	2.97
RMPA-WECC Rockies	2.16
SPNO-SPP North	2.21
SPSO-SPP South	2.05
SRMV-SERC Mississippi Valley	2.84
SRMW-SERC Midwest	3.09
SRSO-SERC South	2.89

SRTV-SERC Tennessee Valley	2.82
SRVC-SERC Virginia/Carolina	2.91
All other electricity	2.51
Thermal energy	
Chilled water	0.60
Steam	1.84
Hot water	1.73

C407.3 Documentation. Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official.*

C407.3.1 Compliance report. Permit submittals shall include a report documenting that the *proposed design* has annual energy costs less than or equal to the annual energy costs of the *standard reference design*. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address of the *building*.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the *building* component characteristics of the *proposed design* as specified in **Table C407.4.1(1)**. The inspection checklist shall show the estimated annual *energy cost* for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

C407.3.2 Additional documentation. The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the *building* component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.
2. Thermal zoning diagrams consisting of floor plans showing the thermal zoning scheme for *standard reference design* and *proposed design*.
3. Input and output reports from the *energy analysis* simulation program containing the complete input and output files, as applicable. The output file shall include energy use totals and energy use by energy source and end-use served, total hours that space conditioning loads are not met and any errors or warning messages generated by the simulation tool as applicable.
4. An explanation of any error or warning messages appearing in the simulation tool output.
5. A certification signed by the builder providing the *building* component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in **Table C407.4.1(1).**
6. Documentation of the reduction in energy use associated with *on-site renewable energy*.

C407.4 Calculation procedure. Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

C407.4.1 Building specifications. The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by **Table C407.4.1(1)**. **Table C407.4.1(1)** shall include by reference all notes contained in **Table C402.1.2**.

TABLE C407.4.1(1)
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Space use classification	Same as proposed	The space use classification shall be chosen in accordance with **Table C405.3.2(1)** or **C405.3.2(2)** for all areas of the building covered by this permit. Where the space use classification for a building is not known, the building shall be categorized as an office building.
Roofs	Type: insulation entirely above deck	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2**	As proposed
	Solar reflectance : 0.25 , except as specified in Section C402.4 and Table C402.4 for Climate Zones 0, 1, 2, and 3	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90, except as specified in Section C402.4 and Table C402.4 for Climate Zones 0, 1, 2, and 3	As proposed
Walls, above-grade	Type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2**	As proposed
	Thermal bridges: Account for heat transfer consistent with compliant *psi*- and *chi*-factors from Table C402.1.4 for *thermal bridges* as identified in Section C402.7 that are present in the proposed design.	As proposed; *psi*- and *chi*-factors for proposed *thermal bridges* shall be determined in accordance with requirements in Section C402.1.4.
	Solar reflectance: 0.25	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90	As proposed
Walls, below-grade	Type: mass wall	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-Factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2** with insulation layer on interior side of walls	As proposed

Floors, above-grade	Type: joist/framed floor	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2**	As proposed
Floors, slab-on-grade	Type: unheated	As proposed
	F-factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2**	As proposed
Opaque doors	Type: swinging	As proposed
	Area: Same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.1.2**	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Area 1. The proposed vertical fenestration area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is less than 40 percent of above-grade wall area. 2. 40 percent of above-grade wall area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is 40 percent or more of the above-grade wall area.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.5**	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in **Table C402.5** except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used	As proposed
	External shading and PF: none	As proposed
Skylights	Area 1. The proposed skylight area; where the proposed skylight area is less than that permitted by **Section C402.1,** . 2. The area permitted by **Section C402.1,** ; where the proposed skylight area exceeds that permitted by **Section C402.1,** .	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in **Table C402.5**	As proposed

	SHGC: as specified in **Table C402.5** except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used.	As proposed
Lighting, interior	The interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with **Section C405.3.2,** . Where the occupancy of the building is not known, the lighting power density shall be 1.0 watt per square foot based on the categorization of buildings with unknown space classification as offices.	As proposed
Lighting, exterior	The lighting power shall be determined in accordance with **Tables C405.5.2(1)**, **C405.5.2(2)** and **C405.5.2(3)**. Areas and dimensions of surfaces shall be the same as proposed.	As proposed
Internal gains	Same as proposed	Receptacle, motor and process loads shall be modeled and estimated based on the space use classification. End-use load components within and associated with the building shall be modeled to include, but not be limited to, the following: exhaust fans, parking garage ventilation fans, exterior building lighting, swimming pool heaters and pumps, elevators, escalators, refrigeration equipment and cooking equipment.
Schedules	Same as proposed **Exception:** Thermostat settings and schedules for HVAC systems that utilize radiant heating, radiant cooling and elevated air speed, provided that equivalent levels of occupant thermal comfort are demonstrated by means of equal Standard Effective Temperature as calculated in Normative Appendix B of ASHRAE Standard 55.	Operating schedules shall include hourly profiles for daily operation and shall account for variations between weekdays, weekends, holidays and any seasonal operation. Schedules shall model the time-dependent variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, thermostat settings, mechanical ventilation, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads. The schedules shall be typical of the proposed building type as determined by the designer and approved by the jurisdiction.

Outdoor airflow	Where the proposed design specifies mechanical ventilation: 1. For systems 1-4 as specified in Tables C407.4.1(2) and C407.4.1(3), the outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Section C403.7 and *International Mechanical Code* Section 403.3.1.1.2.3.4 Equation 4-8, using a system ventilation efficiency (Ev) of 0.75. 2.For systems 5-11 as specified in Tables C407.4.1(2) and C407.4.1(3), the outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Section C403.7 and *International Mechanical Code* Section 403.3. Where the proposed design specifies natural ventilation, as proposed.	As proposed, in accordance with **Section C403.2.2,** .
Heating systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type[a]: as specified in **Tables C407.4.1(2)** and **C407.4.1(3)**	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in the tables in **Section C403.3.2,** .	As proposed
	Capacity[b]: sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet heating load hours and no larger heating capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed
Cooling systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type[c]: as specified in **Tables C407.4.1(2)** and **C407.4.1(3)**	As proposed

	Efficiency: as specified in **Tables C403.3.2(1)**, **C403.3.2(2)** and **C403.3.2(3)**	As proposed
	Capacity[b]: sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet cooling load hours and no larger cooling capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed
	Economizer[d]: same as proposed, in accordance with **Section C403.5, .**	As proposed
Service water heating[e]	Fuel type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in **Table C404.2**	For Group R, as proposed multiplied by SWHF. For other than Group R, as proposed multiplied by efficiency as provided by the manufacturer of the DWHR unit.
	Capacity: same as proposed	As proposed
	Where no service water hot water system exists or is specified in the proposed design, no service hot water heating shall be modeled.	
Energy Recovery	Where the proposed design specifies mechanical ventilation, as specified in Section C403.7.4 based on the *standard reference design* airflows. Where the proposed design specifies natural ventilation, as proposed.	As proposed

Fan power	As specified in Section C403.8 for the proposed design. **Exceptions:** 1. Where the fan power of the proposed design is exempted from the requirements of Section C403.8, as proposed. 2. Fan systems addressed by Section C403.8.1: Fan system BHP shall be as proposed or to the limits specified in Section C403.8.1, whichever is smaller. If the limit is reached, the power or each fan shall be reduced proportionally until the limit is met. 3. Fan systems serving areas where the mechanical ventilation is provided in accordance with an engineered ventilation system design of Section 403.2 of the *International Mechanical Code* shall not use the particulate filtration or air cleaner pressure drop adjustment available in Table C403.8(1) when calculating the fan system BHP limit for the portion of the airflow being treated to comply with the engineered ventilation system design.	As proposed

On-site Renewable Energy	Where a system providing on-site renewable energy has been modeled in the proposed design the same system shall be modeled identically in the *standard reference design* except the rated capacity shall meet the requirements of Section C405.15.1 Where no system is designed or included in the proposed design, model an unshaded photovoltaic system with the following characteristics: **Size:** Rated capacity per Section C405.15.1 **Module Type**: Crystalline Silicone Panel with glass cover, 19.1% nominal efficiency and temperature coefficient of -0.35%/°C, Performance shall be based on a reference temperature of 77°F (25°C), airmass of 1.5 atmosphere and irradiance of 317 Btu/h x ft^2 (1000 W/m^2). **Array Type:** Rack mounted array with installed nominal operating cell temperature (INOCT) of 103°F (45°C). Total System Losses (DC output to AC output): 11.3%. **Tilt:** 0-degrees (mounted horizontally). **Azimuth:** 180 degrees.	As proposed

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.7 w/m^2.

SWHF = Service Water Heat Recovery factor, DWHR = Drain Water Heat Recovery.

a. Where no heating system exists or has been specified, the heating system shall be modeled as fossil fuel. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.

b. The ratio between the capacities used in the annual simulations and the capacities determined by sizing runs shall be the same for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

c. Where no cooling system exists or no cooling system has been specified, the cooling system shall be modeled as an air-cooled single-zone system, one unit per thermal zone. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.

d. If an economizer is required in accordance with Table C403.5(1) and where no economizer exists or is specified in the proposed design, then a supply-air economizer shall be provided in the standard reference design in accordance with **Section C403.5,** .

e. The SWHF shall be applied as follows:

   1. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than one shower and not greater than two showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then SWHF = [1 **–** (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.36)].
   2. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than three showers and not greater than four showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then SWHF = [1 **–** (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.33)].
   3. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than five showers and not greater than six showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit, then SWHF = [1 **–** (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.26)].
   4. Where Items 1 through 3 are not met, SWHF = 1.0.

TABLE C407.4.1(2)
HVAC SYSTEMS MAP

CONDENSER COOLING SOURCE[a]	HEATING SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION[b]	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVC SYSTEM TYPE[c]		
		Single-zone Residential System	Single-zone Nonresidential System	All Other
Water/ground	Electric resistance	System 5	System 5	System 1
	Heat pump	System 6	System 6	System 6
	Fossil fuel	System 7	System 7	System 2
Air/none	Electric resistance	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Heat pump	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Fossil fuel	System 10	System 11	System 4

a. Select "water/ground" where the *proposed design* system condenser is water or evaporatively cooled; select "air/none" where the condenser is air cooled. Closed-circuit dry coolers shall be considered to be air cooled. Systems utilizing district cooling shall be treated as if the condenser water type were "water." Where mechanical cooling is not specified or the mechanical cooling system in the *proposed design* does not require heat rejection, the system shall be treated as if the condenser water type were "Air." For proposed designs with ground-source or groundwater-source heat pumps, the *standard reference design* HVAC system shall be water-source heat pump (System 6).

b. Select the path that corresponds to the *proposed design* heat source: electric resistance, heat pump (including air source and water source), or fuel fired. Systems utilizing district heating (steam or hot water) and systems without heating capability shall be treated as if the heating system type were "fossil fuel." For systems with mixed fuel heating sources, the system or systems that use the secondary heating source type (the one with the smallest total installed output capacity for the spaces served by the system) shall be modeled identically in the *standard reference design* and the primary heating source type shall be used to determine *standard reference design* HVAC system type.

c. Select the *standard reference design* HVAC system category: The system under "single-zone residential system" shall be selected where the HVAC system in the *proposed design* is a single-zone system and serves a Group R occupancy. The system under "single-zone nonresidential system" shall be selected where the HVAC system in the *proposed design* is a single-zone system and serves other than Group R occupancy. The system under "all other" shall be selected for all other cases.

TABLE C407.4.1(3)
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVAC SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

SYSTEM NO.	SYSTEM TYPE	FAN CONTROL	COOLING TYPE	HEATING TYPE
1	Variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes[a]	VAV[d]	Chilled water[e]	Electric resistance
2	Variable air volume with reheat[b]	VAV[d]	Chilled water[e]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
3	Packaged variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes[a]	VAV[d]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric resistance
4	Packaged variable air volume with reheat[b]	VAV[d]	Direct expansion[c]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
5	Two-pipe fan coil	Constant volume[i]	Chilled water[e]	Electric resistance
6	Water-source heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump and boiler[g]
7	Four-pipe fan coil	Constant volume[i]	Chilled water[e]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
8	Packaged terminal heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump[h]
9	Packaged rooftop heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump[h]
10	Packaged terminal air conditioner	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
11	Packaged rooftop air conditioner	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion	Fossil fuel furnace

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s, 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. **VAV with parallel boxes:** Fans in parallel VAV fan-powered boxes shall be sized for 50 percent of the peak design flow rate and shall be modeled with 0.35 W/cfm fan power. Minimum volume setpoints for fan-powered boxes shall be equal to the minimum rate for the space required for *ventilation* consistent with **Section C403.6.1,** , Item 3. Supply air temperature setpoint shall be constant at the design condition.

b. **VAV with reheat:** Minimum volume setpoints for VAV reheat boxes shall be 0.4 cfm/ft^2 of floor area. Supply air temperature shall be reset based on zone demand from the design temperature difference to a 10°F temperature difference under minimum load conditions. Design airflow rates shall be sized for the reset supply air temperature; i.e., a 10°F temperature difference.

c. **Direct expansion:** The fuel type for the cooling system shall match that of the cooling system in the *proposed design*.

d. **VAV:** Where the *proposed design* system has a supply, return or relief fan motor 25 hp or larger, the corresponding fan in the VAV system of the *standard reference design* shall be modeled assuming a variable-speed drive. For smaller fans, a forward-curved centrifugal fan with inlet vanes shall be modeled. Where the *proposed design*'s system has a direct digital control system at the zone level, static pressure setpoint reset based on zone requirements in accordance with **Section C403.8.6,** shall be modeled.

e. **Chilled water:** For systems using purchased chilled water, the chillers are not explicitly modeled and chilled water costs shall be based as determined in **Sections C407.2,** and **C407.4.2,** . Otherwise, the *standard reference design*'s chiller plant shall be modeled with chillers having the number as indicated in **Table C407.4.1(4)** as a function of standard reference *building* chiller plant load and type as indicated in **Table C407.4.1(5)** as a function of individual chiller load. Where chiller fuel source is mixed, the system in the *standard reference design* shall have chillers with the same fuel types and with capacities having the same proportional capacity as the *proposed design*'s chillers for each fuel type. Chilled water supply temperature shall be modeled at 44°F design supply temperature and 56°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either *building* model. Chilled water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with **Section C403.4.4,** . Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the *proposed design*; where the *proposed design* has no chilled water pumps, the *standard reference design* pump power shall be 22 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The chilled water system shall be modeled as primary-only variable flow with flow maintained at the design rate through each chiller using a bypass. Chilled water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable-speed drives where required in **Section C403.4.4,** . The heat rejection device shall be an axial fan cooling tower with two-speed fans where required in **Section C403.11,** . Condenser water design supply temperature shall be 85°F or 10°F approach to design wet-bulb temperature, whichever is lower, with a design temperature rise of 10°F. The tower shall be controlled to maintain a 70°F leaving water temperature where weather permits, floating up to leaving water temperature at design conditions. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the *proposed design*; where the *proposed design* has no condenser water pumps, the *standard reference design* pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). Each chiller shall be modeled with separate condenser water and chilled water pumps interlocked to operate with the associated chiller.

f. **Fossil fuel boiler:** For systems using purchased hot water or steam, the boilers are not explicitly modeled and hot water or steam costs shall be based on actual utility rates. Otherwise, the boiler plant shall use the same fuel as the *proposed design* and shall be natural draft. The *standard reference design* boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the *standard reference design* plant load is 600,000 Btu/h and less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Hot water supply temperature shall be modeled at 180°F design supply temperature and 130°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either *building* model. Hot water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with **Section C403.4.4,** . Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the *proposed design*; where the *proposed design* has no hot water pumps, the *standard reference design* pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The hot water system shall be modeled as primary only with continuous variable flow. Hot water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by **Section C403.4.4,** .

g. **Electric heat pump and boiler:** Water-source heat pumps shall be connected to a common heat pump water loop controlled to maintain temperatures between 60°F and 90°F. Heat rejection from the loop shall be provided by an axial fan closed-circuit evaporative fluid cooler with two-speed fans where required in **Section C403.8.6,** . Heat addition to the loop shall be provided by a boiler that uses the same fuel as the *proposed design* and shall be natural draft. Where no boilers exist in the *proposed design*, the standard reference *building* boilers shall be fossil fuel. The *standard reference design* boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the *standard reference design* plant load is 600,000 Btu/h or less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either *building* model. Pump system power shall be the same as the *proposed design*; where the *proposed design* has no pumps, the *standard reference design* pump power shall be 22 W/gpm, which is equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, with a 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency. Loop flow shall be variable with flow shutoff at each heat pump when its compressor cycles off as required by **Section C403.4.4,** . Loop pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by **Section C403.11,** .

h. **Electric heat pump:** Electric air-source heat pumps shall be modeled with electric auxiliary heat. The system shall be controlled with a multistage space *thermostat* and an outdoor air *thermostat* wired to energize auxiliary heat only on the last *thermostat* stage and when outdoor air temperature is less than 40°F.

i. **Constant volume:** Fans shall be controlled in the same manner as in the *proposed design*; i.e., fan operation whenever the space is occupied or fan operation cycled on calls for heating and cooling. Where the fan is modeled as cycling and the fan energy is included in the energy efficiency rating of the equipment, fan energy shall not be modeled explicitly.

TABLE C407.4.1(4)
NUMBER OF CHILLERS

TOTAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	NUMBER OF CHILLERS
≤ 300 tons	1
> 300 tons, < 600 tons	2, sized equally
≥ 600 tons	2 minimum, with chillers added so that all are sized equally and none is larger than 800 tons

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

TABLE C407.4.1(5)
WATER CHILLER TYPES

INDIVIDUAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	ELECTRIC CHILLER TYPE	FOSSIL FUEL CHILLER TYPE
≤ 100 tons	Reciprocating	Single-effect absorption, direct fired
> 100 tons, < 300 tons	Screw	Double-effect absorption, direct fired
≥ 300 tons	Centrifugal	Double-effect absorption, direct fired

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

C407.4.2 Thermal blocks. The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be analyzed using identical thermal blocks as specified in **Section C407.4.2.1,** , **C407.4.2.2,** or **C407.4.2.3,** .

C407.4.2.1 HVAC zones designed. Where HVAC *zones* are defined on HVAC design drawings, each HVAC *zone* shall be modeled as a separate *thermal block*.

Exception: Different HVAC *zones* shall be allowed to be combined to create a single *thermal block* or identical thermal blocks to which multipliers are applied, provided that:

1. The space use classification is the same throughout the *thermal block*.
2. All HVAC *zones* in the *thermal block* that are adjacent to glazed exterior walls face the same orientation or their orientations are within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of each other.
3. All of the *zones* are served by the same HVAC system or by the same kind of HVAC system.

C407.4.2.2 HVAC zones not designed. Where HVAC *zones* have not yet been designed, thermal blocks shall be defined based on similar internal load densities, occupancy, lighting, thermal and temperature schedules, and in combination with the following guidelines:

1. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for interior and perimeter spaces. Interior spaces shall be those located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an *exterior wall*. Perimeter spaces shall be those located closer than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an *exterior wall*.
2. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces adjacent to glazed exterior walls: a separate *zone* shall be provided for each orientation, except orientations that differ by not more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) shall be permitted to be considered to be the same orientation. Each *zone* shall include floor area that is 15 feet (4572 mm) or less from a glazed perimeter wall, except that floor area within 15 feet (4572 mm) of glazed perimeter walls having more than one orientation shall be divided proportionately between *zones*.
3. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having floors that are in contact with the ground or exposed to ambient conditions from *zones* that do not share these features.
4. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having exterior ceiling or roof assemblies from *zones* that do not share these features.

C407.4.2.3 Group R-2 occupancy buildings. Group R-2 occupancy spaces shall be modeled using one *thermal block* per space except that those facing the same orientations are permitted to be combined into one *thermal block*. Corner units and units with roof or floor loads shall only be combined with units sharing these features.

C407.5 Calculation software tools. Calculation procedures used to comply with Section C407 shall apply an *approved* version of a performance analysis software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all *building* elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* .The same *approved* version of the performance analysis tool shall be used to calculate the *proposed design* and standard reference design.

C407.5.1 Software tool approval. Any version of a performance analysis tool meeting the requirments of Section C407.5.1.1 and C407.5.1.2 shall be permitted to be *approved.* Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve tools for a specified application or limited scope.

C407.5.1.1 Software tool capabilities *Approved* software tools shall include the following capabilities:

1. *Building* operation for a full calendar year (8,760 hours).
2. Climate data for a full calendar year (8,760 hours) and shall reflect *approved* coincident hourly data for temperature, solar radiation, humidity, and wind speed for the *building* location.
3. Ten or more thermal zones.
4. Thermal mass effects.
5. Hourly variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, *thermostat* settings, mechanical *ventilation*, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads.
6. Part-load performance curves for mechanical equipment.
7. Capacity and efficiency correction curves for mechanical heating and cooling equipment.
8. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table C407.4.1(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings, including but not limited to R-value, U-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

C407.5.1.2 Testing required by software vendors Prior to approval, software tools shall be tested by the software vendor in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 140, except Sections 7 and 8. During testing, hidden inputs that are not normally ~~accessible~~ available to the user shall be permitted to avoid introducing source code changes strictly used for testing. Software vendors shall publish, on a publicly available website, the following ASHRAE Standard 140 test results, input files, and modeler reports for each tested version of a software tool:

1. Test results demonstrating the software tool was tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 140 and that meet or exceed the values for “The Minimum Number of Range Cases within the Test Group to Pass” for all test groups in ASHRAE Standard 140, Table A3-14.
2. Test results of the performance analysis tool and input files used for generating the ASHRAE Standard 140 test cases along with the results of the other performance analysis tools included in ASHRAE Standard 140, Annexes B8 and B16.
3. The modeler report in ASHRAE Standard 140, Annex A2, Attachment A2.7. Report Blocks A and G shall be completed for results exceeding the maximum or falling below the minimum of the reference values shown in ASHRAE Standard 140 Table A3-1 through Table A3-13, and Report Blocks A and E shall be completed for any omitted results.

C407.5.2 Algorithms not tested Algorithms not tested in accordance with Section C407.5.1.2, including algorithms that are alternatives to those that were tested, and numerical settings not tested, such as timesteps and tolerances, shall be permitted to be used when modeling the *proposed design* and *standard reference design*.

C407.5.3 Input values. Where calculations require input values not specified by **Sections C402,** , **C403,** , **C404,** and **C405,** , those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

C407.5.4 Exceptional calculation methods. Where the simulation program does not model a design, material or device of the *proposed design*, an exceptional calculation method shall be used where *approved* by the *code official*. Where there are multiple designs, materials or devices that the simulation program does not model, each shall be calculated separately and exceptional savings determined for each. The total exceptional savings shall not constitute more than half of the difference between the baseline *simulated building performance* and the proposed simulated building performance. Applications for approval of an exceptional method shall include all of the following:

1. Step-by-step documentation of the exceptional calculation method performed, detailed enough to reproduce the results.
2. Copies of all spreadsheets used to perform the calculations.
3. A sensitivity analysis of energy consumption where each of the input parameters is varied from half to double the value assumed.
4. The calculations shall be performed on a time step basis consistent with the simulation program used.
5. The performance rating calculated with and without the exceptional calculation method.

SECTION C408
MAINTENANCE INFORMATION AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

C408.1 General. This section covers the provision of maintenance information and the commissioning of, and the functional testing requirements for, *building* systems.

C408.1.1 Building operations and maintenance information. The *building* operations and maintenance documents shall be provided to the *owner* and shall consist of manufacturers' information, specifications and recommendations; programming procedures and data points; narratives; and other means of illustrating to the *owner* how the *building*, equipment and systems are intended to be installed, maintained and operated. Required regular maintenance actions for equipment and systems shall be clearly stated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance *manual* for that particular model and type of product.

C408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements. Prior to the final mechanical and plumbing inspections, the *registered design professional or approved agency* shall provide evidence of mechanical systems *commissioning* and completion in accordance with the provisions of this section.

Construction document notes shall clearly indicate provisions for *commissioning* and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the *owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent and made available to the *code official* upon request in accordance with **Sections C408.2.4,** and **C408.2.5,** .

Exceptions: The following systems are exempt:

1. Buildings with less than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) gross *conditioned floor area* and combined heating, cooling, and service water-heating capacity of less than 960,000 Btu/h (280kW).
2. Components within dwelling units and sleeping units served on of the following systems:

2.1 Simple unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(4), Table C403.3.2(5) each serving one zone and controlled by a single *thermostat* in the zone served.
2.2 Two-pipe heating systems installed in the dwelling serving one or more zones.

C408.2.1 Commissioning plan. A *commissioning plan* shall be developed by a *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and shall include the following items:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of *commissioning,* including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.
3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.
4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.
5. Measurable criteria for performance.

C408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing. HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the product specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

C408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing. Each supply air outlet and *zone* terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of **Chapter 6** of the *International Mechanical Code*. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.746 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less are not required to be provided with a means for air balancing.

C408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

Exception: The following equipment is not required to be equipped with a means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.
2. Where throttling results in not greater than 5 percent of the *nameplate horsepower* draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

C408.2.3 Functional performance testing. Functional performance testing specified in

Sections C408.2.3.1, through **C408.2.3.3,** shall be conducted.

C408.2.3.1 Equipment. Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems and system-to-system interfacing relationships in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications such that operation, function and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems are confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and *sequence of operation*, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions:

1. All modes as described in the *sequence* of *operation*.
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode.
3. Performance of alarms.
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

Exception: Unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in the tables in **Section C403.3.2,** that do not require supply air economizers.

C408.2.3.2 Controls. HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications.

C408.2.3.3 Economizers. Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report. A preliminary report of *commissioning* test procedures and results shall be completed and certified by the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and provided to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical and service hot water findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall be identified as "Preliminary Commissioning Report," shall include the completed Commissioning Compliance Checklist, **Figure C408.2.4**, and shall identify:

1. Itemization of deficiencies found during testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.
4. Results of functional performance tests.
5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

Project Information: ____________________________ Project Name:__________________________________

Project Address: ____

Commissioning Authority: ____

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

☐ Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1

☐ Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.

☐ HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:__________________________

☐ HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:__________________________

☐ Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:__________________________

☐ Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:__________________________

☐ Service Water Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:__________________________

☐ Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled

☐ Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2021 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner's Representative __________________________ Date_____________

Project Information: ______________________________ Project Name:____________________________________

Project Address: ____

Commissioning Authority: ____

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

☐ Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1

☐ Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.

☐ HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:____________________________

☐ HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:____________________________

☐ Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:____________________________

☐ Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:____________________________

☐ Service Water Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:____________________________

☐ Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled

☐ Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2021 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner's Representative ____________________________ Date______________

FIGURE C408.2.4
COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST

C408.2.4.1 Acceptance of report. Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered as acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to **Section C107.2.6,** until the *code official* has received the Preliminary Commissioning Report from the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent.

C408.2.4.2 Copy of report. The *code official* shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Preliminary Commissioning Report be made available for review by the *code official*.

C408.2.5 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.2.5.1 System balancing report. A written report describing the activities and measurements completed in accordance with **Section C408.2.2,** .

C408.2.5.2 Final commissioning report. A report of test procedures and results identified as "Final Commissioning Report" shall be delivered to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water system findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.

Exception: Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

C408.3 Functional testing of lighting and receptacle controls. *Automatic* lighting and receptacle controls required by this code shall comply with this section.

C408.3.1 Functional testing. Prior to passing final inspection, the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* shall provide evidence that the lighting and receptacle control systems have been tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the *construction documents* and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with **Sections C408.3.1.1,** through **C408.3.1.3,** for the applicable control type.

C408.3.1.1 Occupant sensor controls. Where *occupant sensor controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Certify that the *occupant sensor* has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. For projects with seven or fewer *occupant sensors*, each sensor shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven *occupant sensors,* testing shall be done for each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry. Where multiples of each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry are provided, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one, of each combination shall be tested unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

   For *occupant sensor controls* to be tested, verify the following:

   3.1. Where *occupant sensor controls* include status indicators, verify correct operation.

   3.2. The controlled lights and receptacles controlled by *occupant sensor controls* turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time upon vacancy of the space.

   3.3. For auto-on *occupant sensor controls*, the controlled lights and receptacles controlled by *occupant sensor controls* turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space.

   3.4. For *manual*-on *occupant sensor controls*, the controlled lights and receptacles controlled by *occupant sensor controls* turn on only when manually activated.

3.5. The lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

C408.3.1.2 Time-switch controls. Where *time-switch controls* are provided, items 1 through 5 shall be performed for all time-switch controls. For projects with more than seven spaces where lighting or receptacles are controlled by *time-switch controls*, not less than 10 percent of spaces and in no case fewer than one, shall be tested according to items 6 and 7 unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested spaces fail any of the requirements in items 6 and 7, all remaining spaces shall be tested.

1. Confirm that the *time-switch control* is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.
2. Provide documentation to the *owner* of *time-switch controls* programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.
3. Verify the correct time and date in the time switch.
4. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.
5. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.
6. Simulate occupied condition. Verify and document the following:
   6.1. All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.
   6.2. The switch only operates lighting in the *enclosed space* in which the switch is located.
   6.3 Receptacles in the space controlled by the *time-switch controls* turn on.
7. Simulate unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:
   7.1. Nonexempt lighting turns off.
   7.2. *Manual* override switch allows only the lights and receptacles controlled by the *time-switch controls* in the *enclosed space* where the override switch is located to turn on controlled lighting and receptacles for no more than 2 hours .
   7.3 Receptacles controlled by the *time-switch controls* turn off.
8. Additional testing as specified by the *registered design professional.*

C408.3.1.3 Daylight responsive controls. Where *daylight responsive controls* are provided, the following shall be verified:

1. Control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
2. Daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level setpoints in response to available daylight.
3. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for *ready access* only by authorized personnel.

C408.3.1.4 High-end trim controls. Where lighting controls are configured for *high-end trim* , verify the following:

1. *High-end trim* maximum level has been set.
2. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for ready access only by authorized personnel.
3. Lighting controls with ready access for users cannot increase the lighting power

above the maximum level established by the *high-end trim* controls.

C408.3.1.5 High end trim lighting control verification for Additional Efficiency Credit L02. For the qualifying spaces associated with the project receiving additional efficiency credits in Section C406.2.5.2, the following shall be documented while daylight responsive controls are not reducing lighting power:

1. The maximum setting for power or light output for each control group of *general lighting* luminaires.
2. The *high-end trim* setting for power or light output for each control group of *general lighting* luminaires.
3. For projects with seven or fewer claimed qualifying spaces, the reduction in light output ~~level~~ or reduction in power due to *high-end trim* shall be tested in all spaces and shown to reduce the *general lighting* power or light output ~~level~~ to not greater than 85 percent of full power or light output. For projects with more than seven claimed qualifying spaces, the reduction in light output ~~level~~ or reduction in power due to *high-end trim* shall be tested in not less than 10 percent of spaces, and no less than seven spaces, and shown to reduce *general lighting* power or light output ~~level~~ to not greater than 85 percent of full power or light output. Where more than 30 percent of the tested spaces fail, the remaining qualifying spaces shall be tested.
4. Summarize the reduction in *general lighting* power or light output resulting from the *high-end trim* setting for each qualifying space and the floor area of each qualifying space.
5. Summarize the fraction of total floor area for spaces where *high-end trim* reduces *general lighting* power or light output to not greater than 85 percent of full power or light output.

C408.3.1.6 Demand responsive lighting controls G01. For spaces associated with the project receiving Renewable and Load Management Credits in Section C406.3.2, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Confirm the maximum set point upon receipt of the *demand response signal* has been established for each space.
2. For projects with seven or fewer spaces ~~rooms~~ with controls, each space ~~room~~ shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven spaces ~~rooms~~ with controls, testing shall be done for each unique space type. Where multiple spaces ~~rooms~~ of each space type exist, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one space ~~room~~, of each space type shall be tested unless the *code official* requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail in a space type, all remaining identical space types shall be tested.
4. For demand responsive controls to be tested, verify the following:
   4.1 Where *high-end trim* controls are used, the *high-end trim* shall be set before testing.
   4.2 Turn off all non-*general lighting* in the space ~~room~~.
   4.3 Set *general lighting* to its maximum illumination level. Where *high-end trim* is set, this will be the maximum illumination level at the *high-end trim* setpoint.

4.4 An illumination measurement shall be taken in an area of the space ~~room~~ not controlled by daylight responsive controlled lighting. If there is not an area without daylight responsive controls the daylight responsive controls shall be overridden from reducing the lighting level during the test.

4.5 Measure and document the space ~~room~~ maximum illumination level.

5. Simulate a *demand response signal* and measure the illumination level at the same location as for the measurement in Section C408.3.1.6(4.5). Verify the illumination level has been reduced to no greater than 80 percent of the maximum illumination level documented in Section C408.3.1.6(4.5).
6. Simulate the end of a demand event by turning off the *demand response signal*, confirm controls automatically return to their normal operational settings at the end of the demand response event.

C408.3.2 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the *building owner* or *owner*'s authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.3.2.1 Drawings. *Construction documents* shall include the location and catalogue number of each piece of equipment.

C408.3.2.2 Manuals. An operating and maintenance *manual* shall be provided and include the following:

1. Name and address of not less than one service agency for installed equipment.
2. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended setpoints.
3. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.
4. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.
5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.

C408.3.2.3 Report. A report of test results shall be provided and include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.

SECTION ~~SECTION 409~~C409
CALCULATION OF HVAC TOTAL SYSTEM PERFORMANCE RATIO

~~C409.1~~C409.1 Applicability. Use of the HVAC Total System Performance Ratio (TSPR) method shall comply with this section.

~~C409.2~~C409.2 Permitted uses. Only HVAC systems that serve building occupancies and uses in Table C409.4 and not excluded by Section C409.2.1 shall be permitted to use the TSPR method.

~~C409.2.1~~C409.2.1 Systems not permitted. The following HVAC systems are not permitted to use Section C403.1(3)

1. HVAC Systems using

1.1 District heating water, chilled water or steam

1.2 Small *duct* high velocity air cooled, space constrained air cooled, single package vertical air conditioner, single package vertical heat pump, or double-duct air conditioner or double-duct heat pump as defined in subpart F to 10CFR part 431

1.3 Packaged terminal air conditioners and packaged terminal heat pumps that have cooling capacity greater than 12,000 Btu/hr (3500 kW)

1.4 A common heating source serving both HVAC and *service water heating* equipment

2. HVAC systems that provide recovered heat for *service water heating*
3. HVAC systems not specified in Table C409.6.1.10.1
4. HVAC systems specified in Table C409.6.1.10.1 with characteristics or parameters in Table C409.6.1.10.2(1), not identified as applicable to that HVAC system type.
5. HVAC systems with chilled water supplied by absorption chillers, heat recovery chillers, water to water heat pumps, air to water heat pumps, or a combination of air- and water-cooled chillers on the same chilled water loop.
6. HVAC systems served by heating water plants that include air to water or water to water heat pumps.
7. Underfloor air distribution and displacement *ventilation* HVAC systems.
8. Space conditioning systems that do not include mechanical cooling.
9. HVAC systems serving laundry rooms, elevator rooms, mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, data centers, and computer rooms.
10. *Buildings* or areas of medical office buildings required to use ASHRAE Standard 170
11. *Buildings* or areas that are required by regulation to have continuous air handling unit operation.
12. HVAC systems serving laboratories with fume hoods
13. Locker rooms with more than 2 showers
14. Natatoriums and rooms with saunas
15. Restaurants and commercial kitchens with total cooking capacity greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29 kW).
16. Areas of *buildings* with commercial refrigeration equipment exceeding 100 kW of power input.
17. Cafeterias and dining rooms

~~C409.3~~C409.3 HVAC TSPR compliance. HVAC systems permitted to use TSPR shall comply with Section C409.4 and the following:

1. HVAC systems shall comply with applicable requirements of Section C403 as follows:

1.1 Air economizers shall meet the requirements of Section C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air and Section C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics.

1.2 Variable-air-volume system systems shall meet requirements of Sections C403.6.5, C403.6.6, and C403.6.9.

1.3 Hydronic systems shall meet the requirements of Section C403.4.4.

1.4 Plants with multiple chillers or boilers shall meet the requirements of Section C403.4.5.

1.5 Hydronic (Water Loop) Heat Pumps and Water-Cooled Unitary Air Conditioners shall meet the requirements of Section C403.4.3.3.

1.6 Cooling tower turndown shall meet requirements of Section C403.11.4.

1.7 Heating of unenclosed spaces shall meet the requirements of Section C403.14.1.

1.8 Hot-gas bypass shall meet the requirements of Section C403.3.3.

1.9 Systems shall meet the operable openings interlock requirements of Section C403.4.7. Refrigeration systems shall meet the requirements of Section C403.12.

2. Systems shall comply with the applicable provisions ~~of Sections~~ of Section C403 required by Table C407.2

~~**C409.4**~~**C409.4 Performance target.** For HVAC systems serving uses or portions of uses listed in Section C409.2 that are not served by systems listed in Section C409.2.1, the HVAC TSPR of the *proposed design* shall be greater than or equal to the HVAC TSPR of the *standard reference design* divided by the mechanical performance factor (MPF)using Equation 4-34.

(Equation 4-34)

$$TSPRp > TSPRr / MPF$$

TSPRp = HVAC TSPR of the *proposed design* calculated in accordance with Sections C409.4, C409.5 and C409.6.
TSPRr = HVAC TSPR of the reference building design calculated in accordance with Sections C409.4, C409.5 and C409.6.
MPF = Mechanical Performance Factor from Table C409.4 based on *climate zone* and *building* use type
Where a *building* has multiple *building* use types, MPF shall be area weighted using Equation 4-35

(Equation 4-35)

$$MPF = (A1 \times MPF1 + A2 \times MPF2 + ... + An \times MPFn)/(A1 + A2 + ... + An)$$

MPF1, MPF2 through MPFn= Mechanical Performance Factors from Table C409.4 based on *climate zone* and *building* use types 1,2, through n
A1, A2 through An= Conditioned floor areas for *building* use types 1, 2, through n

~~TABLE C409.4~~TABLE C409.4

Mechanical Performance Factors

Climate Zone: Building use	Occupancy Group	0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
Office (all others)[a]	B	0.72	0.715	0.70	0.705	0.685	0.65	0.71	0.68	0.645	0.805	0.70	0.78	0.845	0.765	0.805	0.865	0.835	0.875	0.895
Office (Large)[a]	B	0.83	0.83	0.84	0.84	0.79	0.82	0.72	0.81	0.77	0.67	0.76	0.63	0.71	0.72	0.63	0.73	0.71	0.71	0.71
Retail	M	0.60	0.57	0.50	0.55	0.46	0.46	0.43	0.51	0.40	0.45	0.57	0.68	0.46	0.68	0.67	0.50	0.45	0.44	0.38
Hotel/ Motel	R-1	0.62	0.62	0.63	0.63	0.62	0.68	0.61	0.71	0.73	0.45	0.59	0.52	0.38	0.47	0.51	0.35	0.38	0.31	0.26
Multi-family/ Dormitory	R-2	0.64	0.63	0.67	0.63	0.65	0.64	0.59	0.72	0.55	0.53	0.50	0.44	0.54	0.47	0.38	0.55	0.50	0.51	0.47
School/ Education and Libraries	E (A-3)	0.82	0.81	0.80	0.79	0.75	0.72	0.71	0.72	0.67	0.73	0.72	0.68	0.82	0.73	0.61	0.89	0.80	0.83	0.77

a. Large office conditioned floor area > more than 150,000 ft^2 (14,000 m^2) or > more than 5 stories

~~C409.4.1~~C409.4.1 **HVAC TSPR.** HVAC TSPR is calculated according to Equation 4-36.

$$\text{HVAC TSPR} = \text{Heating and cooling load/Building HVAC system energy} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-36)}$$

where:

Building HVAC system energy = Sum of the annual site energy consumption for heating, cooling, fans, energy recovery, pumps, and heat rejection in thousands of Btus (kWh)

Heating and cooling load = Sum of the annual heating and cooling loads met by the *building* HVAC system in thousands of Btus (kWh)

~~C409.5~~C409.5 **General.** Projects shall use the procedures of this section when calculating compliance using HVAC Total System Performance Ratio.

~~C409.5.1~~C409.5.1 **Simulation Program.** Simulation tools used to calculate HVAC TSPR of the Standard Reference Design shall comply with the following:

1. The simulation program shall calculate the HVAC TSPR based only on the input for the *proposed design* and the requirements of Section C409. The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the *building* component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.
2. Performance analysis tools shall meet the applicable subsections of Section C409 and be tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 140, except for Sections 7 and 8 of Standard 140. The required tests shall include *building thermal envelope* and fabric load test (Sections 5.2.1, 5.2.2, and 5.2.3), ground coupled slab-on-grade analytical verification tests (Section 5.2.4), space-cooling equipment performance tests (Section 5.3), space-heating equipment performance tests (Section 5.4), and air-side HVAC equipment analytical verification test (Section 5.5), along with the associated reporting (Section 6).
3. The test results and modeler reports shall be publicly available and shall include the test results of the simulation programs and input files used for generating the results along with the results of the other simulation programs included in ASHRAE Standard 140 Annexes B8 and B16. The modeler report in Standard 140 Annex A2 Attachment A2.7 shall be completed for results exceeding the maximum or falling below the minimum of the reference values and for omitted results.
4. The simulation program shall have the ability to model part-load performance curves or other part-load adjustment methods based on manufacturer's part-load performance data for mechanical equipment.
5. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific software deemed to meet these requirements in accordance with Section C101.~~5~~4.1.

~~C409.5.2~~C409.5.2 **Climatic Data.** The simulation program shall perform the simulation using hourly values of climatic data for a full calendar year (8,760 hours) and shall reflect *approved* coincident hourly data for temperature, solar radiation, humidity and wind speed for the *building* location

~~C409.5.3~~C409.5.3 **Documentation.** Documentation or web links to documentation conforming to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official*.

~~C409.5.3.1~~C409.5.3.1 **Compliance Report.** Building permit submittals shall include:

1. A report produced by the simulation software that includes the following:
   1.1 Address of the *building*.

1.2 Name of individual completing the compliance report.
1.3 Name and version of the compliance software tool.
1.4 The dimensions, floor heights and number of floors for each thermal block.
1.5 By thermal block, the U-factor, C-factor, or *F-factor* for each simulated opaque envelope component and the U-factor and SHGC for each *fenestration* component.
1.6 By thermal block or by surface for each thermal block, the *fenestration* area.
1.7 By thermal block, a list of the HVAC equipment simulated in the *proposed design* including the equipment type, fuel type, equipment efficiencies and system controls.
1.8 Annual site HVAC energy use by end use for the proposed and baseline *building*.
1.9 Annual sum of heating and cooling loads for the baseline *building*.
1.10 The HVAC TSPR for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.

2. A mapping of the actual *building* HVAC component characteristics and those simulated in the *proposed design* showing how individual pieces of HVAC equipment identified above have been combined into average inputs as required by Section C409.6.1.10 including:
2.1 Fans
2.2 Hydronic pumps
2.3 Air handlers
2.4 Packaged cooling equipment
2.5 Furnaces
2.6 Heat pumps
2.7 Boilers
2.8 Chillers
2.9 Heat rejection equipment (open and closed-circuit cooling towers; dry coolers)
2.10 Electric resistance coils
2.11 Condensing units
2.12 Motors for fans and pumps
2.13 Energy recovery devices

3. For each piece of equipment identified above include the following as applicable:
3.1 Equipment name or tag consistent with that found on the design documents.
3.2 Rated Efficiency level.
3.3 Rated Capacity.
3.4 Where not provided by the simulation program report in item a, documentation of the calculation of any weighted equipment efficiencies input into the program.
3.5 Electrical input power for fans and pumps (before any speed or frequency control device) at design condition and calculation of input value (W/cfm or W/gpm) or W/gpm (W/Lps).

4. Floor plan of the *building* identifying:
4.1 How portions of the buildings are assigned to the simulated thermal blocks.
4.2 Areas of the *building* that are not covered under the requirements of Section C403.1.1.

~~C409.6~~C409.6 **Calculation Procedures.** Except as specified by this Section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques

~~C409.6.1~~C409.6.1 **Simulation of the proposed building design.** The *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified in this section.

~~C409.6.1.1~~C409.6.1.1 **Thermal block Geometry.** The geometry of buildings shall be configured using one or more thermal blocks. Each thermal block shall define attributes including thermal block dimensions, number of floors, floor to floor height and floor to ceiling height. Simulation software may allow the use of simplified shapes (such as rectangle, L shape, H Shape, U shape or T shape) to represent thermal blocks. Where actual *building* shape does not match these pre-defined shapes, simplifications are permitted providing the following requirements are met:

1. The *conditioned floor area* and volume of each thermal block shall match the *proposed design* within 10 percent.
2. The area of each exterior envelope component from Table C402.1.4 is accounted for within 10 percent of the actual design.
3. The area of vertical *fenestration* and skylights is accounted for within 10 percent of the actual design.
4. The orientation of each component in 2 and 3 above is accounted for within 45 degrees of the actual design.

The creation of additional thermal blocks may be necessary to meet these requirements. A more complex zoning of the *building* shall be allowed where all thermal zones in the reference and proposed model are the same and rules related to thermal block geometry and HVAC system assignment to thermal blocks are met with appropriate assignment to thermal zones.

Exception: Portions of the *building* that are unconditioned or served by systems not covered by the requirements of Section C403.1.1 shall be omitted.

~~C409.6.1.1.1~~C409.6.1.1.1 **Number of thermal blocks.** One or more thermal blocks may be required per *building* based on the following restrictions:

1. Each thermal *block* shall have no more than one *building* use .
2. Each thermal block shall be served by no more than one type of HVAC system. A single block shall be created for each unique HVAC system and *building* use combination and multiple HVAC units or components of the same type shall be combined in accordance with Section C409.6.1.10.2 .
3. Each thermal block shall have no more than a single defined floor to floor or floor to ceiling height. Where floor heights differ by more than two feet, separate thermal blocks shall be created .
4. Each block shall include either above grade or below grade stories For buildings with both above grade and below grade stories , separate blocks shall be created for each. Where blocks have exterior walls partially below grade, if greater than 50 percent of the *exterior wall* surface is below grade, then simulate the block as below grade;otherwise simulate as above grade.
5. Where a block includes multiple stories, separate blocks shall be created, if needed, to comply with both the following fenestration modeling requirements:

5.1 The product of the proposed design U-factor times the area of windows (U x A) on a given story of each facade shall not differ by more than 15 percent of the average U x A for that modeled facade in each block.

5.2 The product of the proposed design SHGC times the area of windows (SHGC x A) on a given story of each facade shall not differ by more than 15 percent of the average SHGC x A for that modeled facade in each block.

6. For a *building* model with multiple blocks, the blocks shall be configured together to have the same adjacencies as the actual *building* design.

~~C409.6.1.2~~C409.6.1.2 **Thermal Zoning.** Each story in a thermal block shall be modeled as follows:

1. Below grade stories shall be modeled as a single thermal zone
2. Where any facade in the block is less than 45 feet (1371 cm) in length, it shall be modeled as a single thermal zone per story.
3. Otherwise, each story shall be modeled with five thermal zones. A perimeter zone shall be created extending from each façade to a depth of 15 feet (457 cm). Where facades intersect, the zone boundary shall be formed by a 45 degree angle with the two facades. The remaining area or each story shall be modeled as a core zone with no exterior walls.

~~C409.6.1.2.1~~C409.6.1.2.1 **Core & Shell , Build-Out, and Future System Construction Analysis.** Where the *building* permit applies to only a portion of the HVAC system in a *building* and the remaining components will be designed under a future building permit or were previously installed, such components shall be modeled as follows:

1. Blocks including existing or future HVAC zone served by independent systems and not part of the construction project shall not be modeled .
2. Where the HVAC zones that do not include complete HVAC systems in the permit are intended to receive HVAC services from systems that are part of the construction project , their proposed zonal systems shall be modeled with equipment that meets, but does not exceed, the requirements of Section C403.
3. Where existing HVAC systems serve permitted zone equipment in the existing systems shall be modeled with equipment matching the manufacturer's stated efficiency for the installed equipment or equipment that meets, but does not exceed the requirements of Section C403.
4. Where the central plant heating and cooling equipment is completely replaced and HVAC zones with existing systems receive HVAC services from systems in the permit, their proposed zonal systems shall be modeled with equipment that meets, but does not exceed, the requirements of Section C403.

~~C409.6.1.3~~C409.6.1.3 **Occupancy.** Building occupancies modeled in the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* shall comply with the following requirements.

~~C409.6.1.3.1~~C409.6.1.3.1 **Occupancy Type.** The occupancy type for each thermal block shall be consistent with the *building* occupancy and uses specified in Table C409.4 ~~determined in accordance~~ Portions of the *building* occupancy and uses other than those specified in Table C409.4 shall not be included in the simulation. Surfaces adjacent to such excluded building portions shall be modeled as adiabatic in the simulation program.

~~C409.6.1.3.2~~C409.6.1.3.2 **Occupancy schedule, density, and heat gain.** The occupant density, heat gain, and schedule shall be for multifamily, office, retail, library, hotel/motel or school as specified by ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Normative Appendix C.

~~C409.6.1.4~~C409.6.1.4 **Building thermal envelope components.** *Building thermal envelope* components modeled in the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* shall comply with the requirements of this Section.

~~C409.6.1.4.1~~C409.6.1.4.1 **Roofs.** The roof U-factor and area shall be modeled as in the *proposed design*. If different roof thermal properties are present in a single thermal block, an area weighted U-factor shall be used. Roofs shall be modeled with insulation above a steel roof deck, with solar reflectance of 0.25 and emittance of 0.90.

Exception: For Climate Zones 0, 1, 2, and 3, solar reflectance and emittance shall be as specified in Section C402.4 and Table C402.4.

~~C409.6.1.4.2~~C409.6.1.4.2 **Above-grade walls.** The U-factor and area of above grade walls shall be modeled as in the *proposed design*. If different wall constructions exist on the façade of a thermal block an area-weighted U-factor shall be used. Walls will be modeled as steel frame construction.

~~C409.6.1.4.3~~C409.6.1.4.3 **Below-grade walls.** The C-factor and area of below grade walls shall be modeled as in the *proposed design*. If different below grade wall constructions exist in a thermal block, an area-weighted C- factor shall be used.

~~C409.6.1.4.4~~C409.6.1.4.4 **Above-grade exterior floors.** The U-factor and area of floors shall be modeled as in the *proposed design*. If different floor constructions exist in the thermal block an area-weighted U-factor shall be used. Exterior floors shall be modeled as steel frame.

~~C409.6.1.4.5~~C409.6.1.4.5 **Slab-on-grade floors.** The *F-factor* and perimeter of slab on grade floors shall be modeled as in the *proposed design*. If different slab on grade floor constructions exist in a thermal block, perimeter-weighted F- factor shall be used.

~~C409.6.1.4.6~~C409.6.1.4.6 **Vertical Fenestration.** The window area and area weighted U-factor and SHGC shall be modeled for each façade based on the *proposed design*. Each exterior surface in a thermal block must comply with Section C409.6.1.1.1 item 5. Windows shall be combined into a single window centered on each façade based on the area and sill height input by the user. When different U values, SHGC or sill heights exist on a single facade in a block, the area weighted average for each shall be input by the user.

~~C409.6.1.4.7~~C409.6.1.4.7 **Skylights.** The skylight area and area weighted U-factor and SHGC shall be modeled for each roof based on the *proposed design*. Skylights shall be combined into a single skylight centered on the roof of each zone based on the area input by the user.

~~C409.6.1.4.8~~C409.6.1.4.8 **Exterior Shading.** Permanent window overhangs shall be modeled. When windows with and without overhangs or windows with different overhang projection factors exist on a façade, window width weighted projection factors shall be input by the user as follows:

$$P_{avg} = (A1 \times L_{o1} + A2 \times L_{o2} ... + An \times L_{on})/(Lw_1 + Lw_2 ... + L_{wn}) \quad \text{(Equation 4-37)}$$

~~C409.6.1.5~~C409.6.1.5 **Lighting.** Interior lighting power density shall be equal to the allowance in Table C405.4.2(1) for multifamily, office, retail, library, or school. The lighting schedule shall be for multifamily, office, retail, library, or school as specified by ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Normative Appendix C. The impact of lighting controls is assumed to be captured by the lighting schedule and no explicit controls shall be modeled. Exterior lighting shall not be modeled.

~~C409.6.1.6~~C409.6.1.6 **Miscellaneous equipment.** The miscellaneous equipment schedule and power shall be for multifamily, office, retail, library, or school as specified by ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Normative Appendix C. The impact of miscellaneous equipment controls is assumed to be captured by the equipment schedule and no explicit controls shall be modeled.

Exceptions:

1. Multifamily dwelling units shall have a miscellaneous load density of 0.42 W/ ft^2
2. Multifamily common areas shall have a miscellaneous load density of 0 W/ft^2

~~C409.6.1.7~~C409.6.1.7 **Elevators.** Elevators shall not be modeled.

~~C409.6.1.8~~C409.6.1.8 **Service water heating equipment.** *Service water heating* shall not be modeled.

~~C409.6.1.9~~C409.6.1.9 **On-site renewable energy systems.** *On-site Renewable Energy* Systems shall not be modeled.

~~C409.6.1.10~~C409.6.1.10 **HVAC equipment.** Where proposed or reference system parameters are not specified in Section C409, HVAC systems shall be modeled to meet the minimum requirements of Section C403 Mechanical Systems.

~~C409.6.1.10.1~~C409.6.1.10.1 **Supported HVAC systems.** At a minimum, the HVAC systems shown in Table C409.6.1.10.1 shall be supported by the simulation program.

~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.1~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.1
PROPOSED BUILDING HVAC SYSTEMS SUPPORTED BY HVAC TSPR SIMULATION SOFTWARE

System No.	System Name
1	Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (with electric or hydronic heat)
2	Packaged Terminal Air Heat Pump
3	Packaged Single Zone Gas Furnace[a] and/or air-cooled Air Conditioner (includes split systems[b])
4	Packaged Single Zone Heat Pump (air to air only)(includes split systems[b] and electric or gas supplemental heat)
5	Variable Refrigerant Flow (air cooled only)
6	Variable Refrigerant Flow (air cooled only)
7	Water Source Heat Pump (Water Loop), water-source *Variable-Refrigerant-Flow-System*, or water-source air conditioner
8	Ground Source Heat Pump
9	Packaged Variable Air Volume (DX cooling)[a]
10	Variable Air Volume (hydronic cooling)[a]
11	Variable Air Volume with Fan Powered Terminal Units
12	Dedicated Outdoor Air System (in conjunction with systems 1-8)

a. Reheat or primary heat may be electric, hydronic, or gas furnace
b. Condensing units with DX air handlers are modeled as package furnace with air conditioners or heat pumps

~~C409.6.1.10.2~~C409.6.1.10.2 **Proposed building HVAC system simulation.** The HVAC systems shall be modeled as in the *proposed design* at design conditions unless otherwise stated with clarifications and simplifications as described in Tables C409.6.1.10.2(1) and C409.6.1.10.2(2). System parameters not described in the following sections shall be simulated to meet the minimum requirements of Section C403. All zones within a thermal block shall be served by the same HVAC system type as described in Section C409.6.1.1.1 item 2. Heat loss from ducts and pipes shall not be modeled. Table C409.6.1.10.2(1) Proposed *Building* System Parameters are based on input of full-load equipment efficiencies with adjustment using part-load curves integrated in the simulation program. Where other approaches to part-load adjustment are used, it is permitted for specific input parameter to vary. The simulation program shall model part-load HVAC equipment performance using either:

1. Full-load efficiency adjusted for fan power input that is modeled separately and typical part-load performance adjustments for the proposed equipment.
2. Part-load adjustments based on input of both full-load and part-load metrics, or
3. Equipment-specific adjustments based on performance data provided by the equipment manufacturer for the proposed equipment.

Where multiple system components serve a thermal block, average values weighed by the appropriate metric as described in this section shall be used.

1. Where multiple fan systems serve a single thermal block, fan power shall be based on weighted average using the design supply air cfm
2. Where multiple cooling systems serve a single thermal block, COP shall be based on a weighted average using cooling capacity. DX coils shall be entered as multi-stage if more than 50 percent of coil capacity serving the thermal block is multi-stage with staged controls.
3. Where multiple heating systems serve a single thermal block, thermal efficiency or heating COP shall be based on a weighted average using heating capacity.
4. Where multiple boilers or chillers serve a heating water or chilled water loop, efficiency shall be based on a weighted average for using heating or cooling capacity.
5. When multiple cooling towers serving a condenser water loop are combined, the cooling tower efficiency, cooling tower design approach and design range are based on a weighted average of the design water flow rate through each cooling tower.
6. Where multiple pumps serve a heating water, chilled water or condenser water loop, pump power shall be based on a weighted average for using design water flow rate.
7. When multiple system types with and without economizers are combined, the economizer maximum outside air fraction of the combined system shall be based on weighted average of 100 percent supply air for systems with economizers and design outdoor air for systems without economizers.
8. Multiple systems with and without ERVs cannot be combined.
9. Systems with and without supply air temperature reset cannot be combined.
10. Systems with different fan control (constant volume, multi-speed or VAV) for supply fans cannot be combined.

~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.2(1)~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.2(1)
PROPOSED BUILDING SYSTEM PARAMETERS

Category	Parameter	Fixed or User Defined	Required	Applicable Systems
HVAC System Type	System Type	User Defined	Selected from Table C409.6.1.10.1	All
System Sizing	Design Day Information	Fixed	99.6% heating design and 1% dry-bulb and 1% wet-bulb cooling design	All
	Zone Coil Capacity	Fixed	Sizing factors used are 1.25 for heating equipment and 1.15 for cooling equipment	All
	Supply Airflow	Fixed	Based on a supply-air-to-room-air temperature set-point difference of 20°F(11.11°C) or	1-11
		Fixed	Equal to required outdoor air ventilation	12
Outdoor Ventilation Air	Portion of supply air with proposed Filter ≥MERV 13	User defined	Percentage of supply air flow subject to higher filtration (Adjusts baseline Fan Power higher. Prorated)	All
	Outdoor Ventilation Air Flow Rate	Fixed	As specified in ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Normative Appendix C, adjusted for proposed DCV control	All
	Outdoor Ventilation Supply Air Flow Rate Adjustments	Fixed	Based on ASHRAE Standard 62.1 Section 6.2.4.3 System Ventilation Efficiency (Evs) is 0.75	9-11
		Fixed	System Ventilation Efficiency (Evs) is 1.0	1-8, 12
		Fixed	Basis is 1.0 Zone Air Distribution Effectiveness	All
System Operation	Space temperature set points	Fixed	As specified in ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Normative Appendix C, except -multifamily which shall use 68°F(20°C) heating and 76°F(24.4°C) cooling setpoints. -hotel/motel that shall be 70°F(21.1°C) heating and 72°F(22.2°C) cooling	1-11
	Fan Operation – Occupied	User defined	Runs continuously during occupied hours or cycles to meet load. Multispeed fans reduce airflow related to thermal loads.	1-11
	Fan Operation – Occupied	Fixed	Fan runs continuously during occupied hours	12

	Fan Operation – Night Cycle	Fixed	Fan cycles on to meet setback temperatures	1-11
Packaged Equipment Efficiency	DX Cooling Efficiency	User defined	Cooling COP without fan energy calculated in accordance with Section C409.6.1.10.2	1, 2, 3, 4, 5,7, 8, 9, 11,12
	DX Coil Number of Stages	User defined	Single Stage or Multistage	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Heat Pump Efficiency	User defined	Heating COP without fan energy calculated in accordance with Section C409.6.1.10.2	2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 12
	Furnace Efficiency	User defined	Furnace thermal efficiency	3, 9, 11, 12
Heat Pump Supplemental Heat	Heat Source	User defined	Electric resistance or gas furnace	2, 4, 7, 8, 12
	Control	Fixed	Supplemental electric heat locked out above 40°F(4°C) OAT. Runs as needed in conjunction with compressor between 40°F(4°C) and 0°F(-17.8°C). Gas heat operates in place of the heat pump when the heat pump cannot meet load.	2, 4, 7, 8, 12
System Fan Power and Controls	Part-load Fan Controls -Constant Volume -Two Speed or three speed -VAV	User defined	Static pressure reset included for VAV.	1-8 (CAV, two or three speed), 9, 10, 11 (VAV), 12 (CAV and VAV)
	Design Fan Power (W/ cfm)	User defined	Input electric power for all fans required to operate at fan system design conditions divided by the supply airflow rate This is a "wire to air" value including all drive, motor efficiency and other losses.	All
	Low-speed and medium speed fan power	User defined	Low speed input electric power for all fans required to operate at low-speed conditions divided by the low speed supply airflow rate. This is a "wire to air" value including all drive, motor efficiency and other losses. Also provide medium speed values for three-speed fans.	1-8

Variable Air Volume Systems	Supply Air Temperature (SAT) Controls	User defined	If not SAT reset then constant at 55°F(12.8°C).Options for reset based on outside air temperature (OAT) or warmest zone. If warmest zone, then the user can specify the minimum and maximum temperatures. If OAT reset, SAT is reset higher to 60°F(15.6°C) at outdoor low of 50°F(10°C). SAT is 55°F(12.8°C) at outdoor high of 70°F(21.1°C).	9, 10, 11
	Minimum Terminal Unit airflow percentage	User defined	Average minimum terminal unit airflow percentage for thermal block weighted by cfm or minimum required for outdoor air ventilation, whichever is higher.	9, 10, 11
	Terminal Unit Heating Source	User defined	Electric or hydronic	9, 10, 11
	Dual set point minimum VAV damper position	User defined	Heating maximum airflow fraction	9, 10
	Fan Powered Terminal Unit (FPTU) Type	User defined	Series or parallel FPTU	11
	Parallel FPTU Fan	Fixed	Sized for 50% peak primary air at 0.35 W/cfm	11
	Series FPTU Fan	Fixed	Sized for 50% peak primary air at 0.35 W/cfm	11
Economizer	Economizer Presence	User defined	Yes or No	3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11
	Economizer Control Type	Fixed	Lockout on Differential dry-bulb temperature (OAT>RAT) in 6A, 5A, All B & C climate zones; fixed enthalpy>28 Btu/lb (47kJ/kg) or fixed dry-bulb OAT>75°F(24°C) in 0A to 4A climate zones	3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11
Energy Recovery	Sensible Effectiveness	User defined	Heat exchanger sensible effectiveness at design heating and cooling conditions	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Latent Effectiveness	User defined	Heat exchanger latent effectiveness at design heating and cooling conditions	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Economizer Bypass	User defined	If ERV is bypassed or wheel rotation is slowed during economizer conditions (Yes/No)	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Economizer Bypass active	Fixed	If there is a bypass, it will be active between 45°F(7.2°C) and 75°F(23.9°C) outside air temperature.	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12

	Bypass SAT Setpoint	User defined	If bypass, target supply air temperature	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Fan Power Reduction during Bypass (W/cfm)	User defined	If ERV system include bypass, static pressure set point and variable speed fan, fan power can be reduced during economizer conditions	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
Demand Controlled Ventilation	DCV Application on/off	User defined	Percent of thermal block floor area under occupied standby controls, ON/OFF only with occupancy sensor and no variable control	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
	DCV Application CO2	User defined	Percentage of thermal block floor area under variable DCV control (CO2); may include both variable and ON/OFF control	3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 12
DOAS	DOAS Fan Power W/cfm	User defined	Fan electrical input power in W/cfm of supply airflow	12
	DOAS Supplemental Heating and Cooling	User defined	Heating source, cooling source, energy recovery and respective efficiencies	12
	Maximum SAT Set point (Cooling)	User defined	SAT set point if DOAS includes supplemental cooling	12
	Minimum SAT Set point (Heating)	User defined	SAT set point if DOAS includes supplemental heating	12
Heating plant	Boiler Efficiency	User defined	Boiler thermal efficiency	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Heating Water Loop Configuration	User defined	Constant flow primary only; Variable flow primary only; Constant flow primary – variable flow secondary, Variable flow primary and secondary	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Heating Water Primary Pump Power (W/gpm)	User defined	Heating water primary pump input W/gpm heating water flow	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Heating Water Secondary Pump Power (W/gpm)	User defined	Heating water secondary pump input W/gpm heating water flow (if primary/secondary)	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Heating Water Loop Temperature	User defined	Heating water supply and return temperatures, °F(°C)	1, 6, 9, 10,11

	Heating Water Loop Supply Temperature Reset	Fixed	Reset HWS by 27.3% of design delta-T (HWS-70°F(21.1°C) Space Heating temperature set point) between 20°F(-6.7°C) and 50°F(10°C) OAT	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
	Boiler type	Fixed	Non-condensing boiler where input thermal efficiency is less than 86%; Condensing boiler otherwise	1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12
Chilled Water Plant	Chiller Compressor Type	User defined	Screw/Scroll, Centrifugal or Reciprocating	6, 10, 11, 12
	Chiller Condenser Type	User defined	Air cooled or water cooled	6, 10, 11, 12
	Chiller Full Load Efficiency	User defined	Chiller COP	6, 10, 11, 12
	Chilled Water Loop Configuration	User defined	Variable flow primary only, constant flow primary – variable flow secondary, variable flow primary and secondary	6, 10, 11,12
	Chilled Water Primary Pump Power (W/gpm)	User defined	Primary pump input W/gpm chilled water flow	6, 10, 11,12
	Chilled Water Secondary Pump Power (W/gpm)	User defined	Secondary Pump input W/gpm chilled water flow (if primary/secondary)	6, 10, 11,12
	Chilled Water Temperature Reset Included	User defined	Yes/No	6, 10, 11,12
Chilled Water Plant (cont.)	Chilled Water Temperature Reset Schedule (if included)	Fixed	Outdoor air reset: CHW supply temperature of 44°F(6.7°C) at 80°F(26.7°C) outdoor air dry bulb and above, CHW supply temperature of 54°F(12.2°C) at 60°F(15.6°C) outdoor air dry bulb temperature and below, ramped linearly between	6, 10, 11,12
	Condenser Water Pump Power (W/ gpm)	User defined	Pump input W/gpm condenser water flow	6, 7, 8, ,10, 11, 12
	Condenser Water Pump Control	User defined	Constant speed or variable speed	6, 7, 8, 10, 11,12

	Heat Rejection Equipment Efficiency	User defined	gpm/hp tower fan	6, 7, 10, 11, 12
	Heat Rejection Fan Control	User defined	Constant or variable speed	6, 7, 10, 11, 12
	Heat Rejection Approach and Range	User defined	Design cooling tower approach and range temperature	6, 7, 10, 11, 12
Heat Pump Loop	Loop flow and Heat Pump Control Valve	Fixed	Two position Valve with VFD on Pump. Loop flow at 3 gpm/ton	7, 8
	Heat Pump Loop minimum and maximum temperature control	User defined	User input: restrict to minimum 20°F(11.1°C) and maximum 40°F(22.2°C) temperature difference	7
GLHP Well Field	-	Fixed	Bore depth = 250 ft(76 m) Bore length 200 ft/ton (1.5 m/kW) for the greater of cooling or heating load Bore spacing = 15 ft(4.6 m) Bore diameter = 5 in (127 mm) ¾" (19 mm)Polyethylene pipe Ground and grout conductivity = 4.8 Btu-in/h-ft2-°F (0.69 W/(mK))	8

a. Part load fan power and pump power modified in accordance with Table C409.6.1.10.2(2)

~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.2(2)~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.2(2)
FAN AND PUMP POWER CURVE COEFFICIENTS

Equation Term	Fan Power Coefficients	Pump Power Coefficients	
	VSD + SP reset	Ride Pump Curve	VSD + DP/valve reset
b	0.0408	0	0
x	0.088	3.2485	0.0205
x^2	-0.0729	-4.7443	0.4101
x^3	0.9437	2.5295	0.5753

~~C409.6.1.10.3~~C409.6.1.10.3 **Demand Control Ventilation** Demand Controlled Ventilation (DCV) shall be modeled using a simplified approach that adjusts the design outdoor supply air flow rate based on the floor area of the *building* that is covered by DCV. The simplified method shall accommodate both variable DCV and on/off DCV, giving on/off DCV on third the effective floor control area of variable DCV. Outdoor air reduction coefficients shall be as stated in Table C409.6.1.10.3.

Exception: On/off DCV shall receive full effective area adjustment for R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.3~~TABLE C409.6.1.10.3
DCV OUTDOOR AIR REDUCTION CURVE COEFFICIENTS

Equation term	DCV OSA reduction (y) as a function of effective DCV control floor area (x)			
	Office	School	Hotel; Motel; Multi-Family; Dormitory	Retail
b	0	0	0	0
x	0.4053	0.2676	0.5882	0.4623
x^2	-0.8489	0.7753	-1.0712	-0.848
x^3	1.0092	-1.5165	1.3565	1.1925
x^4	-0.4168	0.7136	-0.6379	-0.5895

~~C409.6.2~~C409.6.2 **Simulation of the *standard reference design*.** The *standard reference design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified in this section.

~~C409.6.2.1~~C409.6.2.1 **Utility Rates.** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.2~~C409.6.2.2 **Thermal blocks** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.3~~C409.6.2.3 **Thermal zoning.** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.4~~C409.6.2.4 **Occupancy type, schedule, density, and heat gain.** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.5~~C409.6.2.5 **Envelope components** Same as *proposed design*

~~C409.6.2.6~~C409.6.2.6 **Lighting** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.7~~C409.6.2.7 **Miscellaneous equipment.** Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.8~~C409.6.2.8 **Elevators.** Not modeled. Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.9~~C409.6.2.9 **Service water heating equipment.** Not modeled. Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.10~~C409.6.2.10 **On-site renewable energy systems.** Not modeled. Same as *proposed design*.

~~C409.6.2.11~~C409.6.2.11 **HVAC equipment.** The reference *building* design HVAC equipment consists of separate space conditioning systems as described in Table C409.6.2.11(1) through Table C409.6.2.11(3) for the appropriate *building* use types. In these tables, 'Warm' refers to climate zones 0 to 2 and 3A and 'Cold' refers to climate zones 3B, 3C, and 4 to 8.

~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(1)~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(1)
REFERENCE BUILDING DESIGN HVAC COMPLEX SYSTEMS

Building Type Parameter	Large Office (warm)	Large Office (cold)	School (warm)	School (cold)
System Type	VAV/ RH Water-cooled Chiller/ Electric Reheat (PIU)	VAV/ RH Water-cooled Chiller/ Gas Boiler	VAV/ RH Water-cooled Chiller/ Electric Reheat (PIU)	VAV/ RH Water-cooled Chiller/ Gas Boiler
Fan control	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L) Proposed ≥ MERV13	1.165 (2.468)	1.165 (2.468)	1.165 (2.468)	1.165 (2.468)
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L) proposed < MERV13	1.066 (2.259)	1.066 (2.259)	1.066 (2.259)	1.066 (2.259)
Zonal fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L))	0.35 (0.75)	NA	0.35 (0.75)	NA
Minimum zone airflow fraction	1.5* Voz	1.5* Voz	1.2* Voz	1.2* Voz
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15
Outdoor air economizer	No	Yes except 4A	No	Yes except 4A
Occupied OSA (= proposed)	Sum(Voz)/0.75	Sum(Voz)/0.75	Sum(Voz)/0.65	Sum(Voz)/0.65
Energy recovery ventilator efficiency ERR (Enthalpy Recovery Ratio) ERV bypass SAT set point	NA	NA	50% No Bypass	50% 60°F(15.6 °C)except 4A
DCV	No	No	No	No
Cooling Source	(2) Water-cooled Centrifugal Chillers	(2) Water-cooled Centrifugal Chillers	(2) Water-Cooled Screw Chillers	(2) Water-Cooled Screw Chillers
Cooling COP (net of fan)	Path B for profile	Path B for profile	Path B for profile	Path B for profile
Heating source (reheat)	Electric resistance	Gas Boiler	Electric resistance	Gas Boiler

Furnace or boiler efficiency	1.0	75% Et	1.0	80% Et
Condenser heat rejection	Axial Fan Open Circuit Cooling Tower			
Cooling tower efficiency (gpm/fan-hp (L/s·fan-kW))	38.2 (3.23)	38.2 (3.23)	38.2 (3.23)	38.2 (3.23)
Tower turndown (> 300 ton (1060 kW))	50%	50%	50%	50%
Pump (constant flow/ variable flow)	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range
Tower approach	25.72 – (0.24 x WB), where WB WB is the 0.4% evaporation design wet-bulb temperature (°F)			
Cooling condenser pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	19 (300)	19 (300)	19 (300)	19 (300)
Cooling primary pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	9 (142)	9 (142)	9 (142)	9 (142)
Cooling secondary pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	13 (205)	13 (205)	13 (205)	13 (205)
Cooling coil chilled water delta-T, °F (°C)	12 (6.7)	12 (6.7)	12 (6.7)	12 (6.7)
Design chilled water supply temperature, °F (°C)	44 (6.7)	44 (6.7)	44 (6.7)	44 (6.7)
Chilled water supply temperature (CHWST) reset set point vs Outside Air Temperature OAT, °F (°C)	CHWST: 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2/ 26.7-15.6)	CHWST: 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2/ 26.7-15.6)	CHWST: 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2/ 26.7-15.6)	CHWST: 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2/ 26.7-15.6)
Building Type Parameter	Large Office (warm)	Large Office (cold)	School (warm)	School (cold)
CHW cooling loop pumping control	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD
Heating pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	16.1 (254)	16.1 (254)	16.1 (254)	16.1 (254)
Heating oil HW dT. °F (°C)	50 (10)	50 (10)	50 (10)	50 (10)

Design Hot Water Supply Temperature (HWST). °F (°C)	180 (82.2)	180 (82.2)	180 (82.2)	180 (82.2)
HWST reset set point vs OAT, °F (°C)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)
Heat loop pumping control	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD

~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(2)~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(2)
TSPR REFERENCE BUILDING DESIGN HVAC SIMPLE SYSTEMS

Building Type Parameter	Building Type					
	Medium Office (warm)	Medium Office (cold)	Small Office (warm)	Small Office (cold)	Retail (warm)	Retail (cold)
System type	Package VAV - Electric Reheat	Package VAV - Hydronic Reheat	PSZ-HP	PSZ-AC	PSZ-HP	PSZ-AC
Fan Control	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)	Constant Volume	Constant Volume	Constant Volume	Constant Volume
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L)) proposed ≥ MERV13	1.285 (2.723)	1.285 (2.723)	0.916 (1.941)	0.916 (1.941)	0.899 (1.905)	0.899 (1.905)
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L)) proposed < MERV13	1.176 (2.492)	1.176 (2.492)	0.850 (1.808)	0.850 (1.808)	0.835 (1.801)	0.835 (1.801)
Zonal fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L))	0.35 (0.75)	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Minimum zone airflow fraction	30%	30%	NA	NA	NA	NA
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/ 1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/ 1.15
Supplemental heating availability	NA	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C) OAT	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C) OAT	NA
Outdoor air economizer	No	Yes except 4A	No	Yes except 4A	No	Yes except 4A
Occupied OSA source	Packaged unit, occupied damper, all building use types					
Energy recovery ventilator	No	No	No	No	No	No
DCV	No	No	No	No	No	No
Cooling source	DX, multi-stage	DX, multi-stage	DX, 1 stage (heat pump)	DX, single stage	DX, 1 stage (heat pump)	DX, single stage
Cooling COP (net of fan)	3.40	3.40	3.00	3.00	3.40	3.50
Heating source	Electric resistance	Gas Boiler	Heat Pump	Furnace	Heat Pump	Furnace

Heating COP (net of fan) / furnace or boiler efficiency	1.0	75% Et	3.40	80% Et	3.40	80% Et

~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(3)~~TABLE C409.6.2.11(3)
TSPR REFERENCE BUILDING DESIGN HVAC SIMPLE SYSTEMS

Building Type Parameter	Building Type			
	Hotel (warm)	Hotel (cold)	Multifamily (warm)	Multifamily (cold)
System type	PTHP	PTAC	PTHP	PTAC
Fan Control	Constant Volume	Constant Volume	Constant Volume	Constant Volume
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L))	0.300 (0.636)	0.300 (0.636)	0.300 (0.636)	0.300 (0.636)
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15
Supplemental heating availability	<40°F (<4.4°C)	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C)	NA
Outdoor air economizer	No	No	No	No
Occupied OSA source	Packaged unit, occupied damper	Packaged unit, occupied damper	Packaged unit, occupied damper	Packaged unit, occupied damper
Energy recovery ventilator	No	No	No	No
DCV	No	No	No	No
Cooling source	DX, 1stage (heat pump)	DX, 1 stage	DX, 1stage (heat pump)	DX, 1 stage
Cooling COP (net of fan)	3.10	3.20	3.10	3.20
Heating source	PTHP	(2) Hydronic Boiler	PTHP	(2) Hydronic Boiler
Heating COP (net of fan) / furnace or boiler efficiency	3.10	75% Et	3.10	75% Et
Heating pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	NA	19 (300)	NA	19 (300)
Heating coil heating water delta-T, °F (°C)	NA	50 (27.8)	NA	50 (27.8)
Design HWST, °F (°C)	NA	180 (82.2)	NA	180 (82.2)
HWST reset set point vs OAT, °F (°C)	NA	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	NA	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)
Heat loop pumping control	NA	2-way Valves & ride pump curve	NA	2-way Valves & ride pump curve

~~C409.7~~C409.7 **Target Design HVAC Systems.** Target system descriptions described in Tables C409.7(1) through C409.7(3) are provided as reference for Section C403.1.1 Exception 10. The target systems are used for developing MPF values and do not need to be programmed into TSPR software.

~~TABLE C409.7(1)~~TABLE C409.7(1)
TARGET BUILDING DESIGN CRITERIA HVAC COMPLEX SYSTEMS

Parameter	Building Type			
	Large office (warm)	Large office (cold)	School (warm)	School (cold)
System type	VAV/RH	VAV/RH	VAV/RH	VAV/RH
	Water-cooled chiller/	Water-cooled chiller/	Water-cooled chiller/	Water-cooled chiller/
	Electric Reheat (PIU)	Gas boiler	Electric Reheat (PIU)	Gas boiler
Fan Control	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)	VSD (No SP Reset)
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L) Proposed ≥ MERV13	1.127 (2.388)	1.127 (2.388)	1.127 (2.388)	1.127 (2.388)
Zonal fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L))	0.35 (0.75)	NA	0.35 (0.75)	NA
Minimum zone airflow fraction	1.5* Voz	1.5* Voz	1.2* Voz	1.2* Voz
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15
Outdoor air economizer	Yes except 0-1	Yes	Yes except 0-1	Yes
Occupied OSA (= proposed)	Sum(Voz)/0.75	Sum(Voz)/0.75	Sum(Voz)/0.65	Sum(Voz)/0.65
Energy recovery ventilator efficiency ERR	NA	NA	50%	50%
(Enthalpy Recovery Ratio)			No bypass	60°F(15.6°C) except 4A
ERV bypass SAT set point			-	-
DCV	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
% Area Variable Control	15%	15%	70%	70%
% Area On/Off Control	65%	65%	20%	20%
Cooling Source	(2) Water-cooled centrif chillers	(2) Water-cooled centrif chillers	(2) Water-cooled screw chillers	(2) Water-cooled screw chillers

Cooling COP (net of fan)	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.5.3	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.5.3	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.5.3	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.5.3
Heating source (reheat)	Electric resistance	Gas boiler	Electric resistance	Gas boiler
Furnace or boiler efficiency	1.0	90% Et	1.0	90% Et
Condenser heat rejection	Cooling Tower	Cooling Tower	Cooling Tower	Cooling Tower
Cooling tower efficiency (gpm/hp (L/s·kW))—See G3.1.3.11	40.2 (3.40)	40.2 (3.40)	40.2 (3.40)	40.2 (3.40)
Tower turndown (> 300 ton (1060 kW))	50%	50%	50%	50%
Pump (constant flow/ variable flow)	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range	Constant Flow; 10°F (5.6°C) range
Tower approach	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.1.3.11	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.1.3.11	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.1.3.11	ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G, Table G3.1.3.11
Cooling condenser pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	19 (300)	19 (300)	19 (300)	19 (300)
Cooling primary pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	9 (142)	9 (142)	9 (142)	9 (142)
Cooling secondary pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	13 (205)	13 (205)	13 (205)	13 (205)
Cooling coil chilled water delta-T, °F (°C)	18 (10)	18 (10)	18 (10)	18 (10)
Design chilled water supply temperature, °F (°C)	42 (5.56)	42 (5.56)	42 (5.56)	42 (5.56)

Chilled water supply temperature (CHWST)reset set point vs OAT, °F (°C)	CHWS 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2)/26.7-15.6)	CHWS 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2)/26.7-15.6)	CHWS 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2)/26.7-15.6)	CHWS 44-54/OAT 80-60 (6.7-12.2)/26.7-15.6)
CHW cooling loop pumping control	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD
Heating pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	16.1 (254)	16.1 (254)	19 (254)	19 (254)
Heating HW dT. °F (°C)	50 (27.78)	20 (11.11)	50 (27.78)	20 (11.11)
Design HWST. °F (°C)	180 (82)	140 (60)	180 (82)	140 (60)
Hot water supply temperature (HWST) range vs outside air temperature (OAT) range	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)
Heat loop pumping control	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD	2-way Valves & pump VSD

~~TABLE C409.7(2)~~TABLE C409.7(2)
TARGET BUILDING DESIGN CRITERIA HVAC SIMPLE SYSTEMS

Parameter	Building type					
	Medium office (warm)	Medium office (cold)	Small office (warm)	Small office (cold)	Retail (warm)	Retail (cold)
System type	Package VAV - Electric Reheat	Package VAV - Hydronic Reheat	PSZ-HP	PSZ-AC	PSZ-HP	PSZ-AC
Fan control	VSD (with SP Reset)	VSD (with SP Reset)	Constant volume	Constant volume	2-speed	2-speed
Main fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/ L))proposed ≥ MERV13	0.634 (1.343)	0.634 (1.343)	0.486 (1.03)	0.486 (1.03)	0.585 (1.245)	0.585 (1.245)
Zonal fan power (W/ CFM (W·s/L))	0.35 (5.53)	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Minimum zone airflow fraction	1.5* Voz	1.5* Voz	NA	NA	NA	NA
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/ 1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/ 1.15
Supplemental heating availability	NA	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C) OAT	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C) OAT	NA
Outdoor air economizer	Yes except 0-1	Yes	Yes except 0-1	Yes	Yes except 0-1	Yes
Occupied OSA source	Packaged unit, occupied damper, all building use types					
Energy recovery ventilator	No	No	No	No	Yes, in 0A, 1A, 2A, 3A	Yes all A, 6,7,8 CZ
ERR					50%	50%
DCV	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
% Area Variable Control	15%	15%			80%	80%
% Area On/Off Control	65%	65%			0%	0%

Cooling source	DX, multi-stage	DX, multi-stage	DX, 1 stage (heat pump)	DX, single stage	DX, 2 stage (heat pump)	DX, 2 stage
Cooling COP (net of fan)	3.83	3.83	3.82	3.8248	3.765	3.765
Heating source	Electric resistance	Gas boiler	Heat pump	Furnace	Heat pump	Furnace
Heating COP (net of fan) / furnace or boiler efficiency	100%	81% E_t	3.81	81% E_t	3.536	81% E_t
Heating coil HW dT. °F (°C)	NA	20 (11.11)	NA	NA	NA	NA
Design HWST. °F (°C)	NA	140 (60)	NA	NA	NA	NA
HWST reset set point vs OAT, °F (°C)	NA	HWST: 180-150/ OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	NA	NA	NA	NA
Heat loop pumping control	NA	2-way Valves & ride pump curve	NA	NA	NA	NA
Heating pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	NA	16.1	NA	NA	NA	NA

~~TABLE C409.7(3)~~TABLE C409.7(3)
TARGET BUILDING DESIGN CRITERIA HVAC SIMPLE SYSTEMS

Parameter	Building Type			
	Hotel (warm)	Hotel (cold)	Multifamily (warm)	Multifamily (cold)
System type	PTHP	PTAC with Hydronic Boiler	Split HP	Split AC
Fan control	Cycling	Cycling	Cycling	Cycling
Main fan power (W/CFM (W·s/L))	0.300 (0.638)	0.300 (0.638)	0.246 (0.523)	0.271 (0.576)
Heat/cool sizing factor	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15	1.25/1.15
Supplemental heating availability	<40°F (<4.4°C)	NA	<40°F (<4.4°C)	NA
Outdoor air economizer	Only CZ 2, 3	No	No	No
Occupied OSA source	DOAS	DOAS	DOAS	DOAS except 3C
Energy recovery ventilator	NA	NA	Yes	Yes except 3C
ERR	NA	NA	60%	60%
DCV	Yes	Yes	No	No
% Area Variable Control	70%	70%		
% Area Variable Control	0%	0%		
Cooling source	DX, 1stage (heat pump)	DX, 1 stage	DX, 1stage (heat pump)	DX, 1 stage
Cooling COP (net of fan)	3.83	3.83	3.823	3.6504
Heating source	Heat pump	(2) Hydronic boiler	Heat pump	Furnace
Heating COP (net of fan) / furnace or boiler efficiency	3.44	81% E_t	3.86	80% AFUE
Heating pump power (W/gpm (W·s/L))	NA	16.1	NA	NA
Heating coil heating water delta-T, °F (°C)	NA	20 (11.11)	NA	NA
Design HWST, °F (°C)	NA	140 (60)	NA	NA
HWST reset set point vs OAT, °F (°C)	NA	HWST: 180-150/OAT 20-50 (82-65.6/ -6.7-10)	NA	NA
Heat loop pumping control	NA	2-way Valves & ride pump curve	NA	NA

CHAPTER 5 [CE] EXISTING BUILDINGS

User note:

About this chapter: *Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of* ***Chapter 4*** *in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.*

SECTION C501
GENERAL

C501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration*, *repair*, *addition* and *change of occupancy* of existing buildings and structures.

C501.1.1 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building* system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

C501.2 Compliance. *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs*, and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing *buildings* and structures shall comply with **Sections C502,** , **C503,** , **C504,** and **C505,** of this code, as applicable, and with the provisions for *alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in the ***International Building Code*** , ***International Existing Building Code**, **International Fire Code**, **International Fuel Gas Code**, **International Mechanical Code**, **International Plumbing Code**, **International Property Maintenance Code**, **International Private Sewage Disposal Code*** and **NFPA 70**. Changes where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space shall comply with **Section C502,** .

Exception: *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs* or changes of occupancy complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

C501.3 Maintenance. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which they were installed. The *owner* or the *owner*'s authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

C501.4 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs*, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow use of these materials in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

C501.5 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the *code official* and signed by a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

SECTION C502
ADDITIONS

C502.1 General. *Additions* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code if the *addition* alone complies or if the existing *building* and *addition* comply with this code as a single *building*.

C502.2 Change in space conditioning. Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to comply with **Section C502,** .

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance method in **Section C402.1.4,** is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the *simulated building performance* option in **Section C407,** is used to comply with this section, the annual *energy cost* of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual *energy cost* otherwise permitted by **Section C407.2,** .

C502.3 Compliance. *Additions* shall comply with **Sections C502.3.1,** through C502.3.~~7~~8.

C502.3.1 Vertical fenestration area. Additions shall comply with the following:

1. Where an *addition* has a new vertical *fenestration* area that results in a total *building fenestration* area less than or equal to that permitted by **Section C402.5.1,** , the *addition* shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** , **C402.5.3,** or **C407,** .
2. Where an *addition* with vertical *fenestration* that results in a total *building fenestration* area greater than **Section C402.5.1,** or an *addition* that exceeds the *fenestration* area greater than that permitted by **Section C402.5.1,** , the *fenestration* shall comply with **Section C402.5.1.1,** for the *addition* only.
3. Where an *addition* has vertical *fenestration* that results in a total *building* vertical *fenestration* area exceeding that permitted by **Section C402.5.1.1,** , the *addition* shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** or **C407,** .

C502.3.2 Skylight area. Skylights shall comply with the following:

1. Where an *addition* has new skylight area that results in a total *building fenestration* area less than or equal to that permitted by **Section C402.5.1,** , the *addition* shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** or **C407,** .
2. Where an *addition* has new skylight area that results in a total *building* skylight area greater than permitted by **Section C402.5.1,** or where additions have skylight area greater than that permitted by **Section C402.5.1,** , the skylight area shall comply with **Section C402.5.1.2,** for the addition only.
3. Where an *addition* has skylight area that results in a total *building* skylight area exceeding that permitted by **Section C402.5.1.2,** , the *addition* shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** or **C407,** .

C502.3.3 Building mechanical systems. New mechanical systems and equipment that are part of the *addition* and serve the *building* heating, cooling and *ventilation* needs shall comply with **Sections C403,** and **C408,** .

C502.3.4 Service water-heating systems. New service water-heating equipment, controls and service water-heating piping shall comply with **Section C404,** .

C502.3.5 Pools and inground permanently installed spas. New pools and inground permanently installed spas shall comply with Section C404.8

C502.3.6 Lighting power and systems. New lighting systems that are installed as part of the *addition* shall comply with **Sections C405,** and **C408,** .

C502.3.6.1 Interior lighting power. The total interior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with **Section C405.3.2,** for the *addition* alone, or the existing *building* and the *addition* shall comply as a single *building*.

C502.3.6.2 Exterior lighting power. The total exterior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with **Section C405.5.2,** for the *addition* alone, or the existing *building* and the *addition* shall comply as a single *building*.

C502.3.7 Additional energy efficiency credits. *Additions* shall comply with measures from Sections C406.2 and C406.3 to achieve not less than 50 percent the number of required efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1 based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone*. Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits in Table C406.1.1 from each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the gross floor area to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of this section. *Alterations* to the existing *building* that are not part of an *addition*, but permitted with an *addition*, ~~may~~shall be permitted to be used to achieve the required credits.

Exceptions:

1. *Buildings* in Utility and Miscellaneous Group U, Storage Group S, Factory Group F, High-Hazard Group H.
2. *Additions* less than 1,000 ft^2 (9~~2~~3 m^2) and less than 50 percent of existing floor area.
3. *Additions* that do not include the *addition* or replacement of equipment covered by Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(16) or Section C404.2.
4. *Additions* that do not contain *conditioned space*.
5. Where the *addition* alone or the existing *building* and *addition* together comply with Section C407.

C502.3.7.1 Additions not served by heat pumps. The number of efficiency credits required by C502.3.7 shall by multiplied by 1.25 for the following:

1. Additions using purchased energy that is not electricity for space heating or service water heating
2. Additions served by electric storage water heaters that are not heat pumps
3. Additions served by total heat pump space heating capacity less than the peak space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1

~~*Additions* using *purchased energy* that is not electricity for space heating or *service water heating*, *additions* served by electric storage water heaters that are not heat pumps and *additions* served by total heat pump space heating capacity less than the peak space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1 shall comply with measures from Sections C406.2 and C406.3 to achieve not less than 67.5 percent of the number of required efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1~~

~~based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone* . Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits in Table C406.1.1 from each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the gross *conditioned floor area* to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of this section. *Alterations* to the existing *building* that are not part of an *addition* , but permitted with an *addition* , may be used to achieve the required credits.~~

Exceptions: Additions complying with all of the following:

~~1. Buildings in Utility and Miscellaneous Group U, Storage Group S, Factory Group F, or High-Hazard Group H.~~
~~2. Additions less than 1,000 ft² (92 m²) and less than 50 percent of the existing floor area.~~
~~3. Additions that do not include the *addition* or replacement of equipment covered by Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(16) or Section C404.2.~~
~~4. Additions that do not contain *conditioned space* .~~
~~5. Where the *addition* alone or the existing *building* and *addition* together comply with Section C407.~~
~~6. Additions complying with all of the following:~~
   ~~6.1~~1. ~~The *addition* 's peak heating load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1 is greater than the *addition* 's peak cooling load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.~~
   ~~6.2~~2. ~~The *addition* 's total heat pump space heating capacity serving the *addition* is not less than 50 percent of the *addition* 's space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.~~
   ~~6.3~~3. ~~Any energy source other than electricity or *on-site renewable energy* is used for space heating serving the *addition* only when a heat pump cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the *thermostat* setting.~~
   ~~6.4~~4. ~~Electric resistance heat serving the *addition* is used only in accordance with Section C403.4.1.1.~~

1. The addition's peak heating load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1 is greater than the addition's peak cooling load calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.
2. The addition's total heat pump space heating capacity serving the addition is not less than 50 percent of the addition's space heating load at heating design conditions calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1.
3. Any energy source other than electricity or on-site renewable energy is used for space heating serving the addition only when a heat pump cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the thermostat setting.
4. Electric resistance heat serving the addition is used only in accordance with Section C403.4.1.1.

~~7. Low-energy buildings complying with Section C402.1.1.1.~~

C502.3.8 Renewable energy systems. *Additions* shall comply with Section C405.15 for the *addition* alone.

SECTION C503
ALTERATIONS

C503.1 General. *Alterations* to any *building* or structure shall comply with the requirements of **Section C503,** . *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to an existing *building* , *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems.

Exception: The following *alterations* need not comply with the requirements for new construction, provided that the energy use of the *building* is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing *fenestration*.
2. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane *fenestration* assemblies reducing solar heat gain, provided that the code does not require the glazing or *fenestration* to be replaced.
3. *Roof recover*.
4. *Roof replacement* where *roof assembly* insulation is integral to or located below the structural roof deck.
5. *Air barriers* shall not be required for *roof recover* and *roof replacement* where the *alterations* or renovations to the *building* do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the *building thermal envelope*.
6. An existing *building* undergoing alterations that complies with Section C407.

C503.2 Building thermal envelope. Alterations of existing *building thermal envelope* assemblies shall comply with this section. New *building thermal envelope* assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section C402. An area-weighted average *U*-factor for new and altered portions of the *building thermal envelope* shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements in Table C402.1.4. The existing *R*-value of insulation shall not be reduced or the *U*-factor of a *building thermal envelope* assembly be increased as part of a *building thermal envelope alteration* except where complying with Section C407.

Exception: Where the existing *building* exceeds the *fenestration* area limitations of **Section C402.5.1,** prior to *alteration*, the *building* is exempt from **Section C402.5.1,** provided that there is no increase in *fenestration* area.

C503.2.1 Roof, ceiling, and attic alterations. Insulation complying with Section C402.1 and Section C402.2.1, or an *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements, shall be provided for the following alterations:

1. An *alteration* of roof-ceiling construction other than *reroofing* where existing insulation located below the roof deck or on an attic floor above *conditioned space* does not comply with Table C402.1.2.
2. *Roof replacement* or a roof *alteration* that includes removing and replacing the *roof covering*, where the *roof assembly* includes insulation entirely above the *roof* deck.

   Exceptions: Where compliance with Section C402.1 cannot be met due to limiting conditions on an existing roof, an *approved* design shall be submitted with the following:

   1. *Construction documents* that include a report by a *registered design professional* or an *approved* ~~third party~~ source documenting details of the limiting conditions affecting compliance with the insulation requirements.
   2. *Construction documents* that include a roof design by a *registered design professional* or an *approved* ~~third party~~ source that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.

3. Conversion of unconditioned attic space into *conditioned space*.
4. Replacement of ceiling finishes exposing cavities or surfaces of the roof-ceiling construction.

C503.2.2 Vertical fenestration. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total *building fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in **Section C402.5.1,** shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** , **C402.5.3,** or **C407,** . The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total *building fenestration* area greater than **Section C402.5.1,** shall comply with **Section C402.5.1.1,** for the space adjacent to the new *fenestration* only. *Alterations* that result in a total *building vertical fenestration* area exceeding that specified in **Section C402.5.1.1,** shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** or **C407,** . Provided that the vertical *fenestration* area is not changed, using the same vertical fenestration area in the *standard reference design* as the *building* prior to *alteration* shall be an alternative to using the vertical fenestration area specified in **Table C407.4.1(1)**.

C503.2.2.1 Application to replacement fenestration products. Where some or all of an existing *fenestration* unit is replaced with a new *fenestration* product, including sash and glazing, the replacement *fenestration* unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and *SHGC* in **Table C402.5**.

Exception: An area-weighted average of the *U*-factor of replacement *fenestration* products being installed in the *building* for each *fenestration* product category listed in **Table C402.5** shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each *fenestration* product category listed in **Table C402.5**. Individual *fenestration* products from different product categories listed in **Table C402.5** shall not be combined in calculating the area-weighted average *U*-factor.

C503.2.3 Skylight area. New *skylight* area that results in a total *building skylight* area less than or equal to that specified in **Section C402.5.1,** shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** , **C402.5,** or **C407,** . The addition of *skylight* area that results in a total *building* skylight area greater than **Section C402.5.1,** shall comply with **Section C402.5.1.2,** for the space adjacent to the new skylights. *Alterations* that result in a total *building* skylight area exceeding that specified in **Section C402.5.1.2,** shall comply with **Section C402.1.4,** or **C407,** . Provided that the skylight area is not changed, using the same skylight area in the *standard reference design* as the *building* prior to *alteration* shall be an alternative to using the skylight area specified in **Table C407.4.1(1)**.

C503.2.4 Above-grade wall alterations. *Above-grade wall* alterations shall comply with the following:

1. Where wall cavities are exposed, the cavity shall be filled with *cavity insulation* complying with Section C303.1.4. New cavities created shall be insulated in accordance with Section C402.1 or an *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.
2. Where *exterior wall* coverings and *fenestration* are added or replaced for the full extent of any *exterior wall* assembly on one or more elevations of the *building*, insulation shall be provided where required in accordance with one of the following:
   2.1 An R-value of continuous insulation not less than that designated in Table C402.1.3 for the applicable *above-grade wall* type and existing *cavity insulation* R-value, if any;
   2.2 An R-value of not less than that required to bring the *above-grade wall* into compliance with Table C402.1.2; or,

2.3 An *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements of Section C402.1.

3. Where Items 1 and 2 apply, the insulation shall be provided in accordance with Section C402.1.

Where any of the above requirements are applicable, the *above-grade wall alteration* shall comply with Sections 1402.2 and 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*.

C503.2.5 Floor alterations. Where an *alteration* to a floor or floor overhang exposes cavities or surfaces to which insulation can be applied, and the floor or floor overhang is part of the *building thermal envelope*, the floor or floor overhang shall be brought into compliance with Section C402.1 or an *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements. This requirement applies to floor alterations where the floor cavities or surfaces are exposed and unobstructed prior to construction.

C503.2.6 Below-grade wall alterations. Where unconditioned below-grade space is changed to *conditioned space*, walls enclosing such *conditioned space* shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section C402.1. Where the below-grade space is *conditioned space* and where walls enclosing such space are altered, they shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section C402.1.

C503.2.7 Air barrier. Altered *building thermal envelope* assemblies shall be provided with an *air barrier* in accordance with Section C402.~~5~~6.1. Such *air barrier* need not be continuous with unaltered portions of the *building thermal envelope*. Testing requirements of Section C402.~~5~~6.1.2 shall not be required.

C503.3 Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and *duct* systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with **Sections C403,** .

TABLE C503.3
ADDITIONAL FAN POWER ALLOWANCES (W/CFM)

Multi-zone VAV Fan System Airflow[a] (cfm)				All Other Fan Systems Airflow (cfm)		
Air System Component	<5,000	5,000 to <10,000	≥10,000	<5,000	5,000 to <10,000	≥10,000
W/cfm						
Supply fan system	0.358	0.386	0.372	0.460	0.468	0.434
Exhaust, return, relief, transfer fan system	0.253	0.256	0.232	0.289	0.291	0.262
Unit with adapter curb						
Exhaust, return, relief, transfer fan system	0.070	0.061	0.054	0.070	0.062	0.055
Additional allowance						
Exhaust, return, relief, transfer fan system	0.016	0.017	0.220	0.000	0.000	0.000

a. See definition of fan system, multi-zone variable air volume (VAV).

C503.3.1 Economizers. New cooling systems that are part of *alteration* shall comply with **Section C403.5, .**

C503.3.2 Additional fan power allowances. Additional fan power allowances are available when determining the fan power budget (Fan kW_{budget}) as specified in Table C503.43. These values can be added to the fan power allowance values in Table C403.8.1(1) and Table C403.8.1(2) when calculating a new fan kW_{budget} for the fan system being altered.

C503.3.3 Fan power limit. If a new fan system is installed and the existing *duct* system is not replaced, a fan power allowance as shown in Table C503.3 shall be added to that allowed in Section C403.8.

C503.3.4 Mechanical system acceptance testing. Where an *alteration* requires compliance with Section C403 or any of its subsections, mechanical systems that serve the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C408.2.2, C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings with less than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) and a combined heating, cooling, and service water-heating capacity of less than 960,000 Btu/h (280 kW).
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units

C503.3.5 Duct testing. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures not less than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) that serve an *alteration* shall be tested in accordance with this section where the *alteration* includes any of the following:

1. Where 25 percent or more of the total length of the ducts in the system are relocated.
2. Where the total length of all ducts in the system is increased by 25 percent or more.

Ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of *air leakage* (CL) less than or equal to 12.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-~~7~~10 of Section C403.13.2.3. Documentation shall be available demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the *duct* area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

C503.3.6 Controls. New heating and cooling equipment that are part of the *alteration* shall be provided with controls that comply with the control requirements in Section C403.4 and Section C403.5 other than the requirements of Section C403.4.3.3 and Section C403.4.4.

Exceptions:

1. Systems with direct digital control of individual zones reporting to a central control panel.
2. The replacement of individual components of multiple-zone VAV systems.

C503.3.7 System sizing. New heating and cooling equipment that is part of an *alteration* shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 based on the existing *building* features as modified by the *alteration* .

Exceptions:

1. Where is has been demonstrated to the *code official* that compliance with this section would result in heating or cooling equipment that is incompatible with the

rest of the heating or cooling system.

2. Where it has been demonstrated to the *code official* that the additional capacity will be needed in the future.

C503.3.8 Replacement or added roof mounted mechanical equipment. For *roofs* with insulation entirely above the roof deck and where existing roof-mounted mechanical equipment is replaced or new equipment is added, and the existing roof does not comply with the insulation requirements for new construction in accordance with Section C402.1 and Section C402.2.1, curbs for added or replaced equipment shall be of a height necessary to accommodate the future addition of above-deck roof insulation to be installed in accordance with Section C503.2.1, Item 2. Alternatively, the curb height shall comply with Table C503.3.8. Curb height shall be the distance measured from the top of the curb to the top of the *roof* deck.

TABLE C503.3.8
ROOF MOUNTED MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT CURB HEIGHTS

CLIMATE ZONE	CURB HEIGHT, MINIMUM
0, 1, 2, and 3	16.0 inches (406.4 mm)
4, 5, and 6	17.0 inches (431.8 mm)
7 and 8	18.0 inches (457.2 mm)

C503.4 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with **Sections C404,** .

C503.4.1 Service hot water system acceptance testing. Where an *alteration* requires compliance with Section C404 or any of its subsections, service hot water systems that serve the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings with less than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) and a combined heating, cooling, and service water-heating capacity of less than 960,000 Btu/h (280 kW).
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual dwelling units and sleeping units.

C503.5 Lighting systems. Lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C503.5.1 and C503.5.2.

C503.5.1 Interior lighting and controls. Alterations to interior spaces, lighting, or controls shall comply with the following:

1. Where an alteration ~~the area~~ of an interior ~~spaces is altered, those spaces~~ space includes the addition or relocation of full height partitions, the space shall comply with ~~the lighting power requirements of Section~~ Sections C405.2, C405.3 and C408.3. ~~those spaces shall comply with the lighting control requirements of Sections C405.2 and C408.3.~~
2. Where the lighting within interior spaces is altered, those spaces shall comply with ~~the lighting power requirements of Section~~Sections C405.2, C405.3 and C408.3. ~~those spaces shall comply with the lighting control requirements of Sections C405.2 and C408.3.~~
3. Where the lighting controls within interior spaces are altered, those spaces shall comply with ~~the lighting control requirements of~~ Sections C405.2 and C408.3.

Exception: Compliance with Section C405.2.8 is not required for alterations.

C503.5.2 Exterior lighting and controls. Alterations to exterior lighting and controls shall comply with the following:

1. Where the connected exterior lighting power is increased by more than 400 Watts, all exterior lighting, including lighting which is not proposed to be altered, shall comply with ~~lighting power requirements of~~ Section C405.5.
2. Where the combined power of added and replacement luminaires is more than 400 Watts, all lighting which is added or altered shall be controlled in accordance with Sections C405.2 and C408.3.

   Exception: Individual luminaires less than 50 Watts ~~which~~provided they pass functional tests verifying ~~that lights are automatically~~ automatic shut off where daylight is present.

3. Where portions of exterior lighting controls are added or altered, those portions ~~of the lighting control system which are added or altered~~ shall comply with Sections C405.2 and C408.3.

C503.6 Additional credit requirements for alterations. *Alterations* that are *substantial improvements* shall comply with measures from Sections C406.2, Section C406.3, or both to earn the number of required credits specified in Table C406.1.1 based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone*. Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits specified in Table C406.1.1 for each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the *gross conditioned floor area* to determine the weighted average credits required. Accessory occupancies, other than Groups F or H, shall be included with the primary occupancy group for the purposes of this section.

Exceptions:

1. *Alterations* that do not contain *conditioned space*.
2. Portions of *buildings* devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.
3. *Alterations* to buildings where the *building* after the *alteration* complies with Section C407.
4. *Alterations* that are permitted with an *addition* complying with Section C502.3.7.

SECTION C504
REPAIRS

C504.1 General. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be repaired in compliance with **Section C501.3,** and this section. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by **Section C501.3,** , ordinary *repairs* exempt from *permit* and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

Where a *building* was constructed to comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1, repairs shall comply with the standard and need not comply with **Sections C402,** , **C403,** , **C404,** and **C405,** .

C504.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. *Roof repairs*.
3. Air barriers shall not be required for *roof repair* where the repairs to the *building* do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the *building thermal envelope*.
4. Replacement of existing doors that separate *conditioned space* from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vestibule or revolving door, provided that an existing vestibule that separates a *conditioned space* from the exterior shall not be removed.
5. *Repairs* where only the bulb, the ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced, provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION C505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

C505.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy from F, H, S or U occupancy classification shall comply with Section C503. Buildings or portions of buildings undergoing a *change of occupancy* without alterations shall comply with Section C505.2.

Exception: Where the total *building* performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual *energy cost* of the proposed design shall not be greater than 110 percent of the annual *energy cost* otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

C505.1.1 Alterations and change of occupancy. *Alterations* made concurrently with any *change of occupancy* shall be in accordance with Section C503.

C505.1.2 Portions of buildings. Where changes in occupancy and use are made to portions of an existing *building*, only those portions of the building shall comply with Section C505.2.

C505.2 Energy use intensities. *Building thermal envelope*, space heating, cooling, *ventilation*, lighting and *service water heating* shall comply with Sections C505.2.1 through C505.2.4.

Exceptions:

1. Where it is demonstrated by analysis *approved* by the *code official* that the change will not increase energy use intensity.
2. Where the occupancy or use change is less than 5,000 square feet (464 m^2) in area.

C505.2.1 Building thermal envelope. Where a *change of occupancy* or use is made to a whole *building* that the results in *fenestration* area greater than the maximum *fenestration* area allowed by Section C402.5.1, the *building* shall comply with Section C402.1.4, with a proposed UA that shall not be greater than 110 percent of the target UA.

Exception: Where the *change of occupancy* or use is made to a portion of the *building*, the new occupancy is exempt from Section C402.5.1 provided that there is not an increase in *fenestration* area.

C505.2.2 Building mechanical systems. Where a *change of occupancy* or use results in the same or increased energy use intensity rank as specified in Table C505.2.2, the systems serving the *building* or space undergoing the change shall comply with Section C403.

TABLE C505.2.2
BUILDING MECHANICAL

Energy Use Intensity Rank	*International Building Code* Occupancy Classification and Use
High	A-2, B-Laboratories, I-2
Medium	A-1, A-3[a], A-4, A-5, B[b], E, I-1, I-3, I-4, M, R-4
Low	A-3 Places of Religious Worship, R-1, R-2, R-3[c], S-1, S-2

a. Excluding places of religious worship.
b. Excluding laboratories
c. *Buildings* three stories or less in height above grade plane shall comply with Section R505.

C505.2.3 Service water heating. Where a *change of occupancy* or use results in the same or increased energy use intensity rank as specified in Table C505.2.3, the *service water heating* systems serving the *building* or space undergoing the change shall comply with Section C404.

TABLE C505.2.3
SERVICE WATER HEATING

Energy Use Intensity Rank	*International Building Code* Occupancy Classification and Use
High	A-2, I-1, I-2, R-1
Low	All other occupancies and uses

C505.2.4 Lighting. Where a *change of occupancy* or use results in the same or increased energy use intensity rank as specified in Table C505.2.4, the lighting systems serving the *building* or space undergoing the change shall comply with Section C405 except for Sections C405.2.6 and C405.4.

TABLE C505.2.4
LIGHTING

Energy Use Intensity Rank	*International Building Code* Occupancy Classification and Use
High	B-Laboratories, B-Outpatient Healthcare, I-2, M
Medium	A-2, A-3, Courtrooms, B[a], I-1, I-3, I-4, R-1, R-2, R-3[b], R-4, S-1, S-2
Low	A-1, A-3[c], A-4, E

a. Excluding laboratories and outpatient healthcare.
b. Buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane shall comply with Section R505.
c. Excluding courtrooms.

CHAPTER 6 [CE] REFERENCED STANDARDS

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 6 lists the full title, edition year and address of the promulgator for all standards that are referenced in the code. The section numbers in which the standards are referenced are also listed.*

*This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in **Section C110,** .*

AERC

Attachments Energy Rating Council
355 Lexington Ave 15th Floor
New York, NY 10017

AERC-1-2017: Procedures for Determining Energy Performance Properties of Fenestration Attachments

C406.3.4

AHAM

Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
1111 19th Street NW, Suite 402
Washington, DC 20036

ANSI/AHAM RAC-1—2020:: Room Air Conditioners

Table C403.3.2(4)

AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating, & Refrigeration Institute
2311 Wilson Blvd, Suite 400
Arlington, VA 22201

~~1160 (I-P) —2022:~~: ~~Performance Rating of Heat Pump Pool Heaters~~

Table C404.2

~~AHRI 1060-2018~~: ~~Performance Rating of Air-to-Air Exchangers for Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment~~

C403.8.1.2

~~AHRI Standard 430-2020~~: ~~Performance Rating of Central Station Air-Handling Units~~

C403.8.1.2

210/240— 2023 (2020):: Performance Rating of Unitary Air-conditioning and Air-source Heat Pump Equipment

Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(8), Table C403.3.2(9)

310/380—2017 (CSA-C744-17):: Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps

Table C403.3.2(4)

340/360—2022:: Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment

Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(1)

365(I-P)—2009:: Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning Condensing Units
Table C403.3.2(1)

390 (I-P)—2021:: Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-conditioners and Heat Pumps
C403.3.2(4)

400 (I-P)—2015:: Performance Rating of Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers
C403.3.2

440 (I-P)—2019:: Performance Rating of Room Fan Coils
C403.13.3

460—2005:: Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-draft Air-cooled Refrigerant Condensers
Table C403.3.2(7)

550/590 (I-P)—2022:: Performance Rating of Water-chilling and Heat Pump Water-heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle
Table C403.3.2(3), Table C403.3.2(15)

560—2000:: Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages
Table C403.3.2(3)

910 (I-P)—2014:: Performance Rating of Indoor Pool Dehumidifiers
Table C403.3.2(11)

1200 (I-P)—2022:: Performance Rating of Commercial Refrigerated Display Merchandisers and Storage Cabinets
Table C403.12.1

1230—2021:: Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment
Table C403.3.2(8), Table C403.3.2(9)

1250 (I-P)—2020:: Standard for Performance Rating in Walk-in Coolers and Freezers
Table C403.12.2.1(3)

1360 (I-P)—2017:: Performance Rating of Computer and Data Processing Room Air Conditioners
Table C403.3.2(10), Table C403.3.2(16)

1380-2019: Demand Response through Variable Capacity HVAC Systems in Residential and Small Commercial Applications
C403.4.6.1, C406.3

1430: AHRI 1430 (I-P): Demand Flexible Electric Storage Water Heaters
Table C404.10

ANSI/AHRI 920-2020 with Addendum 1:: Performance Rating of DX-Dedicated Outdoor Air System Units
Table C403.3.2(12), Table C403.3.2(13)

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (2012):: Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2 (2012):: Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance

Table C403.3.2(14)

AISI

American Iron and Steel Institute
25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20001

AISI S250- 22 : North American Standard for Thermal Transmittance of Building Envelopes with Cold-Formed Steel Framing, with Supplement 1, dated 2022
C402.1.2.1.6

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004-1806

208—18:: Calculation of the Fan Energy Index
C403.8.3, C403.9.1

500D—18:: Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating
C403.7.7

ANSI/AMCA 220—21:: Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Curtain Units for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
C402.6.6

ANSI/AMCA 230— 22:: Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Circulating Fans for Rating and Certification
C403.9

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

~~**CSA/ANSI Z21.10.3:19/CSA 4.3—19: Gas Water Heaters, Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating Tank and Instantaneous**~~
Table C404.2

ANSI Z83.8—2016/CSA 2.6—2016: Gas Unit Heater, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters And Gas-Fired Duct Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(5)

ANSI/CTA-2045-A-2018: Modular Communications Interface for Energy Management
C403.4.6.2, C406.3

ANSI/CTA-2045-B-2018: Modular Communications Interface for Energy Management
C406.3.7

ANSI/CTA-2045-B-2019: Modular Communications Interface for Energy Management
C403.4.6.2

ANSI/CTA-2045-B-2021: Modular Communications Interface for Energy Management
Table C404.10

CSA/ANSI Z21.47:21/CSA 2.3—21: Gas-Fired Central Furnaces

Table C403.3.2(5)

WD-6—2016 : Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications
C405.9.2

APSP

Pool & Hot Tub Alliance (formerly the Association of Pool and Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 580
Alexandria, VA 22314

14—2019:: American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency
C404.9

ASABE

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers
2950 Niles Road
St. Joseph, MI 49085

S640—JUL2017 (R2022):: Quantities and Units of Electromagnetic Radiation for Plants (Photosynthetic Organisms)
C202

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
180 Technology Parkway NW
Peachtree Corners, GA 30092

~~**146—2020:: Method of Test for Rating Pool Heaters**~~
Table C404.2

55—2020:: Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy
Table C407.4.1(1)

62.1-2019: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
C403.6.1, C406.3.3, Table C409.6.1.10.2(1)

90.1—2022:: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
C101.3, C401.2.2, C402.1.2, Table C402.1.2, C402.1.2.1, C402.1.3, Table C403.3.2(5), Table C403.3.2(15), C406.2, C406.2.1.1, C409.6.1.3.2, C409.6.1.5, C409.6.1.6, Table C409.6.1.10.2(1), Table C409.7(1), C501.2, C501.3

90.4—2022:: Energy Standard for Data Centers-
C403.1.2, C405.9.1, C405.9.2, C406.2.2.3

140—2020:: Method of Test for Evaluating Building Performance Simulation Software (with Addenda A and B)
C407.5.1.2, C409.5.1

ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183— 2007 (RA2020):: Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
C403.1.1

<u>**ASHRAE Standard 51-16 / ANSI/AMCA Standard 210-16.: Laboratory Methods Of Testing**</u>

Fans For Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating
Table C403.8.5

ASHRAE—2020:: HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook—2020
C403.1.1

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (2012):: Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2 (2012):: Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

ASME A17.1—2022/CSA B44—22:: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
C405.10.2

BPVC: Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
C404.10

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

C90—2021:: Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
Table C402.1.3

C835-06(2020): Standard Test Method for Total Hemispherical Emittance of Surfaces up to 1400°C
C402.3

C1363—19:: Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
C303.1.4.1, Table C402.1.2, C402.1.2.1, C402.1.2.1.7, Table C402.1.2.1.7, C402.2.7

C1371—15:: Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers
C402.3, Table C402.4

C1549—2016:: Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer
C402.3, Table C402.4

D1003—21:: Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics
C402.5.2.2

D8052/D8052M— 2022:: Standard Test Method for Quantification of Air Leakage in Low-Sloped Membrane Roof Assemblies

---

C402.6.2.3.2

E283/E283M-2019:: Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

C402.6.1.2.1, C402.6.2.3.2, Table C402.6.3

E408—13(2019):: Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-meter Techniques

C402.3, Table C402.4

E779—2019:: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization

C402.6.2.1, C402.6.2.2

E903—2020:: Standard Test Method Solar Absorptance, Reflectance and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres

C402.3, Table C402.4

E1186- 2022 : Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems

C402.6.2

E1677—2019:: Specification for Air Barrier (AB) Material or Assemblies for Low-rise Framed Building Walls

C402.6.2.3.2

E1827— 2022:: Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door

C402.6.2.1, C402.6.2.2

E1918—21:: Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal or Low-sloped Surfaces in the Field

Table C402.4

E1980—11(2019):: Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-sloped Opaque Surfaces

Table C402.4

E2178—2021a:: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage and Calculation of Air Permeance of Building Materials

C402.6.2.3.1

E2357— 2023:: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barriers Assemblies

C402.6.2.3.2

E3158- 2018:: Test Method for Measuring the Air Leakage Rate of a Large or Multizone Building

C402.6.2.1

F1281—2017(2021):: Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL_PEX) Pressure Pipe

Table C404.5.2.1

F1361—2021:: Standard Test Method for Performance of Open Vat Fryers

Table C406.2.6.2(1)

F1484—2018:: **Standard Test Method for Performance of Steam Cookers**
Table C406.2.6.2(2)

F1495—2020:: **Standard Specification for Combination Oven Electric or Gas Fired**
Table C406.2.6.2(4)

F1496—13(2019):: **Standard Test Method for Performance of Convection Ovens**
Table C406.2.6.2(4)

F1696—2020:: **Standard Test Method for Energy Performance of Stationary-Rack, Door-Type Commercial Dishwashing Machines**
Table C406.2.6.2(3)

F1920—2020:: **Standard Test Method for Performance of Rack Conveyor Commercial Dishwashing Machines**
Table C406.2.6.2(3)

F2093—2018:: **Standard Test Method for Performance of Rack Ovens**
Table C406.2.6.2(4)

F2144—2021:: **Standard Test Method for Performance of Large Open Vat Fryers**
Table C406.2.6.2(1)

F2861—2020:: **Standard Test Method for Enhanced Performance of Combination Oven in Various Modes**
Table C406.2.6.2(4)

CRRC

Cool Roof Rating Council
2435 North Lombard Street
Portland, OR 97217

ANSI/CRRC S100—2021:: **Standard Test Methods for Determining Radiative Properties of Materials**
Table C402.4, C402.4.1

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—22:: **North American Fenestration Standard/ Specification for windows, doors, and skylights**
Table C402.6.3

CAN/CSA-C439-18: **Laboratory methods of test for rating the performance of heat/energy-recovery ventilators**
C403.7.4.1

CSA B55.1—20:: **Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**
C404.7, C406.2.3.6

CSA B55.2—20:: **Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**
C404.7

CTI

Cooling Technology Institute
P. O. Box 681807
Houston, TX 77268

ATC-105—2019:: Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Towers
Table C403.3.2(7)

ATC-105DS—2019:: Acceptance Test Code for Dry Fluid Coolers
Table C403.3.2(7)

ATC-105S—2021:: Acceptance Test Code for Closed Circuit Cooling Towers
Table C403.3.2(7)

ATC-106—11:: Acceptance Test for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers
Table C403.3.2(7)

CTI STD-201 RS2021:: Performance Rating of Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment
Table C403.3.2(7)

DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers
Association, International
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

ANSI/DASMA 105—2020:: Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors
C303.1.3, Table C402.6.3

DOE

US Department of Energy
c/o Superintendent of Documents
1000 Independence Avenue SW
Washington, DC 20585

10 CFR 50: Domestic Licensing of Production and Utilization Facilities
C403.17

10 CFR, Part 430—2015:: Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products: Test Procedures and Certification and Enforcement Requirement for Plumbing Products; and Certification and Enforcement Requirements for Residential Appliances; Final Rule
Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(4), Table C403.3.2(5), Table C403.3.2(6), Table C403.3.2(14), C403.15, Table C404.2, C406.2.3.1.2, Table C406.2.3.5

10 CFR, Part 430, App U: Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Ceiling Fans
C403.8.5, Table C403.9

10 CFR, Part 431—2015:: Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment: Test Procedures and Efficiency Standards; Final Rules
Table C403.3.2(6), C403.8.4, C403.12, C403.12.1, C403.12.2, Table C403.12.2.1(1), Table C403.12.2.1(2), Table C404.2, C405.7, Table C405.7, C405.8, Table C405.8(1), Table C405.8(2), Table C405.8(3), Table C405.8(4)

FGIA

Fenestration & Glazing Industry Alliance (formerly AAMA)
1900 E. Golf Road, Suite 1250
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—22:: North American Fenestration Standard/ Specification for windows, doors, and skylights

Table C402.6.3

DoD

U.S. Department of Defense
3010 Defense
Washington, DC 20301

DoD MIL-P-17639F (1996): Pumps, Centrifugal, Miscellaneous Service, Naval Shipboard Use

C403.17

DoD MIL-P-17840C (1986): Pumps, Centrifugal, Close-Coupled, Navy Standard (For Surface Ship Application)

C403.17

DoD MIL-P-17881D (1972): Pumps, Centrifugal, Boiler Feed (Multi-Stage)

C403.17

DoD MIL-P-18472 (1989): Pumps, Centrifugal, Condensate, Feed Booster, Waste Heat Boiler, and Distilling Plant

C403.17

DoD MIL-P-18682D: Pump, Centrifugal, Main Condenser Circulating, Naval Shipboard

C403.17

Green-e

Green-e
c/o Center for Resource Solutions
1012 Torney Ave., Second Floor
San Francisco, CA 94129USA

Green-e.Version 1.0, July 7, 2017: Green-e Energy National Standard for Renewable Electricity Products

C405.15.4

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
200 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 250
Washington, DC 20001

IBC—~~21~~24:: International Building Code®

C201.3, C202, C303.1.1, C303.1.2, C303.2, C402.1.5, C402.2.7, C402.6.4, C405.2, C405.5.1, C405.14.6, C405.15.2.1, C501.2, C503.2.4

ICC 500—2020:: Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters

C402.5.2

IFC—~~21~~24:: International Fire Code®

C201.3, C405.16.2.1, C405.16.2.2, C501.2

IFGC—~~21~~24:: International Fuel Gas Code®
C201.3, C501.2

IMC—~~21~~24:: International Mechanical Code®
C201.3, C402.1.5, C403.2.2, C403.6, C403.6.1, C403.6.6, C403.7.1, C403.7.2, C403.7.4.2, C403.7.5, C403.7.7, C403.8.6.1, C403.13.1, C403.13.2, C403.13.2.1, C403.13.2.2, C406.2.2.5, C406.3.3, Table C407.4.1(1), C408.2.2.1, C501.2

IPC—~~21~~24:: International Plumbing Code®
C201.3, C501.2

IPMC—~~21~~24:: International Property Maintenance Code®
C501.2

IPSDC—~~21~~24:: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®
C501.2

IEC

IEC Regional Centre for North America
IEC International Electrotechnical Commission
446 Main Street 16th Floor
Worcester, MA 16808

IEC 62746-10-1-2018: Systems interface between customer energy management system and the power management system – Part 10-1: Open automated demand response
C403.4.6.2

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10016

1547-2018a: IEEE Standard for Interconnection and Interoperability of Distributed Energy Resources with AssociatedElectric Power Systems Interfaces
C405.17

IEEE 515.1—2012:: IEEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications
C404.6.2

IES

Illuminating Engineering Society
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10005-4001

ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1—2022:: Energy Standard for Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
C101.3, C401.2.2, C402.1.2, Table C402.1.2, C402.1.2.1, C402.1.3, Table C403.3.2(5), Table C403.3.2(15), C406.2,

---

C406.2.1.1, C409.6.1.3.2, C409.6.1.3.2, C409.6.1.5, C409.6.1.6, Table C409.6.1.10.2(1), Table C409.7(1), C501.2, C501.3

ANSI/IES RP-2-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Retail Spaces**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-3-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Educational Facilities**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-4-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Library Spaces**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-6-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Sports and Recreational Areas**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-7-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Industrial Facilities**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-8-2021: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Roadway and Parking Facilities**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-9-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Hospitality Spaces**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-10-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Common Applications**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-11-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting for Interior and Exterior Residential Environments**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-27-2020: **Recommended Practice: Photobiological Safety for Lighting Systems**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-29-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Hospital and Healthcare Facilities**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-30-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Museums**
C406.2.5

ANSI/IES RP-41-2020: **Recommended Practice: Lighting Theaters and Worship Spaces**
C406.2.5

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401,
1214 Vernier
Geneva, Switzerland -

ISO 9050:2003: **Determination of light transmittance, solar direct transmittance, total solar energy transmittance, ultraviolet transmittance and related glazing factors**

C402.3

ISO 27327-1(2009): **Air Curtain Units – Laboratory Methods of Testing for Aerodynamic Performance Rating**

C402.6.6

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1(: 2017):: **Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance**

Table C403.3.2(14)

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2(2017):: **Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance**

Table C403.3.2(14)

NEMA

National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900
Rosslyn, VA 22209

NEMA MG1— 2021:: **Motors and Generators**

C202

OS 4-2016: **Requirements for Air-Sealed Boxes for Electrical and Communication Applications**

C402.6.1.2.2.1

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

70—23:: **National Electrical Code**

C405.12.1, C405.14.6, C405.16.2.3, C501.2

NFRC

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

100—2023:: **Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U*-factors**

C303.1.3, Table C402.1.2, C402.1.2.1.7, Table C402.1.2.1.7, Table 402.1.4, C402.2.1.2, C402.5.1.1

200—2023:: **Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence**

C303.1.3, C402.5.1.1

203—2023:: **Procedure for Determining Visible Transmittance of Tubular Daylighting Devices**

C303.1.3

300-2023:: **Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems**

C402.3

400—2023:: **Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage**

Table C402.6.3

OpenADR

OpenADR Alliance
OpenADR OpenADR Alliance
111 Deerwood Road Suite 200
San Roman, CA 94583

OpenADR 2.0a and 2.0b – 2019: Profile Specification Distributed Energy Resources
C403.4.6.2, C406.3

SMACNA

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning
Contractors' National Association, Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

ANSI/SMACNA 016—2nd edition 2012:: HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual Second Edition (ANSI/SMACNA 016-2012)
C403.13.2.3, C503.3.5

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

710—12:: Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through February 2021
C403.7.5

727—18:: Oil-fired Central Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(5)

731—18:: Oil-fired Unit Heaters
Table C403.3.2(5)

1741-2021: UL Standard for Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Use WithDistributed Energy Resources
C405.17

1784—15:: Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through February 2015
C402.6.4

2202-2009: Electric Vehicle (EV) Charging System- with revisions through February 2018
C405.14.6

2594-2016: Standard for Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment
C405.14.6

9540-2020: Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment
C405.16.2.2

9540A-2019: Standard for Safety Test Method for Evaluating Thermal Runaway Fire Propagation in Battery Energy Storage Systems
C405.16.2.2

US-FTC

United States-Federal Trade
Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW

Washington, DC 20580

CFR Title 16 (2015):: ***R*-value Rule**
C303.1.4

WDMA

Window & Door Manufacturers Association
2001 K Street NW, Suite 300
Washington, DC 20006

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—22:: North American Fenestration Standard/ Specification for windows, doors, and skylights
Table C402.6.3

APPENDIX CA BOARD OF APPEALS—COMMERCIAL

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

> ***About this appendix: Appendix CA*** *provides criteria for Board of Appeals members. Also provided are procedures by which the Board of Appeals should conduct its business.*

SECTION CA101
GENERAL

CA101.1 Scope. A board of appeals shall be established within the jurisdiction for the purpose of hearing applications for modification of the requirements of this code pursuant to the provisions of **Section C109,** . The board shall be established and operated in accordance with this section, and shall be authorized to hear evidence from appellants and the *code official* pertaining to the application and intent of this code for the purpose of issuing orders pursuant to these provisions.

CA101.2 Application for appeal. Any person shall have the right to appeal a decision of the *code official* to the board. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the intent of this code or the rules legally adopted hereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The application shall be filed on a form obtained from the *code official* within 20 days after the notice was served.

CA101.2.1 Limitation of authority. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

CA101.2.2 Stays of enforcement. Appeals of notice and orders, other than Imminent Danger notices, shall stay the enforcement of the notice and order until the appeal is heard by the board.

CA101.3 Membership of board. The board shall consist of five voting members appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction. Each member shall serve for **[INSERT NUMBER OF YEARS]** years or until a successor has been appointed. The board member's terms shall be staggered at intervals, so as to provide continuity. The *code official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not vote on any matter before the board.

CA101.3.1 Qualifications. The board shall consist of five individuals, who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to *building* construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

CA101.3.2 Alternate members. The chief appointing authority is authorized to appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership, and shall be appointed for the same term or until a successor has been appointed.

CA101.3.3 Vacancies. Vacancies shall be filled for an unexpired term in the same manner in which original appointments are required to be made.

CA101.3.4 Chairperson. The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

CA101.3.5 Secretary. The chief appointing authority shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings which shall set forth the reasons for the board's decision, the vote of each member, the absence of a member and any failure of a member to vote.

CA101.3.6 Conflict of interest. A member with any personal, professional or financial interest in a matter before the board shall declare such interest and refrain from participating in discussions, deliberations and voting on such matters.

CA101.3.7 Compensation of members. Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

CA101.3.8 Removal from the board. A member shall be removed from the board prior to the end of their terms only for cause. Any member with continued absence from regular meeting of the board may be removed at the discretion of the chief appointing authority.

CA101.4 Rules and procedures. The board shall establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties consistent with the provisions of this code and applicable state law. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be presented.

CA101.5 Notice of meeting. The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson, within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic intervals.

CA101.5.1 Open hearing. All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant's representative, the *code official* and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

CA101.5.2 Quorum. Three members of the board shall constitute a quorum.

CA101.5.3 Postponed hearing. When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant's representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

CA101.6 Legal counsel. The jurisdiction shall furnish legal counsel to the board to provide members with general legal advice concerning matters before them for consideration. Members shall be represented by legal counsel at the jurisdiction's expense in all matters arising from service within the scope of their duties.

CA101.7 Board decision. The board shall only modify or reverse the decision of the *code official* by a concurring vote of three or more members.

CA101.7.1 Resolution. The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Every decision shall be promptly filed in writing in the office of the *code official* within three days and shall be open to the public for inspection. A certified copy shall be furnished to the appellant or the appellant's representative and to the *code official*.

CA101.7.2 Administration. The *code official* shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

CA101.8 Court review. Any person, whether or not a previous party of the appeal, shall have the right to apply to the appropriate court for a writ of certiorari to correct errors of law. Application for review shall be made in the manner and time required by law following the filing of the decision in the office of the chief administrative officer.

APPENDIX CB SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*
About this appendix: Appendix CB *is intended to encourage the installation of renewable energy systems by preparing buildings for the future installation of solar energy equipment, piping and wiring.*

SECTION CB101
SCOPE

CB101.1 General. These provisions shall be applicable for new construction where solar-ready provisions are required.

SECTION CB102
GENERAL DEFINITION

SOLAR-READY ZONE. A section or sections of the roof or *building* overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

SECTION CB103
SOLAR-READY ZONE

CB103.1 General. A solar-ready zone shall be located on the roof of buildings that are five stories or less in height above grade plane, and are oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north or have *low slope* roofs. Solar-ready zones shall comply with **Sections CB103.2** through **CB103.8**.

Exceptions:

1. A *building* with a permanently installed, *on-site renewable energy* system.
2. A *building* with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.
3. A *building* where the licensed design professional certifies that the incident solar radiation available to the *building* is not suitable for a solar-ready zone.
4. A *building* where the licensed design professional certifies that the solar zone area required by **Section CB103.3,** cannot be met because of extensive rooftop equipment, skylights, *vegetative roof* areas or other obstructions.

CB103.2 Construction document requirements for a solar-ready zone. *Construction documents* shall indicate the solar-ready zone.

CB103.3 Solar-ready zone area. The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 40 percent of the roof area calculated as the horizontally projected gross roof area less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks, *vegetative roof* areas and mandatory *access* or set back areas as required by the ***International Fire Code*** . The solar-ready zone shall be a single area or smaller, separated sub-zone areas. Each sub-zone shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width in the narrowest dimension.

CB103.4 Obstructions. Solar ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and roof-mounted equipment.

CB103.5 Roof loads and documentation. A collateral dead load of not less than 5 pounds per square foot (5 psf) (24.41 kg/m^2) shall be included in the gravity and lateral design calculations for the solar-ready zone. The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be indicated on the *construction documents*.

CB103.6 Interconnection pathway. *Construction documents* shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or piping from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel or service hot water system.

CB103.7 Electrical service reserved space. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual-pole circuit breaker for future solar electric and shall be labeled "For Future Solar Electric ." The reserved spaces shall be positioned at the end of the panel that is opposite from the panel supply conductor connection.

CB103.8 Construction documentation certificate. A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, *water heater* or other conspicuous location by the builder or *registered design professional*.

APPENDIX CC ZERO ENERGY COMMERCIAL BUILDING PROVISIONS

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

> ***About this chapter: Appendix CC*** *provides a model for applying new renewable energy generation when new buildings add electric load to the grid. This renewable energy will avoid the additional emissions that would otherwise occur from conventional power generation.*

SECTION CC101
GENERAL

CC101.1 Purpose. The purpose of this appendix is to supplement the *International Energy Conservation Code* and require renewable energy systems of adequate capacity to achieve net zero operational energy.

CC101.2 Scope. This appendix applies to new buildings that are addressed by the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as well as Group R-2 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane, manufactured homes (mobile dwellings), and manufactured houses (modular dwellings).
2. Buildings that use neither electricity nor fossil fuel.

SECTION CC102
DEFINITIONS

CC102.1 Definitions. The definitions contained in this section supplement or modify the definitions in the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

ADJUSTED OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. The amount of energy production from off-site renewable energy systems that may be used to offset *building* energy.

BUILDING ENERGY. All energy consumed at the *building site* as measured at the site boundary. Contributions from on-site or off-site renewable energy systems shall not be considered when determining the building energy.

~~**COMMUNITY RENEWABLE ENERGY FACILITY.**~~

DIRECT ACCESS TO WHOLESALE MARKET. An agreement by the *owner* and a renewable energy developer to purchase renewable energy from the wholesale market.

DIRECT OWNERSHIP. An off-site renewable energy system under the ownership or control of the *building* project *owner*.

~~**ENERGY UTILIZATION INTENSITY (EUI).**~~

~~**FINANCIAL RENEWABLE ENERGY POWER PURCHASE AGREEMENT (FPPA).**~~

GREEN RETAIL PRICING. A program by the retail electricity provider to provide 100-percent renewable energy to the *building* project *owner*.

MINIMUM RENEWABLE ENERGY REQUIREMENT. the minimum amount of on-site or adjusted off-site renewable energy needed to comply with this appendix.

OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Renewable energy system which serves the *building* project and is not an *on-site renewable energy* system, including contracted purchases of renewable energy and renewable energy certificates.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Renewable energy systems located on any of the following:

1. The *building* .
2. The property upon which the *building* is located.
3. A property that shares a boundary with and is under the same ownership or control as the property on which the *building* is located, or
4. A property that is under the same ownership or control as the property on which the *building* is located and is separated only by a public right-of way from the building served by the renewable energy system.

~~**PHYSICAL RENEWABLE ENERGY POWER PURCHASE AGREEMENT (PPPA).**~~

~~**RENEWABLE ENERGY CERTIFICATE (REC).**~~

RENEWABLE ENERGY INVESTMENT FUND (REIF). A fund established by a jurisdiction to accept payment from *building* project owners to construct or acquire interests in qualifying renewable energy systems, together with their associated RECS, on the building project owner's behalf.

RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Photovoltaic, solar thermal, geothermal energy extracted from hot fluid or steam, wind, or other *approved* systems used to generate renewable energy.

SEMIHEATED SPACE. An *enclosed space* within a *building* that is heated by a heating system whose output capacity is greater than or equal to 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 of floor area but is not a *conditioned space* .

~~**ZERO ENERGY PERFORMANCE INDEX (ZEPI PB/EE).**~~

SECTION CC103
MINIMUM RENEWABLE ENERGY

CC103.1 Renewable energy. *On-site renewable energy* systems shall be installed, or adjusted off-site renewable energy shall be procured to meet the minimum renewable energy requirement in accordance with Section CC103.1.1.

$$RE_{onsite} + RE_{offsite} \geq RE_{min}$$

RE_{onsite} = Annual site energy production from on-site renewable energy systems , including installed on-site renewableenergy systems used for compliance with C405.13.1 and C406.5.
$RE_{offsite}$ = Adjusted annual energy production from off-site renewable energy systems that is permitted to be credited against the minimum renewable energy requirement . This includes off-site renewable energy purchased for compliance with C405.13.2.
RE_{min} = Minimum renewable energy requirement.

When **Section C401.2.1(1),** is used for compliance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*, the minimum renewable energy requirement shall be determined by multiplying the gross *conditioned floor area* plus the gross semiheated floor area of the proposed *building* by the prescriptive renewable energy requirement from **Table CC103.1**. An area weighted average shall be used for mixed-use buildings.

When **Section C401.2.1,** , Item 2 or **Section C401.2.2,** is used for compliance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*, the minimum renewable energy requirement shall be equal to the *building* energy as determined from energy simulations.

TABLE CC103.1
PRESCRIPTIVE RENEWABLE ENERGY REQUIREMENT FOR BUILDING TYPES AND CLIMATES (kWh/ft^2-yr)

	Building Area Type											
Climate Zone	Multifamily (R-2)	Healthcare/ hospital (I-2)	Hotel/ motel (R-2)	Office (B)	Restaurant (A-2)	Retail (M)	School (E)	Warehouse (S)	Grocery Store (M)	Laboratory (B)	Assembly (A)	All others
0A	13	35	23	10	129	17	16	3	27	41	5	17
0B	12	34	22	10	123	17	15	3	26	40	5	16
1A	11	32	20	9	113	14	13	3	24	36	4	15
1B	11	32	20	9	118	15	14	3	24	37	5	15
2A	11	32	20	8	114	13	12	3	22	34	4	14
2B	11	30	18	8	108	12	11	3	22	33	4	13
3A	11	30	18	8	117	13	11	3	21	31	4	13
3B	10	29	18	8	110	12	10	3	20	31	4	13
3C	9	28	18	7	100	10	9	2	18	27	3	12
4A	12	31	18	8	123	15	11	6	21	32	4	14
4B	11	29	18	7	113	12	10	4	20	30	4	13
4C	10	28	17	7	111	13	10	4	18	28	3	13
5A	12	31	19	8	133	17	11	8	22	34	4	15
5B	11	29	18	8	125	14	11	5	21	31	4	14
5C	10	29	17	7	116	13	10	4	18	27	3	13
6A	14	33	20	10	151	20	13	11	26	39	5	17
6B	13	33	19	8	137	17	11	7	22	34	4	16
7	14	37	21	9	164	20	13	10	25	37	5	18
8	15	40	22	11	190	23	16	10	28	43	5	20

CC103.2 Calculation of on-site renewable energy. The annual energy production from *on-site renewable energy* systems shall be determined using *approved* software .

TABLE CC103.2
Procurement Factors for Renewable Energy System Compliance Alternatives

On-site Renewable Energy	Procurement Factor	
	Unbundled RECs	Other Procurement Methods
7.5 W/ft^2 of roof area or more or where one or more of exceptions 1, 2 or 3 to C405.15.1 are satisfied	0.20	1.0
Less than 7.5 W/ft^2 of roof area and no exceptions 1, 2 or 3 to C405.15.1 are satisfied	0.20	0.75

CC103.2.1 Renewable energy certificates *renewable energy certificates* (RECs) associated with the *on-site renewable energy system* shall be assigned to the initial and subsequent *building* owner(s) for a cumulative period of not less than 15 years. The *building* owner(s) are permitted to transfer *RECs* to *building* tenants occupying the *building*.

CC103.3 Off-site renewable energy. Off-site energy shall comply with **Sections CC103.3.1** and **CC103.3.2**, .

CC103.3.1 Off-site procurement methods. Off-site renewable energy procurement methods used to comply with Section CC103.1 shall be one or more of the following:

1. *Community renewables energy facility*
2. *Renewable energy investment fund*
3. *Financial renewable energy power purchase agreement*
4. *Direct ownership*
5. *Direct access to wholesale market*
6. *Green retail pricing*
7. Unbundled *Renewable Energy Certificates (RECs)*
8. *Physical renewable energy power purchase agreement*.

CC103.3.2 Requirements for all procurement methods. Offsite renewable energy systems used to comply with Section CC103.1 shall comply with all of the following:

1. The *building owner* shall sign a legally binding contract or other *approved* agreement to procure qualifying off-site renewable energy.
2. The procurement contract shall have duration of not less than 15 years and shall be structured to survive a partial or full transfer of ownership of the property.
3. RECs associated with the procured *off-site renewable energy* shall comply with the following requirements:
   3.1 The RECs shall be retained or retired by or on behalf of the property *owner* or tenant for a period of not less than 15 years.
   3.2 The RECs shall be created within a 12-month period of use of the REC; and
   3.3 The RECs shall be from a generating asset constructed no more than 5 years before the issuance of the certificate of occupancy.
4. The generating source shall be a renewable energy system.
5. The generation source shall be located where the energy can be delivered to the *building* site by any of the following:
   5.1 Direct connection to the *off-site renewable energy facility*.
   5.2 The local utility or distribution entity.
   5.3 An interconnected electrical network where energy delivery capacity between the generator and the *building* site is available.
6. Records on power sent to or purchased by the *building* shall be retained by the *building owner* and made available for inspection by the *code official* upon request.

CC103.3.3 Adjusted off-site renewable energy. The process for calculating the adjusted *off-site renewable energy* is shown in **Equation CC-2**.

(Equation CC-2)

$$RE_{offsite} = PF_{NonRecs} \text{ x } RE_{NonRecs} + 0.20 \text{ x } RE_{Recs}$$

where:
$RE_{offsite}$ = Adjusted off-site renewable energy.
$PF_{NonRecs}$ = The renewable energy procurement factor for off-site renewable energy other than RECs per Section CC103.3.3.1.
$RE_{NonRecs}$ = Annual energy production for renewable energy procurement methods other than RECs.
RE_{Recs} = Annual energy production associated with unbundled RECs.

CC103.3.3.1 Procurement factors The procurement factors for renewable energy system compliance alternatives shall be as specified in Table CC103.2.

APPENDIX CD THE 2030 GLIDE PATH

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

CD101
COMPLIANCE

CD101.1 Prescriptive compliance. Where compliance is demonstrated using the prescriptive compliance option in Section C401.2.1, the number of additional efficiency credits required by Section C406.1 shall be 1.4 times the number that are required by Section C406.1.1 ~~(1)~~.

> **Exception:** Where a *building* achieves more renewable and load management credits in Section C406.3 than are required in Section C406.1.2, surplus credits shall be permitted to reduce required energy efficiency credits as follows:

$$EEC_{red} = EEC_{tbl} - \left\{ the\ lesser\ of: \left(SRLM_{lim}, \quad SRLM_{adj} \times \left[RLM_{ach} - RLM_{req} \right] \right) \right\}$$

EEC_{red} = Reduced required energy efficiency credits
EEC_{tbl} = Required energy efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1)
$SRLM_{lim}$ = Surplus renewable and load management credit limit from Table CD101.1
$SRLM_{adj}$ = 1.0 for all-electric or all-renewable buildings (excluding emergency generation)

0.7 for buildings with fossil fuel equipment (excluding emergency generation)
RLM_{ach} = Achieved renewable and load management credits from Section C406.3
RLM_{req} = Required renewable and load management credits from Section C406.1.2

TABLE CD101.1
LIMIT TO ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDIT CARRYOVER FROM RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS

-	CLIMATE ZONE																		
BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP	0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R-2, R-4, and I-1	19	25	27	29	33	20	15	37	36	5	37	34	5	8	36	5	5	5	5
I-2	17	13	10	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	7	16	20	15	21	20	43
R-1	9	5	9	5	22	7	13	23	25	5	22	19	5	18	16	5	5	5	6
B	5	5	5	5	6	6	5	9	13	10	26	20	9	25	34	5	9	9	32
A-2	31	28	25	26	23	16	5	8	16	5	8	7	5	5	9	5	5	5	5
M	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
E	17	15	23	16	20	14	5	22	27	10	32	16	10	21	12	5	5	15	10
S-1 and S-2	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	43
All Other	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5

CD101.2 Total building performance compliance Where compliance is demonstrated using the total building performance option of Section C401.2.1, the percentage of annual *energy cost* (PAEC), applied to the *standard reference design* referenced in Equation 4-32, shall be multiplied by 0.97.

CD101.3 On-site renewable electricity systems In addition to any renewable energy generation equipment provided to comply with Section C406.3, buildings shall install equipment for *on-site renewable energy* generation with a direct current (DC) nameplate capacity rating of not less than that computed using Equation CD-2.

$$\underline{AA = CA + SNA/3} \qquad \textbf{CD-1}$$

AA = Adjusted area, in ft^2 (m^2)
CA = Conditioned area, in ft^2 (m^2)
SNA = Semi-heated and nonconditioned area, in ft^2 (m^2)

$$\underline{REQ = AA \times CF} \qquad \textbf{CD-2}$$

REQ = Required on-site capacity, in DC watts
AA = Adjusted area from Equation CD-1, in ft^2 (m^2)
CF = Capacity factor from Table CD101.3, in watts/ft^2 (m^2)

Exceptions:

1. Any required renewable energy generation capacity in excess of 10 W/ft^2 (108 W/m^2) of net available roof area is permitted to be provided using an off-site renewable energy system in accordance with Section CD101.4. For the purposes of this section, net available roof area is the gross roof area minus the roof area occupied by any combination of skylights, mechanical equipment, vegetated areas, required access pathways, vehicle parking, and occupied roof terrace area.
2. The following buildings are permitted to provide off-site renewable energy generation in accordance with Section CD101.4 in lieu of all or part of the *on-site renewable energy* generation capacity required by Section CD101.3.
   2.1 Any *building* where more than 50 percent of roof area would be shaded from direct-beam sunlight by existing natural objects or by structures that are not part of the *building* for more than 2500 annual hours between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m.
   2.2 Any *building* with gross *conditioned floor area* less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).
   2.3 Any *building* whose primary roof slope is 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater .
3. Alternate forms of renewable energy generation capacity are permitted where the annual energy generation is not less than that produced by the required solar capacity, and where annual energy generation is calculated using an *approved* methodology.
4. All or part of the required renewable energy generation capacity is permitted to be replaced by other efficiency measures provided such measures will reduce the annual energy consumption of the *building* by an amount no less than that which would otherwise be produced annually by the required renewable energy capacity, as calculated using the total *building* performance compliance path in Section C407 and an *approved* calculation methodology for solar production.

TABLE CD101.3
ON-SITE RENEWABLE ELECTRICITY

Climate Zone	Capacity Factor
1A, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, and 5B	2.0 W/ft^2 (22 W/m^2)
0A, 0B, 1B, 2A, 3A, and 6B	2.3 W/ft^2 (25 W/m^2)
4A, 4C, 5A, 5C, 6A, 7, and 8	2.6 W/ft^2 (29 W/m^2)

CD101.4 Off-site renewable energy *Buildings* that qualify for one or more of the exceptions to Section CD101.3 and that do not have *on-site renewable energy* systems sufficiently sized to fully comply with Section CD101.3 shall procure off-site renewable energy in accordance with Sections CD101.4.1 through CD101.4.3. Such procured energy shall provide not less than the total annual required off-site renewable energy determined in accordance with Equation CD-4 and shall be provided in addition to any renewable energy provided to comply with Section C406.3.

$$\underline{DEF = REQ - INSTL} \qquad \textbf{CD-3}$$

DEF = Renewable capacity deficit, in DC watts
REQ = Required on-site capacity in DC watts, from Equation CD-2
INSTL = Installed on-site capacity, in DC watts

$$\underline{OFF = 4.4 \times DEF} \qquad \textbf{CD-4}$$

OFF = Off-site renewable energy to be procured, in kWh/year

CD101.4.1 Off-site procurement The *building owner* shall procure and be credited for the total amount of off-site renewable energy required by Equation CD-4. Procured off-site renewable energy shall comply with the requirements applicable to not less than one of the following:

1. *Community renewables energy facility.*
2. *Financial renewable energy power purchase agreement*.
3. *Physical renewable energy power purchase agreement*.
4. *Direct ownership.*
5. *Renewable Energy Investment Fund.*
6. *Green retail tariff*

CD101.4.2 Off-site contract The renewable energy shall be delivered or credited to the *building* site under an energy contract with a duration of not less than 10 years. The contract shall be structured to survive a partial or full transfer of ownership of the *building* property. The total required off-site renewable energy shall be procured in equal installments over the duration of the off-site contract.

CD101.4.3 Renewable energy certificate (REC) documentation The property *owner* or *owner's* authorized agent shall demonstrate that where RECs are associated with on-site and off-site renewable energy production required by Sections CD101.3 and CD101.4, the following criteria shall be met:

1. The RECs shall be retained and retired by or on behalf of the property *owner* or tenant for a period of not less than 10 years or the duration of the contract in Section CD101.4.2, whichever is less;
2. The RECs shall be created within a 12-month period of the use of the REC; and
3. The RECs represent a generating asset constructed no more than 5 years before the issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

APPENDIX CE REQUIRED HVAC TSPR

CE101
GENERAL

CE101.1 Required HVAC TSPR. For jurisdictions who wish to adopt a stretch code or HVAC incentive system, make the following changes to Section C403.

CE101.2 (Replace Section C403.1 with the following) General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving the *building* heating, cooling, ventilating, or refrigerating needs shall comply with one of the following:

1. Sections C403.1.1 and C403.2 through C403.14 and also comply with Section C403.1.3
2. Data Centers shall comply with C403.1.1, C403.1.2 and C403.6 through C403.14

CE101.3 (Replace Section C403.1.3 with the following) HVAC total system performance ratio (HVAC TSPR). For systems serving buildings or portions of buildings of the following types:

1. Office (including medical office) (occupancy group B),
2. Retail (occupancy group M), library (occupancy group A-3),
3. Education (occupancy group E), and
4. Hotel/motel occupancies (occupancy group R-1) and
5. The dwelling units and common areas within occupancy group R-2 multifamily buildings,

The HVAC total system performance ratio(HVACTSPR)of the *proposed design* HVAC systems shall be greater than or equal to the HVAC TSPR of the *standard reference design* divided by the applicable mechanical performance factor (MPF) fromTableC409.4. HVAC TSPR shall be calculated in accordance with Section C409, Calculation of HVAC Total System Performance Ratio.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings with *conditioned floor area* less than 5,000 square feet.
2. Alterations to existing buildings that do not substantially replace the entire HVAC system and are not serving initial build-out construction
3. HVAC systems using district heating water, chilled water or steam.
4. Portions of buildings served by systems using:
   - 4.1 Small *duct* high velocity air cooled, space constrained air cooled, single package vertical air conditioner, single package vertical heat pump, or
   - 4.2 Double-duct air conditioner or double-duct heat pump as defined in subpart F to 10CFR part 431
   - 4.3 Packaged terminal air conditioners and packaged terminal heat pumps that have cooling capacity greater than 12,000 Btu/hr (3500 kW)
   - 4.4 A common heating source serving both HVAC and *service water heating* equipment
   - 4.5 HVAC systems not included in Table C409.5.2.10.1
   - 4.6 HVAC systems included in table C409.5.2.10.1 with parameters in Table C409.5.2.10.2, not identified as applicable to that HVAC system type.
   - 4.7 Underfloor air distribution and displacement ventilation HVAC systems.
   - 4.8 Space conditioning systems that do not include mechanical cooling.
   - 4.9 HVAC systems that provide recovered heat for *service water heating*
   - 4.10 HVAC systems with chilled water supplied by absorption chillers, heat recovery chillers, water to water heat pumps, air to water heat pumps, or a combination of air and water cooled chillers on the same chilled water loop.

4.11 HVAC system served by heating water plants that include air to water or water to water heat pumps.

4.12 HVAC systems meeting or exceeding all the requirements of the applicable Target Design HVAC System described in Tables C409.5.4(1) through C409.5.4(3) ,

4.13 HVAC systems serving laundry rooms, elevator rooms, mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, data centers, and computer rooms.

4.14 Buildings or areas of medical office buildings that comply fully with ASHRAE Standard 170, including but not limited to surgical centers, or that are required by other applicable codes or standards to provide 24/7 air handling unit operation

4.15 HVAC systems serving laboratories with fume hoods

4.16 Locker rooms with more than 2 showers

4.17 Natatoriums and rooms with saunas

4.18 Restaurants and commercial kitchens with total cooking capacity greater than 100,000 Btu/h

4.19 Cafeterias and dining rooms

4.20 Areas of buildings with commercial refrigeration equipment exceeding 100 kW of power input.

TABLE CE101.3
(Replace Table C409.4 with the following, this provides a 5% reduction in HVAC energy) MECHANICAL PERFORMANCE FACTORS

	Climate Zone	0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
Building type	Occupancy Group																			
Office (small and medium)[a]	B	0.68	0.68	0.67	0.67	0.65	0.62	0.67	0.65	0.61	0.76	0.67	0.74	0.80	0.73	0.76	0.82	0.79	0.83	0.85
Office (Large)[a]	B	0.79	0.79	0.80	0.80	0.75	0.78	0.68	0.77	0.73	0.64	0.72	0.60	0.67	0.68	0.60	0.69	0.67	0.67	0.67
Retail	M	0.57	0.54	0.48	0.52	0.44	0.44	0.41	0.48	0.38	0.43	0.54	0.65	0.44	0.65	0.64	0.48	0.43	0.42	0.36
Hotel/ Motel	R-1	0.59	0.59	0.60	0.60	0.59	0.65	0.58	0.67	0.69	0.43	0.56	0.49	0.36	0.45	0.48	0.33	0.36	0.29	0.25
Multi-Family/ Dormitory	R-2	0.61	0.60	0.64	0.60	0.62	0.61	0.56	0.68	0.52	0.50	0.48	0.42	0.51	0.45	0.36	0.52	0.48	0.48	0.45
School/ Education and Libraries	E(A-3)	0.78	0.77	0.76	0.75	0.71	0.68	0.67	0.68	0.64	0.69	0.68	0.65	0.78	0.69	0.58	0.85	0.76	0.79	0.73

a. large office (gross *conditioned floor area* >150,000 ft^2 (14,000 m^2) or > 5 floors); all other offices are small or medium

APPENDIX CF ENERGY CREDITS

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

CF101
GENERAL

CF101.1 Purpose. This purpose of this Appendix is to supplement the *International Energy Conservation Code* and requires projects to comply with Advanced Energy Credit Package requirements.

CF101.2 Scope. This Appendix applies to all buildings, in accordance with Section C406.1, required to comply with, either Section C406.1.1 or Section C406.1.3.

CF102
ADVANCED ENERGY CREDIT PACKAGE

CF102.1 Advanced Energy Credit Package requirements. The requirements of this section supersede the requirements of Section C406.1.1. Projects shall comply with measures from C406.2 to achieve the minimum number of required efficiency credits from Table CF102.1(1) based on *building* occupancy group and *climate zone*. Projects with multiple occupancies, unconditioned parking garages, and *buildings* with separate shell-and-core and build-out construction permits shall comply as follows:

Where a project contains multiple occupancies, credits in Table CF102.1(1) from each *building* occupancy shall be weighted by the gross fl oor area to determine the weighted average project energy credits required. Accessory occupancies shall be included with the primary occupancy group for purposes of Section C406 and Appendix CF.

Exceptions:

1. Unconditioned parking garages that achieve 50 percent of the credits required for use groups S-1 and S-2 in Table CD102.1.
2. Portions of buildings devoted to manufacturing or industrial use.
3. Where a *building* achieves more renewable and load management credits in Section C406.3 than are required in Section Section C406.1.2, surplus credits shall be permitted to reduce required energy efficiency credits as follows:

$$EEC_{red} = EEC_{tbl} - \{\text{the lesser of}: (SRLM_{lim}, \quad SRLM_{adj} \times [RLM_{ach} - RLM_{req}])\}$$

EEC_{red} = Reduced required energy efficiency credits
EEC_{tbl} = Required energy efficiency credits from Table C406.1.1(1)
$SRLM_{lim}$ = Surplus renewable and load management credit limit from Table C406.1.1(2)
$SRLM_{adj}$ = 1.0 for all-electric or all-renewable buildings (excluding emergency generation) 0.7 for buildings with fossil fuel equipment (excluding emergency generation)
RLM_{ach} = Achieved renewable and load management credits from Section C406.3
RLM_{req} = Required renewable and load management credits from Section C406.1.2

TABLE CF102.1(1)
Energy Credit Requirements by Building Occupancy Group

Building Occupancy Groups	Climate Zone																		
	0A	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R-2, R-4, and I-1	179	174	188	197	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	193	200	200	200	200	200	200
I-2	78	75	73	71	80	90	100	85	90	97	83	90	99	90	96	107	106	130	117
R-1	106	100	110	105	109	122	123	125	131	137	129	136	157	139	147	171	158	180	176
B	114	110	112	115	108	107	116	111	114	126	118	123	135	125	125	152	142	153	141
A-2	83	81	82	82	86	86	108	91	97	126	99	111	147	117	113	160	143	163	151
M	113	113	121	118	123	127	116	116	133	109	100	92	99	134	125	171	146	150	137
E	91	95	91	100	96	100	105	104	101	113	110	110	120	117	122	131	132	126	131
S-1 and S-2	108	106	111	109	109	108	89	106	108	134	100	130	200	143	123	200	190	189	148
All Other	54	53	55	56	57	60	61	60	63	68	60	65	73	68	69	84	79	84	78

TABLE CF102.1(2)
LIMIT TO ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDIT CARRYOVER FROM RENEWABLE AND LOAD MANAGEMENT CREDITS

-	CLIMATE ZONE																		
BUILDING OCCUPANCY GROUP	OA	0B	1A	1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
R-2, R-4, AND I-1	100	100	114	110	113	91	95	115	101	73	102	99	54	73	101	45	50	66	62
I-2	30	25	26	20	28	33	38	31	33	37	30	32	41	41	50	53	56	75	80
R-1	20	8	20	5	26	22	20	28	30	19	26	23	24	28	28	27	30	43	54
B	25	19	18	20	15	15	15	24	25	31	36	32	37	40	43	42	40	51	66
A-2	9	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	9	5	5	21	9	5	32	19	49	61
M	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	10
E	24	24	31	29	29	28	19	33	39	31	43	33	34	37	33	31	33	46	54
S-1 and S-2	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	37	19	5	49	41	51	56
All other	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	15	5	6	8	5	11	15	5	5	9	20

APPENDIX CG ALL-ELECTRIC COMMERCIAL BUILDING PROVISIONS

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

CG101
GENERAL

CG101.1 Intent. The intent of this Appendix is to amend the *International Energy Conservation Code* to reduce greenhouse gas emissions from *buildings* and improve the safety and health for *commercial building* occupants by requiring new *all-electric buildings* and efficient electrification of *existing buildings*.

CG101.2 Scope. The provisions in this appendix are applicable to *commercial buildings*. New construction shall comply with Section CG103. *Additions, alterations, repairs* and *changes of occupancy* to *existing buildings* shall comply with Chapter 5 and Section CG104.

CG102
DEFINITIONS

ALL-ELECTRIC BUILDING.A building using no *purchased energy* other than electricity when utility power is available.

APPLIANCE.A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

COMBUSTION EQUIPMENT.Any equipment or *appliance* used for space heating, *service water heating*, cooking, clothes drying, humidification, or lighting that uses *fuel gas* or fuel *oil*.

PURCHASED ENERGY. Energy or power purchased for consumption and delivered to the *building site*.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT.Any *repair* , reconstruction, rehabilitation, *alteration* , *addition* or other improvement of a *building* or structure, the cost of which equals or is more than 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement. Where the structure has sustained substantial damage, as defined in the *International Building Code*, any repairs are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual *repair* work performed. *Substantial improvement* does not include the following:

1. Improvement of a *building* required to correct health, sanitary or safety code violations ordered by the *code official* , or
2. *Alteration* of a *historic building* where the *alteration* will not affect the *building's* designation as a *historic building* .

CG103
NEW COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS

CG103.1 Application. New commercial buildings shall be all-electric buildings and comply with Sections C401.2.1 or C401.2.2.

1. *Purchased energy* other than electricity shall be permitted where it has been demonstrated to the ~~building~~*code official* that the building is required by an applicable law or regulation to provide space heating with an emergency power system or a standby power system.
2. *Purchased energy* shall be permitted for an emergency power system or a standby power system.

CG103.2 Electric resistance heating equipment. The sole use of electric resistance equipment and *appliances* for space and water heating shall be prohibited other than for *buildings* or portions of *buildings* that comply with not less than one of Sections CG103.2.1 through CG103.2.8.

CG103.2.1 Low space heating capacity. Electric resistance *appliances* or equipment shall be permitted in *buildings* or areas of *buildings* not served by a mechanical cooling system and with a total space heating capacity not greater than 4.0 BTU/h (1.2 watts) per square foot of *conditioned space* .

CG103.2.2 Small systems. *Buildings* in which electric resistance *appliances* or equipment comprise less than 5 percent of the total system heating capacity or serve less than 5 percent of the *conditioned floor area* .

CG103.2.3 Specific conditions. Portions of *buildings* or specific equipment and *appliances* that require electric resistance heating that cannot practicably be served by electric heat pumps as *approved*.

CG103.2.4 Kitchen make-up air. Make-up air for commercial kitchen exhaust systems required to be tempered by Section 508.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* is permitted to be heated by electric resistance.

CG103.2.5 Freeze protection. The use of electric resistance heat for freeze protection shall comply with Sections CG103.2.5.1 through CG103.2.5.2.

CG103.2.5.1 Low indoor design conditions. Space heating systems sized for spaces with indoor design conditions of not greater than 40°F (4.5°C) and intended for freeze protection, including temporary systems in unfinished spaces, shall be permitted to use electric resistance. The *building thermal envelope* of any such space shall be insulated in compliance with Section C402.1.

CG103.2.5.2 Freeze protection system. Freeze protection systems shall comply with Section C403.13.3.

CG103.2.6 Pre-heating of outdoor air. Hydronic systems without energy recovery ventilation and that do not use freeze protection fluids shall be permitted to utilize electric resistance to temper air to not more than 40°F (4.5°C). All systems ~~Systems~~ with energy recovery ventilation shall be permitted to utilize electric resistance to preheat outdoor air for defrost or temper air entering the energy recovery device and shall comply with one of the following: ~~to not more than 45°F (7.2°C). Hydronic systems without energy recovery ventilation shall be permitted to utilize electric resistance to temper air entering the energy recovery device to not more than 40°F (4.5°C).~~

1. When the space is mechanically humidified or has a process application that will maintain the space above 30 percent relative humidity when the outdoor temperature is not greater than 25°F (-4°C) and the system recovers latent energy, the outdoor air shall not be preheated to greater than 25°F (-4°C);
2. For sensible-only heat recovery exchangers, outdoor air shall not be preheated to greater than 25°F (-4°C);
3. For all other systems, outdoor air shall not be preheated to greater than 5°F (-15°C).

CG103.2.7 Small buildings. *Buildings* with a *conditioned floor area* of not more than 250 square feet (23.2 m^2) and not served by a mechanical space cooling system shall be permitted to use electric resistance *appliances* or equipment for space heating.

CG103.2.8 Supplemental heat. Electric resistance heat shall be permitted as supplemental heat when installed with heat pumps sized in accordance with Section CG103.3 and when operated only when a heat pump cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the *thermostat* setting.

CG103.3 Heat pump sizing for space heating. Heat pump space heating systems shall be sized to meet the building heating load at the greater of 0°F (-18°C) or the 99 Percent Annual Heating Dry-Bulb for the nearest weather station provided in the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. The heat pump space heating system shall not require the use of supplemental electric heat at or above this temperature other than for defrosting. Lower capacity heat pumps that operate in conjunction with thermal storage shall be permitted if the system meets the requirements of this section.

CG103.4 Heat pump sizing for water heating. Heat pump *service heating systems* shall be sized to meet not less than the *building service water heating* load at the greater of 15°F (-9.5°C) or the 99 Percent Annual Heating Dry-Bulb for the nearest weather station provided in the latest edition of the ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook. Supplemental electric heat shall not be required at or above this temperature other than for temperature maintenance in recirculating systems and defrosting.

CG103.5 Heating outside a building. Systems for heating outside a building shall comply with Section C403.13.1.

CG103.6 Low capacity cooling equipment. Air conditioners with capacity less than 240,000 Btu/hr (70 kW) shall be electric heat pump equipment sized and configured to provide both space cooling and space heating.

CG104
EXISTING COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS

CG104.1 Combustion equipment in additions. *Additions* shall use no *purchased energy* other than electricity and new equipment installed to serve additions shall use no *purchased energy* other than electricity. Where existing systems using *purchased energy* other than electricity serve an *addition* , the *existing building* and *addition* together shall use no more *purchased energy* other than electricity than the *existing building* alone.

CG104.2 Substantial improvement. Buildings undergoing substantial improvements shall be all-electric buildings, comply with C402.5 and meet a site EUI by building type in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 100 Table 7-2a.

> **Exception:** Compliance with Standard 100 shall not be required where Group R occupancies achieve an ERI score of 80 or below without *on-site renewable energy* included in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301, for each *dwelling unit* .

CG104.3 Cooling equipment. New and replacement air conditioners shall be electric heat pump equipment sized and configured to provide both space cooling and space heating. Any existing space heating systems other than existing heat pump equipment that serve the same zone as the new equipment shall be configured as supplementary heat in accordance with Section CG104.6.

CG104.4 Service water heating equipment. Where water heaters are added or replaced, they shall use no *purchased energy* other than electricity.

CG104.5 Furnace replacement. Newly installed warm air furnaces provided for space heating shall only be permitted as supplementary heat controlled in accordance with Section CG104.6.

CG104.6 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having combustion equipment or electric resistance equipment for supplementary space or *service water heating* shall have controls that limit supplemental heat operation to only those times when one of the following applies:

1. The heat pump is operating in defrost mode.
2. The vapor compression cycle malfunctions.
3. For space heating systems, the *thermostat* malfunctions.

4. For space heating systems, the vapor compression cycle cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the *thermostat* setting.
5. The outdoor air temperature is less than the design temperature determined in accordance with Section CG103.3.
6. For *service water heating*, the heat pump *water heater* cannot maintain an output water temperature of not less than 120°F (49°C) .
7. For temperature maintenance in *service water heating* systems.

New supplementary space and *service water heating* systems for heat pump equipment shall not be permitted to have a heating output capacity greater than the heating output capacity of the heat pump equipment.

CG105
REFERENCE STANDARDS

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
180 Technology Parkway NW
Peachtree Corners GA 30092
100-2018 Energy Efficiency in Existing Buildings

CH ELECTRIC-READY COMMERCIAL BUILDING PROVISIONS

User note: *Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.*

CH101
GENERAL

CH101.1 Intent. The intent of this Appendix is to amend the *International Energy Conservation Code* to reduce future retrofit costs by requiring *commercial buildings* with combustion equipment to install the electrical infrastructure for electric equipment.

CH101.2 Scope. The provisions in this appendix are applicable to *commercial buildings*. New construction shall comply with Section CH103.

CH102
DEFINITIONS

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.
COMBUSTION EQUIPMENT. Any equipment or appliance used for space heating, *service water heating*, cooking, clothes drying or lighting that uses a fossil fuel.
COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. Commercial cooking appliances used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food and which produce grease vapors, steam, fumes, smoke or odors that are required to be removed through a local exhaust ventilation system. Such *appliances* include deep fat fryers, upright broilers, griddles, broilers, steam-jacketed kettles, hot-top ranges, under-fired broilers (charbroilers), ovens, barbecues, rotisseries, and similar appliances.

CH103
NEW COMMERCIAL BUILDING

CH103.1 Additional electric infrastructure. Electric infrastructure in *buildings* that contain combustion equipment shall be installed in accordance with this section.

CH103.1.1 Combustion space heating. Spaces containing combustion equipment for space heating shall comply with Sections CH103.1.1.1, CH103.1.1.2 and CH103.1.1.3.

TABLE CH103.1.1
ALTERNATE ELECTRIC SPACE HEATING EQUIPMENT CONVERSION FACTORS (VA/kBtu/h)

99.6% HEATING DESIGN TEMPERATURE	P_s	-
GREATER THAN (ºF)	NOT GREATER THAN	VA/kBtu/h
50	N/A	N/A
45	50	94
40	45	100
35	40	107
30	35	115
25	30	124
20	25	135
15	20	149
10	15	164
5	10	184
0	5	210
-5	0	243
-10	-5	289
-15	-10	293

CH103.1.1.1 Designated exterior locations for future electric space heating equipment. Spaces containing combustion equipment for space heating shall be provided with designated exterior location(s) shown on the plans and of sufficient size for outdoor space heating heat pump equipment, with a chase that is sized to accommodate refrigerant lines between the exterior location and the interior location of the space heating equipment, and with natural drainage for condensate from heating operation or a condensate drain located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the location of the future exterior space heating heat pump equipment.

CH103.1.1.2 Dedicated branch circuits for future electric space heating equipment. Spaces containing combustion space heating equipment with a capacity not more than 65,000 Btu/h shall be provided with a dedicated 240-volt, branch circuit with ampacity of not less than 50. The branch circuit shall terminate within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the space heating equipment and be in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words “For Future Electric Space Heating Equipment” and be electrically isolated. Spaces containing combustion equipment for space heating with a capacity of not less than 65,000 Btu/h shall be provided with a dedicated branch circuit rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.1.3, and terminating in a junction box within 3 feet (914 mm) of the location the space heating equipment in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled “For Future Electric Space Heating Equipment.”

Exceptions:

1. Where a branch circuit provides electricity to the space heating combustionequipment and is rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.1.3
2. Where a branch circuit provides electricity to space cooling equipment andis rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.1.3.
3. Where future electric space heating equipment would require three-phase power and the space containing combustion equipment for space heating is provided with an electrical panel with a label stating, “For Future Electric Space Heating Equipment” and with a bus bar rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.1.3.
4. Buildings where the 99.6 percent design heating temperature is not less than 50^{o}F (10°C)

CH103.1.1.3 Additional space heating electric infrastructure sizing. Electric infrastructure for future electric space heating equipment shall be sized to accommodate not less than one of the following:

1. An electrical capacity not less than the nameplate space heating combustion equipment heating capacity multiplied by the value in Table CH103.1.1

$$VA_s = Q_{com} \text{ x } P_s$$

Equation CH-1

VA_s = The required electrical capacity of the electrical infrastructure in volt-amps
Q_{com} = The nameplate heating capacity of the combustion equipment in kBtu/h
P_s = The VA per kBtu/h from Table CH103.1 in VA/kBtu/h

2. An electrical capacity not less than the peak space heating load of the building

areas served by the space heating combustion equipment, calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1, multiplied by the value for the 99.6 percent design heating temperature in Table CH103.1.1 per the equation below, or

Equation CH-2

$$VA_s = Q_{design} \times P_s$$

VA_s = The required electrical capacity of the electrical infrastructure in volt-amps
Q_{design} = The 99.6 percent design heating load of the spaces served by the combustion equipment in kBtu/h
P_s = The VA per kBtu/h from Table CH103.1.1 in VA/kBtu/h

3. An *approved* alternate design that uses no energy source other than electricity or *on-site renewable energy*.

CH103.1.2 Combustion service water heating Spaces containing combustion equipment for *service water heating* shall comply with Sections CH103.1.2.1, CH103.1.2.2 and CH103.1.2.3.

TABLE CH103.1.2
ALTERNATE ELECTRIC WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT CONVERSION FACTORS (VA/kBtu/h)

99.6% HEATING DESIGN TEMPERATURE		Pw
GREATER THAN (°F)	NOT MORE THAN	VA/kBtu/h
55	60	118
50	55	123
45	50	129
40	45	136
35	40	144
30	35	152
25	30	162
20	25	173
15	20	185
10	15	293
5	10	293
0	5	293
Less than 0 °F (-17.8°C)		293

CH103.1.2.1 Combustion service water heating electrical infrastructure. For each piece of combustion equipment for water heating with an input capacity of not more than 75,000 Btu/h, the following electrical infrastructure is required:

1. An individual 240-volt branch circuit with an ampacity of not less than 30 shall be provided and terminate within 6 ft (2 m) of the *water heater* and shall be in a location with ready access.
2. The branch circuit overcurrent protection device and the termination of the branch circuit shall be labeled "For future electric water heater".
3. The space for containing the future *water heater* shall include the space occupied by the combustion equipment and shall have a height of not less than 7 ft (2 m), a width of not less than 3 ft (1 m), a depth of not less than 3ft (1 m) and with a volume of not less than 700 ft^3 (20 m^3).

Exception: Where the space containing the *water heater* provides for air circulation sufficient for the operation of a heat pump *water heater*, the minimum room volume shall not be required.

CH103.1.2.2 Designated locations for future electric heat pump water heating equipment.

1. Designated exterior location(s) shown on the plans and of sufficient size for outdoor water heating heat pump equipment, with a chase that is sized to accommodate refrigerant lines between the exterior location and the interior location of the water heating equipment.
2. An interior location with a minimum volume the greater of 700 cubic feet(2000 L) or 7 cubic feet (200 L) per 1,000 Btu/h combustion equipment water heating capacity. The interior location shall include the space occupied by the combustion equipment.
3. An interior location with sufficient airflow to exhaust cool air from future water heating heat pump equipment provided by no less than one 16-inch(406 mm) by 24-inch (610 mm) grill to a heated space and one 8-inch (203mm) *duct* of no more than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length for cool exhaust air.

CH103.1.2.3 Dedicated branch circuits for future electric heat pump water heating equipment. Spaces containing combustion equipment for water heating with a capacity of greater than 75,000 Btu/h shall be provided with a dedicated branch circuit rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.2.4 and terminating in a junction box within 3 feet (914 mm) of the location the water heating equipment in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled “For Future Electric Water Heating Equipment.”

Exception: Where future electric water heating equipment would require three phase power and the main electrical service panel has a reserved space for a bus bar rated and sized in accordance with Section CH103.1.2.4 and labeled “For Future Electric Water Heating Equipment.”

CH103.1.2.4 Additional water heating electric infrastructure sizing. Electric infrastructure water heating equipment with a capacity of greater than 75,000 Btu/h shall be sized to accommodate one of the following:

1. An electrical capacity not less than the combustion equipment water heating capacity multiplied by the value in Table CH103.1.2 plus electrical capacity to serve recirculating loads as shown in the equation below.

$$VA_w = (Q_{capacity} \text{ x } P_w) + (Q_{recirc} \text{ x } 293 \text{ (VA/(Btu/h))}) \quad \textbf{Equation CH-3}$$

VA_w = The required electrical capacity of the electrical infrastructure for water heating in volt-amps
$Q_{capacity}$ = The water heating capacity of the combustion equipment in kBtu/h
P_w = The VA per kBtu/h from Table CH103.1.2 in VA/kBtu/h
Q_{recirc} = The capacity required for temperature maintenance by recirculation, if applicable, in Btu/h

2. An alternate design that complies with this code, that is approved by the authority having jurisdiction, and that uses no energy source other than electricity or *on-site renewable energy*.

CH103.1.3 Combustion cooking. Spaces containing combustion equipment for cooking shall comply with either CH103.1.3.1 or CH103.1.3.2

CH103.1.3.1 Commercial cooking. Spaces containing commercial cooking appliances shall be provided with a dedicated branch circuit with a minimum electrical capacity in accordance with Table CH103.1.3.1 based on the appliance in the space. The branch circuit shall terminate within 3 feet (914 mm) of the appliance in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words “For Future Electric Cooking Equipment” and be electrically isolated.

TABLE CH103.1.3.1
COMMERCIAL COOKING MINIMUM BRANCH CIRCUIT CAPACITY

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCE	MINIMUM BRANCH CIRCUIT CAPACITY
Range	469 VA/kBtu/h
Steamer	114 VA/kBtu/h
Fryer	200 VA/kBtu/h
Oven	266 VA/kBtu/h
Griddle	195 VA/kBtu/h
All other commercial cooking appliances	114 VA/kBtu/h

CH103.1.3.2 All other cooking. Spaces containing all other cooking equipment not designated as commercial cooking appliances shall be provided with a dedicated branch circuit in compliance with NFPA 70 Section 422.10. The branch circuit shall terminate within 6 feet (1829 mm) of fossil fuel ranges, cooktops and ovens and be in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words "For Future Electric Cooking Equipment" and be electrically isolated.

CH103.1.4 Combustion clothes drying. Spaces containing combustion equipment for clothes drying shall comply with either CH103.1.4.1 or CH103.1.4.2

CH103.1.4.1 Commercial drying. Spaces containing clothes drying equipment, and end-uses for commercial laundry applications shall be provided with conduit that is continuous between a junction box located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the equipment and an electrical panel. The junction box, conduit and bus bar in the electrical panel shall be rated and sized to accommodate a branch circuit with sufficient capacity for an equivalent electric equipment with an equivalent equipment capacity. The electrical junction box and electrical panel shall have labels stating, "For Future Electric Clothes Drying Equipment."

CH103.1.4.2 Residential drying. Spaces containing clothes drying equipment, appliances, and end-uses serving multiple dwelling units or sleeping areas with a capacity less than or equal to 9.2 cubic feet shall be provided with a dedicated 240-volt branch circuit with a minimum capacity of 30A and shall terminate within 6 feet (1829 mm) of fossil fuel clothes dryers and shall be in a location with ready access. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words "For Future Electric Clothes Drying Equipment" and be electrically isolated.

CH103.1.5 On-site transformers. Enclosed spaces and underground vaults containing onsite electric transformers on the building side of the electric utility meter shall have sufficient space to accommodate transformers sized to serve the additional electric loads identified in CH103.1.1, CH103.1.2, CH103.1.3 and CH103.1.4.

CH103.2 Hydronic heating design requirements. For all hydronic space heating systems, the design entering water temperature for coils, radiant panels, radiant floor systems, radiators, baseboard heaters, and any other device that uses hot water to provide heat to a space shall be not more than 130°F (55°C).

CH103.3 Construction documentation. The *construction documents* shall provide details for additional electric infrastructure, including branch circuits, conduit, pre-wiring, panel capacity, and electrical service capacity, as well as interior and exterior spaces designated for future electric equipment.

INDEX

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

K

L

M

N

O

S

T

Z